

SHAKTHII ACADEMY

TNPSC MATERIAL

SOCIAL STUDIES - HISTORY



SAMACHEER KALVI

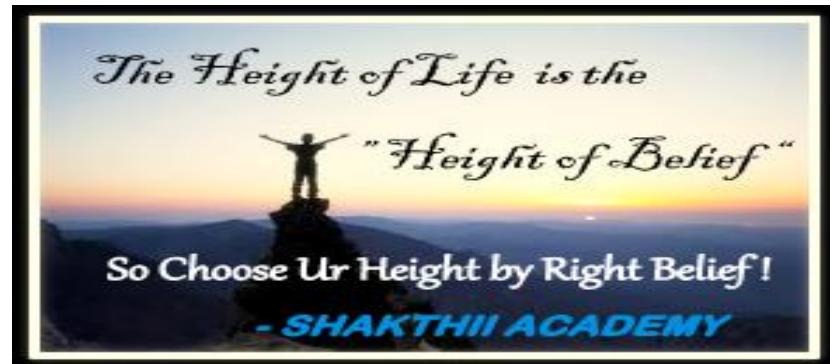


www.shakthiiacademy.com

Courtesy: <http://www.textbooksonline.tn.nic.in/>

SHAKTHII ACADEMY

SAMACHEER KALVI SOCIAL STUDIES - HISTORY



INDEX

STANDARD	PAGE NO
STANDARD SIX	1
STANDARD SEVEN	52
STANDARD EIGTH	124
STANDARD NINE	212
STANDARD TEN	292

SHAKTHII ACADEMY

SOCIAL STUDIES - HISTORY

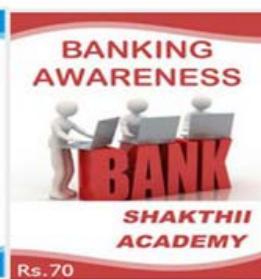
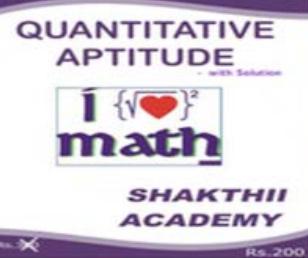
STANDARD - SIX

SHAKTHII ACADEMY

**Head Office: No. 10, Old no 4, Jayammal
Street, Shenoy Nagar, Chennai-600030**

Contact No: 9884222249, 044-64 54 94 94

**Website: www.shakthiacademy.com
www.shakthiacademy.in**



**These books are available
at Shakthiiacademy**

Contact: 9176 448 448

Between 10 AM to 7 PM

HISTORY

5. PREHISTORIC PERIOD

Inian, a student of standard six was reading the newspaper. He was astonished. An amazing discovery! An animal called Dinosaur lived many million years ago. The eggs of the Dinosaur were excavated near Ariyalur in Tamilnadu. They belonged to the prehistoric period. What is 'prehistoric period'?

Can you tell us the history of your family?

1. What is your father's name?
2. What is your grandfather's name?
3. What is your great grandfather's name?
4. What is your grandfather's grandfather's name?
5. What is your grandfather's grandfather's father's name?

You can answer the first two questions only. But we don't know the answers to questions such as the names of our grandfather's father and grandfather's grandfather. If this is the case, what are the evidences to find about the people who lived hundred, two hundred, five hundred and thousand years ago. The sources about these are known as History. What is History? History tells about the people who lived in the past with evidences according to the ages.



The Earlymen

From where do we get these old things? Who has discovered all these? Read this news and find out. The archaeological excavation has been going on for 100 years in Athichanallur, which is in Tirunelveli District in Tamil Nadu. Recently in 2004, they excavated more than 160 burial urns in one place. This proved that people lived in that place long ago.

The written and archaeological evidences that tell us about the period in which people lived, events, food habits, customs, culture, forms of government and literature are known as historical evidences. History can be divided into pre-history and historical period. Historical period has proof of written evidences and other evidences. The written evidences are literary work, historical notes, stone edicts, copper plates and palm leaves.

Evidences to know about pre-historic period:

To know about the pre-historic period, there are evidences such as the things that belonged to that period, ruins, fossils, horns and bones of animals, tools made of stones, skulls and deposits (impressions) which are found in different places around the world as well as in India. With the help of all these we know about the pre-historic period of India.

The Pre-historic period can be classified as:

- Palaeolithic Age - Old Stone Age (BC 10000 years ago)
- Neolithic Age - New Stone Age (BC 10000 - BC 4000)
- Chalcolithic Age - Copper Stone Age (BC 3000-BC 1500)
- Iron Age (BC 1000 – BC 600)

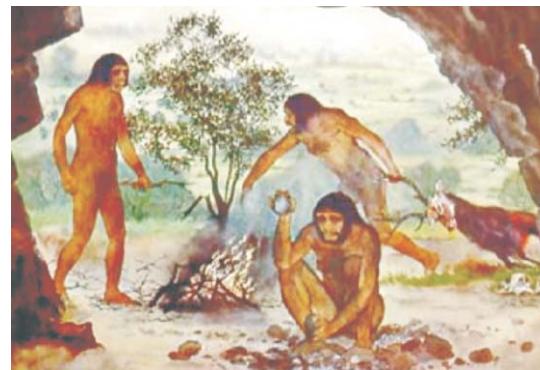
With the help of the tools used by early man, we can divide the stone age into Old stone age and New stone age.

1. Old Stone Age: (Palaeolithic Age)

He was a nomad. He lived in the jungle. He took shelter on the branches of trees, in holes and caves. He discovered fire by using the flint stone. The primitive man was scared of thunder and lightning and worshipped them.

He had to protect himself from cold, Sun and rain. He wore dresses made out of leaves, skin of animals and barks of trees. He used stones, branches of trees, bones and horns of the animals as weapons.

He ate vegetables, fruits, roots and meat of animals which he gathered from the jungle. Since he could not find food in one place he went from place to place in search of food.



Early men - Making Tools

Words giving the same meaning with little difference :

some years ago, many years ago, ancient, long long ago, from time immemorial, primitive.

Era of some important events

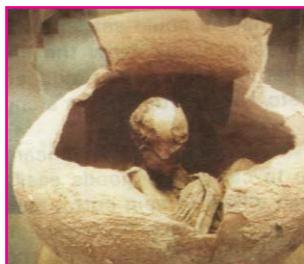
- Beginning of the Earth - 4.6 Billion years ago
- Appearance of modern man- 115000 years ago (Homosepians) - South Africa
- Beginning of agriculture- 8000 years ago
- Beginning of the cities - 4700 years ago

BC	- Before Christ
AD	- Anno Domini
CE	- Common Era
BCE	- Before Common Era
BC 31	- Birth of Thiruvalluvar
BT	- Before Thiruvalluvar
AT	- After Thiruvalluvar

- Did the primitive man store the food?
- Where and how did he store?
- Did he share?
- Did he preserve the food?
- Why should the food be preserved?
- Name the food items that we preserve and store nowadays.



Invention of wheel



Urns

When he did not find vegetables, fruits and roots, he hunted animals. He used stones, branches, bones, horns of animals etc. to hunt animals. In the beginning he hunted small animals all alone. Then they hunted in groups. Both men and women involved in hunting.

In the Pimpet Ca cave in Madhya Pradesh we see a painting. This depicts a woman with her child tied to her waist throwing an arrow. From this we know that women were also involved in hunting.

What for the early man hunted the wild animals? Is it to protect himself from the wild animal or for food?

Why did the government amend laws to protect the wild animals?

Places in India where the Old stone age tools were found:

Madhya Pradesh - Soan River bank, Pimpet Ca, Mageshwa.

Rajasthan - Luni Valley.

Karnataka - Pagalkhat.

Andhra Pradesh - Karnool caves, Renigunta.

Tamil Nadu - Vadamadurai, Athirambakkam, Pallavaram, Kanchipuram, Vellur, Thiruvallur.



2. New Stone Age: (Neolithic Age)

Old stone age man went from place to place in search of food and for hunting animals. Then he learnt to produce his food. He domesticated animals like goat, cow and hen.

The first animal he tamed was dog, which helped him in hunting. He reared goats and cows and had milk as his food. The next stage in the evolution of man is known as **New Stone Age**.

During this age, he used polished, carved, sharp stone weapons. He attached them with handles made up of wood and bones. In this period, he started to produce food. Wheel was invented. As a result of this, he was able to transport things from one place to another easily. With the help of wheels he made pots. Metal was in use. Copper was the first metal used by him.

- They built mud houses with thatched roofs and began to live in groups in small villages.
- The houses were round or oval shaped. They were built below the ground level and thatched with wooden planks.
- Agriculture was their main occupation.
- They domesticated and reared animals.
- Axes, handles made out of bones, fishing hooks, needle and chopper were in use.
- During the New stone age they had the practice of burying the dead. Urns were used to bury along with their tamed animals in the frontyard of their houses.

Places where New stone age weapons were found:



Tirunelveli, Thandikkudi, Pudukkottai, Tiruchirapalli and Salem.

3. Copper Age : (Chalcolithic Age)

At the end of the New stone age, man came to know the use of copper. He made tools out of copper as well as small stones. So this age is known as Chalcolithic Age. They drew colourful pictures with geometrical patterns on

the pots they used. The Harappan culture belonged to this age. Let us learn in detail about this in the next lesson.

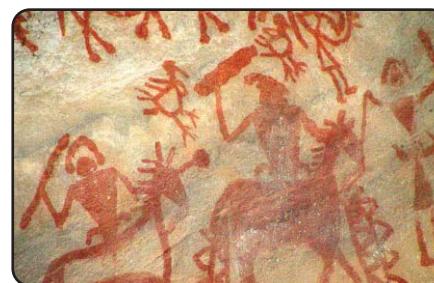


Chalcolithic Age weapons

4. Iron Age:

The period when the tools were made up of iron was called Iron Age. Household articles and agricultural implements were made out of iron. They learnt to melt the metal and make weapons. They were creative. Vedic period belonged to the Iron Age.

List the tools made out of iron which are in use now. Compare them with the tools used before.



Madhyapradesh - Pimpet Ca

Alloys:

Iron	+ Chromium	= Stainless steel
Copper + Lead		= Bronze
Copper + Zinc		= Brass
Iron	+ Maganese	= Steel

Important words from the lesson:

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------|
| • Archaeology | • Excavation |
| • Primitive | • Stone Age |
| • Copper Age | • Iron Age |
| • Historical evidences | • Deposits |
| • Million | • Bronze |

Evaluation:

I. Choose the correct answer :

1. Pre-history means

- a) period having written evidences
- b) period having no written evidences
- c) period which have all the 3 evidences like time, place and events

2. Old stone age people

- a) wore cotton clothes
- b) wore leaves, barks of trees and skin of animals
- c) wore woollen clothes

3. The first animal tamed by primitive man was

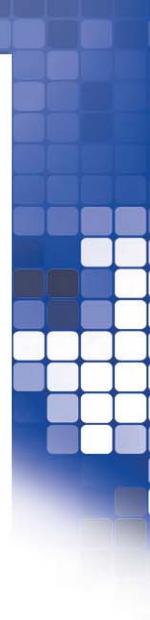
- a) cow
- b) horse
- c) dog

II. Fill in the blanks :

1. The early man _____ depending on nature.
2. To know the truths of ancient period, we must read _____
3. The Old stone age man used_____ stones.
4. The primitive age is_____ than the ancient period.
5. We must read _____ to know about the primitive age.
6. The period when the tools were made up of Iron was called_____
7. New stone age man used _____ to make pots.

III. Match the following :

- | | | |
|-------------------|---|---------------|
| 1. Tamil Nadu | - | Luni valley |
| 2. Andra Pradesh | - | Athirampakkam |
| 3. Madhya Pradesh | - | Karnool |
| 4. Karnataka | - | Pimpet Ca |
| 5. Rajasthan | - | Pagalkhat |



IV. Answer the following:

1. What is history?
2. List the evidences to know about history.
3. What do you mean by pre-historic period?
4. What are the four classifications of the pre-historic period?
5. What were the dresses of the early man?
6. Draw and compare any four tools of Old stone age and New stone age.
7. Write a short note on new stone age.

Prepare a table of details from the informations you have gathered from this lesson.

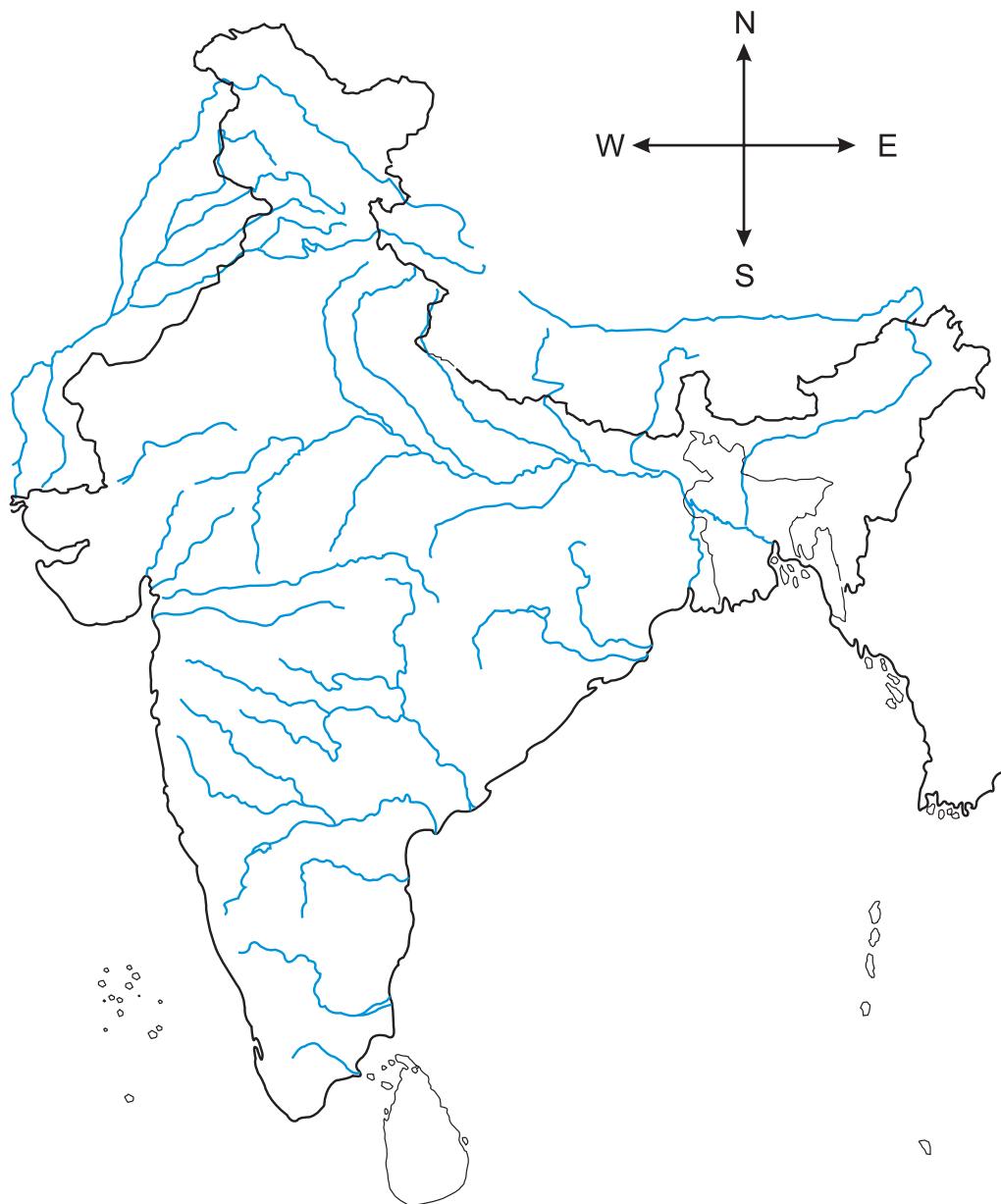
Period	Stages of man/occupation	Tools used
Old stone age	Primitive man – Gathering food, Hunting	Crude stones
New stone age	Stone age man – Rearing of animals, Agriculture	Polished and carved stones
Copper age		
Iron age		

Write the names of your family members

Write the name	Write the name
1. Father : _____	Mother : _____
2. Father's father : (Grandfather) _____	Mother's father : (Grandfather) _____
Father's mother : (Grandmother) _____	Mother's mother: (Grandmother) _____
3. Grand father's father : _____	Grandmother's mother : _____
(Great grandfather) : _____	Grandmother's father : _____
Grand father's mother : _____	
(Great grandmother) _____	

Formative Assessment

1. Find out whether there are any inscriptions and monuments in your area and collect information about them.
2. Are stones still used as tools? List them.
3. Collect information and photos from the news paper about the excavations.
4. How do you feel about that ancient man got the idea to invent the wheel.
5. Visit the nearest place where the storage instruments are found.
6. Mark the places in the India map, from where the stone age instruments were discovered.



6. INDUS VALLEY CIVILIZATION

Why do we call the modern age as Computer age? After the invention of electricity, computer is regarded as the most important one and so it is called Computer age.

In the previous lesson, we studied about the early man. The period when early man used stone was known as stone age. The first metal known to man was copper. So he used both copper and stone. That age was known as Copper Stone Age. During that period there existed an ancient civilization in India which was the Indus Valley Civilization. (Harappa)

This is the beginning of the Indian civilization.

Harappa:

In 1856, when the British ruled India, they laid railway lines on the banks of River Ravi, a branch of Indus river. They found a mound of sand. There they saw well- burnt bricks and ruins.

They took those bricks and constructed the railway lines. So they destroyed many such walls of the buildings.

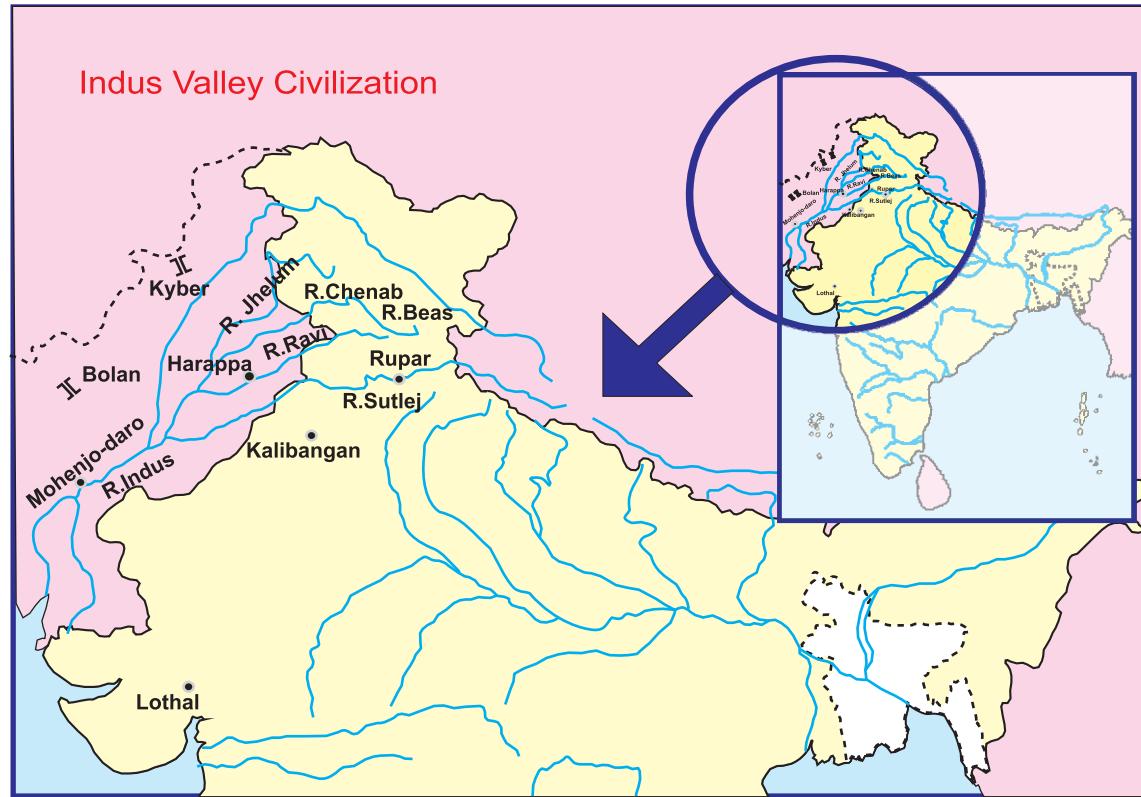
In 1921, archaeologists found out that it was the ancient city of India. Harappa in Sindhi means 'Buried City'. The cities discovered after the Indus Valley Civilization were named as Harappan Civilization.

This civilization flourished in India about 4700 years ago. Likewise, the ruins of the cities were found in Mohenjo-daro, Chanhudaro, Kalibangan and Lothal.

The Great Bath:

The most important structure found in the citadel was the Great Bath. It was built of kiln-fired bricks and sealed with a lining of bitumen.





There were steps on both the sides of the pool. There were rooms on all the sides of the pool for changing clothes. It was fed by water from a well and the dirty water was emptied by a huge drain.

Buildings :

Houses were built in grid system. There were houses which had two rooms and multistoried houses, public hall, granary and public buildings built out of bricks. There were no windows in the houses. Every house had a well and a bathroom. There were dustbins in front of the houses.

Town planning :

The Indus valley cities were well planned. The northern part of the town was narrow and elevated. The excavators considered that those were constructed on security basis. The eastern side was broad and lowered. We get more information from this town planning.

Mohenjo – dero in Sindhi means
'Mound of Dead'

The town was built with experts who were well versed in the art of town planning.

There would have been an administrative committee in the city to administer it.

Houses were built on both the sides of the broad streets in systematic order.

The houses had flat roofs and were many storied.

Administration:

The public drainage system, the Great Bath, the public hall, street lights and the provision of dustbins show that the administrative system was well organized.

Drainage system:

The drains from the houses were covered. They ran along the sides of the streets which were connected to the street drains.

They had manholes at regular intervals for cleaning.

Applied Science:

The science and technology such as construction, selections of lands , measurement of plots, foundation, selection of quality building materials and geometrical figures were in use.



Drainage system - Mohenjo-daro

We have an idea about ancient man from the archaeological evidences. This is the place where you can write your ideas.

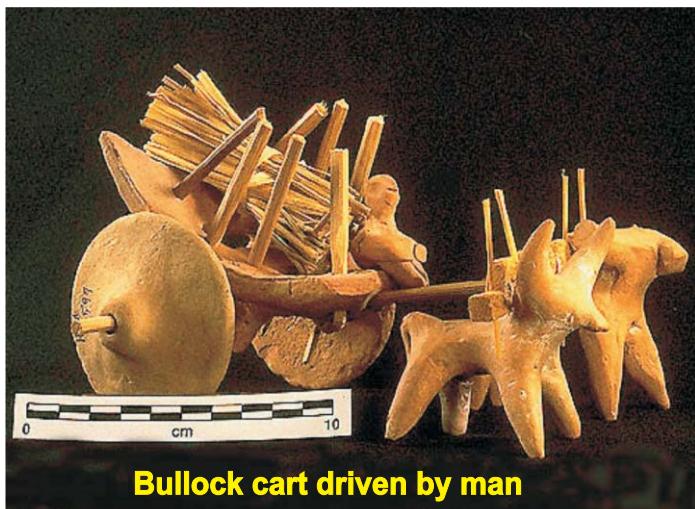
List the similarities and the differences between the Great Bath of the Indus Valley and the ponds that are seen in the temples of Tamil Nadu. What types of machinery would they have used to fill the ponds?

Life style of Indus Valley people :

Row houses were built for the employers of town administration. People exported and imported things like metals, precious stones, ornaments and various useful products.



Statue of a man with beard made of limestone



Bullock cart driven by man



Dancing girl



Pasupathi



Pieces of broken pots excavated from Harappa

Pots: They made pots with the help of potter's wheel. They were polished and coloured.

Handicrafts:

There would have been workers like document writers, seal makers, carpenters, doll makers, masons and other artisans.

They also found out dolls made out of terracotta and other playing articles out of shells, brass, copper, silver and gold.

They used copper and bronze to make weapons, household articles and tools. Gold and silver were used to make ornaments. Weights were made out of a kind of stone.

Terracotta seals:

Hundreds of rectangular seals were discovered here. Pictographic writings were written on them. The script had not been deciphered yet. On the terracotta seals, bulls, cart, dove, boats and a figure of a human meditating are seen.

Script:

The terracotta planks discovered here were engraved with letters. The figures that were engraved on the seals and the pictorial writing showed their skill of writing. They were pictographic writing.

Each picture depicts a specific meaning. Each page was written from right to left and left to right.

These writings are related with the ancient Tamil writings. There are varied opinions regarding this.



Ornaments found in Harappa



Seals



Pictorial writing

Occupation :

In the Indus Valley there were agriculturists, artisans, traders, weavers, potters and blacksmiths. Agriculture was their main occupation, They cultivated wheat and barley. They stored the surplus grains in the granary.

1. List the various occupations in your area.
2. Do we store grains? If yes, where and how?
3. Gather evidences to prove that Indus Valley people traded by sea.

Dress :

People wore cotton and woollen dresses. Men wore a garment similar to the 'dhoti' as lower garment and a shawl as upper garment.

Ornaments :

To make ornaments they used gold, silver, ivory, and precious stones. Poor people wore ornaments made out of shells and copper. Both men and women wore many ornaments.

Art:

They were experts in making pots out of terracotta. The figures of birds, animals, images of male and female, bullock cart driven by a man, pots and bowls were discovered.

Sculpture:

The statue of a dancing girl made out of bronze found in Mohenjo-daro and the statue of a man with beard made out of limestone are examples of the excellent sculptures.

Religion:

The articles excavated in Mohenjo-daro tell us about their religious Practices and the love towards their religion. They worshipped Lord Shiva represented as Pasupathi, Mother Goddess, Lingam, Trident and trees.

They buried the dead in urns along with food and ornaments.

Causes for the decline of the towns:

1. Wooden articles would have got destroyed by fire.
2. Rivalry because of the civil war.
3. Natural calamities and the change in the course of River Indus would have buried things.
4. The Aryans would have destroyed these towns in order to succeed.
5. The heap of bones discovered in Mohenjo-daro is evidence of the invasion of the foreigners.

Evaluation:**I. Choose the correct answer:**

1. Which of these help you to know about Indus Valley Civilization?
 - a. stone inscriptions
 - b. archaeological evidences
 - c. copper plates
2. Mohenjo-daro means
 - a. Garden city
 - b. Port city
 - c. Mound of Dead
3. Port Lothal of the Copper Stone Age is in
 - a. Punjab
 - b. Sindu
 - c. Gujarat
4. Harappan Civilization was
 - a. Civilization of village
 - b. Civilization of town
 - c. Civilization of corporation
5. The metal unknown to Indus Valley people
 - a. gold
 - b. iron
 - c. copper
6. Harappa in Sindhi means _____
 - a. Buried City
 - b. City of Fort
 - c. City of Rivers

II. Fill in the blanks:

1. The main God of the Harappans was _____.
2. The excavation of the Indus Valley Civilization was done in _____.
3. The Great Bath is situated at _____.
4. _____ was the writing used by the Indus Valley people.

III. Match the following:

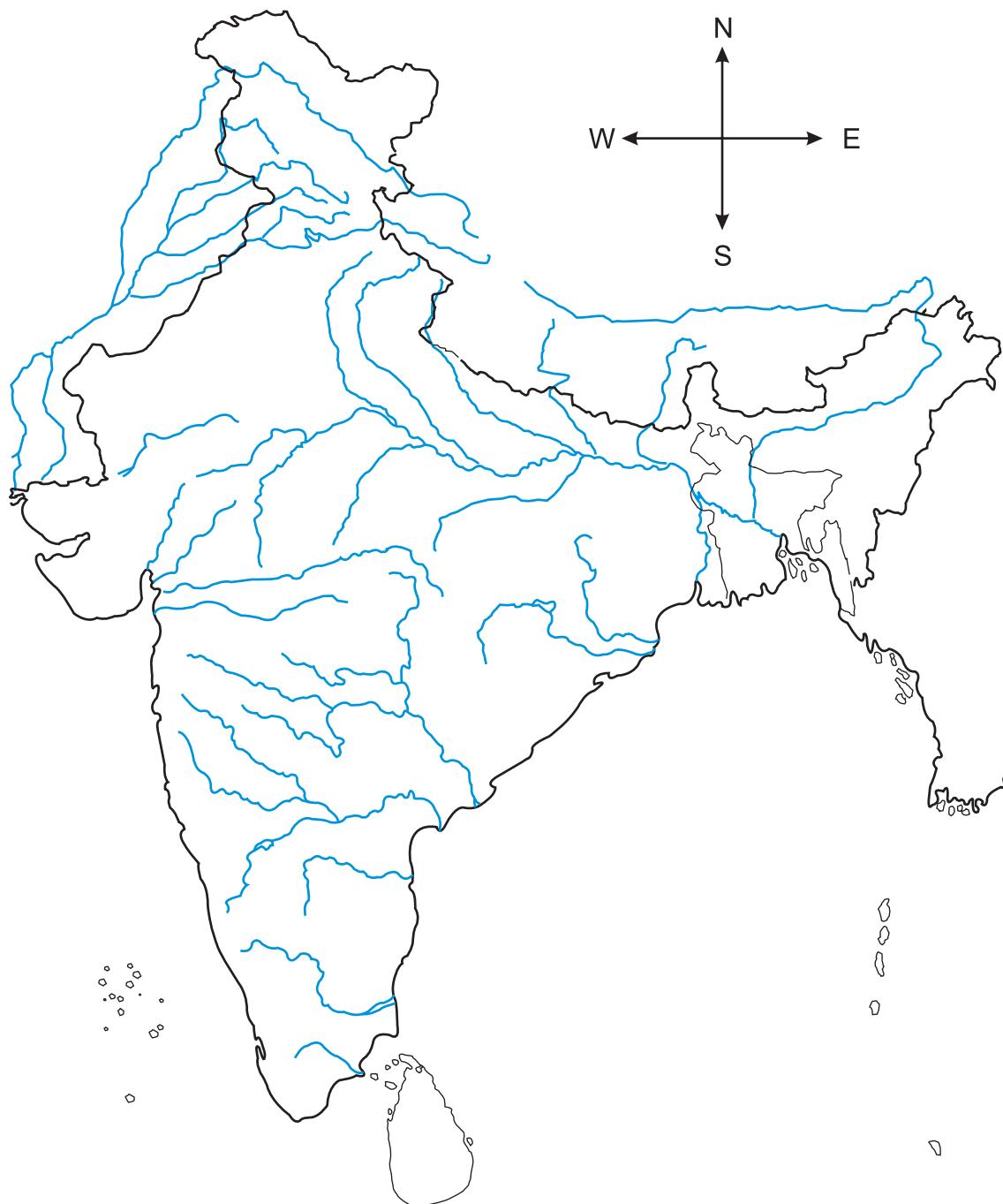
- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. Great Bath | - pots |
| 2. Excavation | - burnt clay |
| 3. Wheel | - Ravi |
| 4. Terracotta | - Mohenjo-daro |
| 5. Punjab | - 1921 |

IV. Answer the following:

1. List the occupation of the Harappans.
2. Write about the Great Bath .
3. What were the causes for the decline of the Indus Valley Civilization?
4. Explain the writings of the Indus Valley people.

Formative Assessment

1. Why did civilization originate at the riverbanks – Discuss.
2. How do you know the cities are planned and constructed?
3. Visit the nearest museum.
4. Mark the following places in the outline map of India. Lothal, Kalibangan, Rupar, Harappa, Mohenjo-daro.



7. ANCIENT TAMIL NADU

The land mass between the Himalayas and Cape Comorin is hailed as our Grand Old Country of Bharath by Bharathiyan in his "Ode to Child". (Pappa Pattu) Historians conclude that the land to the south of the Vindhyan Range is the most ancient in the world.

In the southern state there are people who speak different languages like Tamil, Telugu, Kannada, Malayalam and Tulu. The people who live in the south of Tirupathi speak Tamil.

Bavanandhi Munnivar, the author of Nannool describes Tamil Nadu as follows.

Venkata hills on the North, Cape Comorin on South and the land between these two is Tamil Nadu.

During the British rule, most of the parts of south India was called 'Madras Presidency'. After independence, the state which had Tamil as its language was separated. Arignar Anna, the then Chief Minister in 1967 named the state as Tamil Nadu.

The Tamil we speak can be appreciated as Senthamizh, Paeynhamizh and Muthamizh. The National poet Subramania Bharathiyan sang

"Senthmizh naadenum poothinilae-inba
Thean vandhu paayuthu kathinelae-yengal
Thanthaiyan naadenum poothinilae-oru
Sakthi pirakuthu moochinilae."

Ancient Tamizhagam was ruled by the **Chera, Chola and Pandya** who were called **Mooventhars**. The Western part was ruled by the Cheras, the North- East by the Cholas and the South was by the Pandyas.

The Pre-historic Tamil Nadu :

Before prehistoric period, the Indian Ocean on the south of Cape Comorin was a land mass. It was called as 'Kumari Kandam'. The river Fahruli ran on this land mass which was eight to ten times bigger than South India. There were wide ranges of mountains. It was said that the land had sufficient rain, dense forest, civilized people and efficient kingdom. That kingdom would have been the ancient Pandyan Kingdom.

Three Sangams:

The capital of Pandya was Thenmadurai. Tamizhvalartha Thalai Sangam assembled there. The Pandya ruled over the land with Kapadapuram as its capital. This place was left over after the tsunami in which Thenmadurai was taken away by the sea. In Kapadapuram the poets gathered and had the Second Sangam. That city also became a prey to tsunami later.

Then the Pandya ruled with Madurai as their capital. The last Sangam was held in Madurai Muthoor. It was known as Kudal as the Pandya kings patronized the poets and held research on Tamil. It was believed that the First, Second and Third Sangam helped in the development of literature and Tamil flourished under the leadership of Pandyan Kings. These Sangams would have been for a long time.

The Continent Lemuria:

The conditions were favourable for the growth of living organisms only at Cape Comorin which was submerged after the tsunami. Because of this the evolution of man would have taken place then. The language spoken by those people was the basic of Tamil language. The researchers believed that they were the ancient Tamilians. People who lived on the southern part of the land mass are considered as the

ancestors of the people of Cape Comorin. There was a big land mass connecting Africa and Australia, which was called **Lemuria** after the name of the monkey Lemur.

It was believed that human beings evolved from the Lemurs. The language of the people was ancient Tamil. The land where their descendants lived was called Tamil Nadu.

Historic period:

The historic period of Tamil Nadu began from the Sangam age. Sangam age is the period during which the poets of the Third Sangam joined together and did research on Tamil. This period lasted for 400 years from BT 200 – AT 200. Some consider that it was between BT 300 – AT 300.

Note : BT – AT was calculated based on the birth year of Thiruvalluvar ie 31 B.C. According to the decision taken by Tamil scholars that time can be calculated considering that Thiruvalluvar was born 31 years before Christ. This was accepted and announced by the Government of Tamil Nadu.

The Sangam literatures, what we got now are Ettuthogai and Pathupattu. The poem in these literature were written by Kapilar, Paranar, Avvaiyar, Nakkeerar

and hundreds of poets. With the help of these we can understand the civilization, customs, culture and political life of Tamilians.

Tolkappium which was a pride to Tamil literature originated before the Third Sangam. Tamil literature would have developed a few thousand years ago. It was a pride to Tamil, that Tirukkural which was hailed by all the religions originated during the Sangam age.

Our mother tongue Tamil which is adoptive to grammatical norms and is called Senthamilzh. Scholars call Tamil a classical language, because it had developed without the help of other languages.



Activity:

Identify the type of land division that you live in. Write down.

The people who lived in the south which was surrounded by water on three sides were good sea traders before the Sangam age as per the proverb, “**Thiraikadal vodiyum thiraviyam thedu**”. The language Tamil is abundant with words like Naval, Kalam, Kappal, Thoni, Odam, Padagu, Theppam and Katamaram which are used to denote the mode of travel at sea.

This shows their interest in sea trade. There were many ports like Puhar, (Kaveripoompattinam), Korkai, Musiri, Thondi and Vanchi. They had trade contacts with Egypt, Yavanam, Rome, China and other eastern countries. They followed the barter system.

Mohenjo-daro and Harappa excavated in the Northern hemisphere were examples of town civilization. They



Five division of Lands

examined thousands of things found there . It was proved that it had connection with the Southern Tamilians for more than four – five thousand years ago. This showed that in those days Tamilians were not only in the south but also in the north.

During the Sangam, the poets divided the lands into five physical divisions. The mountainous region was called Kurinchi, the forested region was referred as Mullai, the wet and agricultural land area was called Marutham, the coastal area was Neithal and the sandy regions which suffered by drought were called Palai. The occupation of the people depended on the region where they lived.

In those days, the most important duty of the kings was protecting their subjects. Apart from the kings there were chieftains and patrons who ruled smaller regions. Conditions were favourable for the poets, pannar, koothar, viraliyar, traders, idayars, uzhavars, maravars to lead a comfortable life.

Agriculture was honoured as it provided food to all. Next to agriculture weaving was given importance.

The Ancient Three Tamil Kingdoms:

The Chera Kingdom:

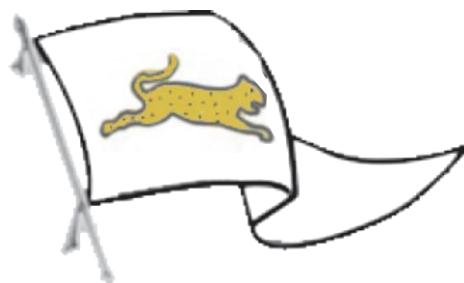
Chera kingdom included the whole of present Kerala and North West -of Tamilnadu.



The famous Chera kings Imayavaramban Neduncheralathan and Sillambu Pugazh Cheran Senguttuvan reached the Himalayas and hoisted the Chera flag. Their capital was Vanchi (Karur), the ports were Thondi and Musiri and their emblem was Bow and Arrow.

The Chola Kingdom:

The Chola kingdom included present Trichy, Thanjavur, Pudukkottai, Nagapattinam and some parts of the South Arcot. The famous Chola kings were Karikal Cholan and Killivalavan.



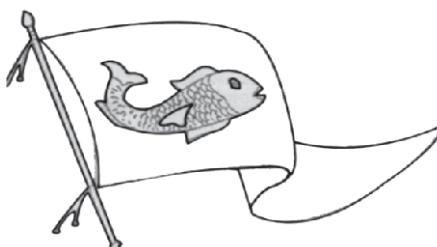
Karikalan who ruled over two thousand years ago conquered Eelam. He built Kallanai on the banks of river Cauvery with the help of captives which is still in use. He was called Karikal Peruvalathan.

Their capital was Uraiur, their port was Kaviripoompattinam and their emblem was Tiger.

The famous kings of the medieval period were Rajaraja Chola and Rajendra Chola. They conquered not only the North but also Java and Kadaram.

The Pandya Kingdom:

The Pandya kingdom included the places from Kanyakumari to Madurai. The Pandyan king M u d a t h i r u m a r a n a n d Thalaiyalanganathu Cheruvendra Neduncheziyan who defeated the combined forces of seven chieftains, lived in the Pandya kingdom. The one who played an important role in Silapathigaram by saying, “**Yano Arasan; Yanae Kalvan**” (I am not a king, I am the culprit) and established truth was also a renowned Pandya king. Their capital was Madurai, their port was Korkai (Tuticorin) and their emblem was Fish.



The seven chieftains were called as Kadaiyezhu Vallalgal. The famous among them were Pari, Ori, Malayan, Nalli, Ezhini, Pegan and Aay.

Social Life :

**“Pirrapokkum ella uirukkum -chirappova
Cheithozhil vettrumai yan”**

According to the Thirukkural mentioned above there was a society without any discrimination.

There were discrimination according to their occupations. There was sect system but they were not discriminated according to their birth. Untouchability was not in practice. In due course, caste discrimination and untouchability came into force.

Women had the privilege of choosing their life partners. Parents agreed to that. The rituals, raising of holy fire and chanting of mantras were not in vogue. Women were not treated as per the Vedas.

As building of temples was not in practice, the Sangam people worshipped the stones erected in memory of the dead soldiers which were known as Hero Stones or Nadukkal and their ancestors.

They celebrated harvest festival, Pongal festival and the festival of Spring season. In the capital they celebrated Indiravizha. They did not know about the festivals of the Puranas.

Evaluation:**I. Choose the correct answer:**

1. The area that was considered as the most ancient one in the world
 - a) Ganges Valley
 - b) the area in the south of Vindhya
 - c) north west valley

2. The land mass on the South Kanyakumari during pre-historic period
 - a) Continent of Kumari
 - b) Continent of Bharath
 - c) Continent of Africa

3. The place where evolution of man began
 - a) Mediterranean countries
 - b) Asyria
 - c) Lemuria

4. Which year is considered as the birth year of Thiruvalluvar
 - a) AD 31
 - b) BC 31
 - c) AD 13

5. The city where the Second Sangam was held
 - a) Thenmadurai
 - b) Kapadapuram
 - c) Koodal Nagar

II. Fill in the blanks:

1. _____ was the organisation where the Tamil poets assembled and did the literary research in Tamil.
2. The _____ were the ancestors of the people of Cape Comorin.
3. The historical period of the Tamil began from _____ age.
4. The Grammar book, _____ originated before the Third Sangam.
5. _____ was the most important occupation of the Sangam age.

III. Match the following:

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Tolkappiam | - Yano Arrasan; Yanae Kalvan |
| 2. Mullai | - Hero Stones |
| 3. Pandiyar Neduncheziyan | - Mountainous region |
| 4. Heroic death | - coastal area |
| 5. Kurinchi | - book before Tamil Sangam |
| 6. Neithel | - forest area |

IV. Answer the following:

1. Why is Tamil known as classical language?
2. Name the Tamil words which are used to denote the mode of travel at sea.
3. Why is Madurai known as Kudal?
4. What are the countries with whom the Tamilians had trade?
5. Mention the physical divisions of the land during the Sangam age.
6. Name the famous Pandya kings.
7. Name the important Chera kings.
8. Write notes on Karikal Peruvallathan.
9. Name the Kadaiyelu Vallalgal.
10. Mention the social status of women during the Sangam age.

V. Answer in detail :

1. Write the characteristic features of the ancient Tamil.
2. Describe the First, Second and Third Sangam.
3. Write about the sea trade of the Sangam Age.

Formative Assessment

1. Prepare and display the models of 5 types of lands.
2. Prepare a tabular column based on the trees, flags and flowers of the three tamil kingdoms.
3. Do the festivals of the present time gives only happiness? Discuss.
4. **Who am I?**
Land and areas around the land. Who am I?
Mountain and areas around the mountains. Who am I?
Forests and areas around the forests. Who am I?
Sea and areas around the sea. Who am I?
Draught stricken area- Who am I?



1. THE VEDIC PERIOD

The Aryans migrated to India through the Khyber and Bolan passes from central Asia. Being shepherds, they moved in search of pastures for their cattle. They entered about 4000 years ago and settled in the entire north India.

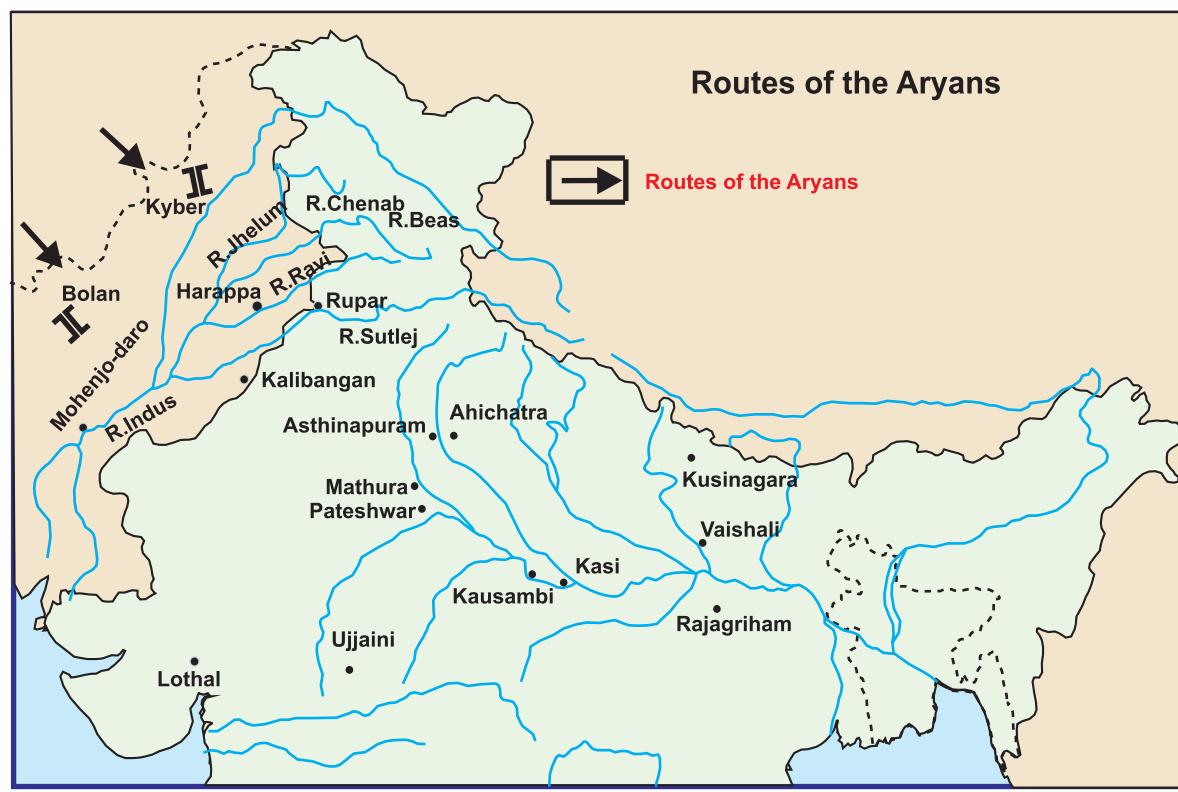
The places where they settled in India was called **Arya Vardham**. Aryans made their livelihood by herding the cattle. They compiled the prayers of their ancestors as Vedas. In History, this was called the Vedic Age. The Vedic Age was classified into two. They were **Early Vedic Age and Later Vedic Age**.

Early Vedic Age or Age of Rig Veda: (BC 1500 – BC 1000)

When Rig Veda was compiled the Aryans lived in Sindu, which is now in Pakistan. They settled in **Sabta Sindhu (The Land of Seven Rivers)** in Punjab. We come to know through the Rig Veda, the political and social conditions of the Aryans.

The Social life of Aryans

Family → Village → Vis → Jana → Janapatha



Political Life

The basic unit of the society was family. Many families joined and formed the village which was headed by the Grahmini. Many villages formed Visu. (Vis) Vishwapathy was the head of the Visu. The next higher administrative unit was Jana. The head of Jana was Rajan (King). The person who had valour and strength became the Rajan. The people lived in a kingdom were called Prajas. The king was called Prajapathi. Kingship became hereditary. Many chieftains formed the Mahajanapadas.

Find out:

Do you have a family name?
Ask and find out the family names of your neighbours.
Which God/Goddess do you worship?

The Raja (King) was assisted in his administration by officials called Prohit and Senai (Commander). There were two Assemblies called **Saba and Samiti**.

Saba – Group of Elders

Samiti – Representatives of People

Duties of Raja (King)

- He protected his lands from different clans.
- He conducted religious duties according to the advice of the prohits.
- He protected his people from poverty, war and enmity.
- During the war he led the people and fought with the enemies.
- Justice and punishments were given after trial.
- He extended and strengthened the kingdom.

Social Life

The father was the head of the family. In the beginning women were on a par with men in the fields of education and religion. There were women poets like Vishwawara, Abala, Kosa, and Lobamuthra. Caste system was not in existence. Monogamy and Polygamy were in practice. Widows' remarriage was permitted.

Economic Life

Cattle rearing and agriculture were the main occupations of the people during Rig Vedic Age. Iron was used to make tools and instruments. With the help of these tools they destroyed the forests and made them into cultivable lands. Carpentry and weaving were also their occupations.

They produced cotton and woollen clothes. Goldsmiths made ornaments and potters made pots for household use. Barter system was in practice. Rivers were used for transportation. Their unit of currency Nishka, was made of gold.

Mention the origin and growth of the following:

Carpentry, blacksmith, goldsmith, weaving, agriculture, cattle rearing and making weapons.

Food

They had wheat, barley, milk, curd, ghee, vegetables, fruits and meat as their food. They drank intoxicating drinks like 'Soma' and 'Sura'.

Dresses and ornaments

The Aryans used clothes made of cotton and wool. Men wore dhoti and shawl. They also wore turbans. Women wore upper garments and lower garments. Both men and women wore ornaments. They wore earrings, necklaces, bangles, anklets and wore bands on their foreheads.

Religion

The Aryans worshipped the forces of nature such as Sun, fire, air, sky and trees. They also worshipped Indira, Varna, Agni and Yaman. There was neither temple nor idol worship in the early vedic age. Religious sacrifices were practised. They wrote religious principles and their explanations. They offered milk, ghee, grains and silk. Yagas like Ashvamedha, Rajasuya and Vajapaya were conducted during poojas.

Later Vedic Period: (BC 1000–BC 600)

The period of Sama Veda, Atharvana Veda, Yajur Veda are called the Later Vedic Period.

In this period the Aryans spread over the eastern side. (Pre Vedic Aryans spread from Kabul to Upper Ganges) During this period the kingdoms emerged. During this period Brahmanas, Upanishads and Aranyakas were also written.

Political Life

The important administrative region was the Indus Valley. Kingdoms like Kosala, Videham, Kuru, Magadha, Kasi, Avanthy and Panchala emerged. Kingship became hereditary. The duty of the king was to defend his country from enemies and to maintain law and order. Since the kingdom expanded, he had more responsibility. Sacrifices such as Rajasuya and Ashvamedha were performed to establish his undisputed authority. Saba and Samithi declined.

Economic Life

The metal widely used was iron. Handicrafts improved because of this. New tools were made. They grew paddy, sugarcane, barley and wheat. Cow dung was used as manure. Cattle wealth developed. According to the number of cattle owned by a person, his economic status was estimated.

Broken pots of the Aryan Period



There were weavers, tanners, carpenters and goldsmith. Gold and silver coins like Nishka, Swarna and Satamana were in use.

Caste system became rigid which was called Varna Dharma. Those who performed sacrifices and religious ceremonies were called Brahmanas. Those who waged war to protect and rule the country were known as Kshatriyas. The Vaishyas were the traders and farmers. The people who served the three upper caste and did all the menial works were called Sudras.

Status of Women

During the Later Vedic Period there was no improvement in the status of women. They were subordinate to men. They did not inherit property. They were deprived of administrative power. Child marriage was prevalent. Women who belonged to the royal family enjoyed some privileges. Sati, according to which the widow would throw herself into the funeral pyre of her husband was in practice.

Education

According to the Aryan Dharma, the Brahmin students stayed in the Gurukul (home of the teacher) and learnt. There were highly educated women like Gargi and Maitreyi. In the Gurukul, they learnt philosophy, logic, religion, grammar, astrology, medicine, discipline, mathematics, Vedas and Upanishads. The royal children alone were taught Danur Veda (military strategy).

Religion

There were a lot of changes in the religion according to the Varna Dharma of the Brahmins. The pre-vedic Gods lost their importance. In this period, Brahma, Vishnu, Rudra (Siva) gained importance. Rituals and animal sacrifices gained importance. People had faith in soul, fate and moksha. By the end of this period there was opposition for the rule of the priests, rituals and sacrifices. It was against these meaningless rituals and costly sacrifices, Buddhism and Jainism originated.

Qualities of Dravidians and Aryans

S.No.	Qualities of Dravidians	Qualities of Aryans
1.	Dark complexion, medium height, dark long hair.	Fair, tall and brown hair.
2.	Main occupation-Trade and agriculture.	Main occupation-Cattle rearing and war.
3.	Wore cotton clothes.	Wore woollen, cotton and dresses made out of skin of animals.
4.	Important animal bull. They worshipped bull.	Important animal cow. They worshipped cow.
5.	Built houses out of burnt bricks.	Built houses out of bamboo and clay.
6.	Worshipped idols, lingam, trident, sakthi and snake.	No idol worship and temples. Worshipped nature and performed yagas and rituals.
7.	Used copper. They did not know the use of iron.	Used iron.
8.	Tiger was known. Horse was unknown.	Tiger was unknown. Used horses.
9.	Agricultural civilization, towns.	Cattle rearing civilization, villages.

Evaluation

I. Choose the correct answer

1. The period of Rig Veda
 - a. BC 1600 - BC 1000
 - b. BC 1000 - BC 600
 - c. BC 1500 - BC 1000
2. The unit of currency used during Rig Vedic period
 - a. Nishka
 - b. Rupee
 - c. Dollar
3. The woman who excelled in education in the Later Vedic Period.
 - a. Gargi
 - b. Abella
 - c. Kosa

II. Fill in the blanks

1. The head of the village was _____.
2. Widows' _____ was in practice during the Early Vedic Period.
3. Assembly that consisted of the Representatives of People was _____.
4. According to _____, the widow would throw herself into the funeral pyre of her husband.

III. State whether the following statements are True or False

1. Sabta Sindu is called the 'Land of Seven Rivers'.
2. The commander-in-chief was the Senai.
3. Widows' remarriage was not allowed in Rig Vedic Age.
4. The basic unit of the society was family.
5. Tiger was unknown to the Dravidians.

IV. Match the following

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Satamana | - Shiva |
| 2. Praja | - Rajan |
| 3. Rudra | - Vishwapathy |
| 4. Head of Jana | - coins |
| 5. Head of Visu | - people of the kingdom |

V. Answer the following

1. List the ornaments of the Rig Vedic people.
2. What did the Brahmin students learn during the Later Vedic Period?
3. Compare and contrast the qualities of the Aryan and the Dravidian Civilization.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Search from the Internet
 - i. Kaibar and Polen passes.
 - ii. Know their role in Indian history.
2. Collect various kinds of coins and list out the information known from them.
3. Compare the status of women during the Vedic period and the present day.
4. On the outline map of India mark out the route of Aryans to India and the following places.

i. Kalibangam	v. Raja Giraham
ii. Mohenjo-Daro	vi. Vaishali
iii. Lothal	vii. Mathura
iv. Ujjaini	viii. Asthinapuram



HISTORY

2. JAINISM AND BUDDHISM

The 6th century was a period of intellectual awakening. During that period, Jainism and Buddhism arose in India. These two religions existed to reformed the socio-religious organizations. The aim of these religions is to remove the superstitious beliefs, unwanted religious rituals and the caste discrimination. **Vardhamana Mahavira** was the founder of Jainism. **Gautama Buddha** was the founder of Buddhism.

JAINISM

In Jainism, 24 Thirthangaras were worshipped. The first Thirthangara was Adhinathar, who was known as Rishabadevar. **Vardhamana Mahavira** is the last Thirthangara. (24th) He gave a strong formation to Jainism.

Vardhamana Mahavira lived during B.C.534 – B.C.462. He was born in Kundagramam near Vaishali Nagar, which is now in Bihar. His father was Siddhartha and mother was Trisala. His wife was Yasodha and he had a daughter called Anoja Priyadarshana. At the age of 30, he gave up all the worldly pleasures and became an ascetic. He performed penance for 12 years, seeking answer for the problems during these days. He treated both joy and sorrow equally. He won in his search for truth. So he was called

“Jina” which means the “Conqueror”. People also called him as “Mahavira”. Mahavira went to many places preaching his principles for 30 years.



Mahavira

Why are people born? Why do they die? What are the causes for their sufferings? – These were the important questions that arose in him. He started thinking why people are troubling others and cheating each other. One set of people said that it was because of the sin they did in the previous birth. But Mahavira never accepted this. He thought that how people could not commit sin in this birth.

So he said that one should not harm others. Human beings are responsible for their own problems. We should not harm any living being. He preached a restricted life. He asked his followers to follow his principles of 'Ahimsa' or 'Non-Violence'. To attain the spiritual goal the Jains starved and subjected themselves to all bodily hardships.

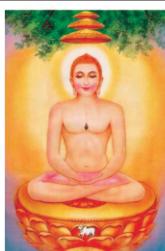
Jainism stressed that no one should kill any living creature. They eliminated clothes. It insisted that they should not wage war or do agriculture. Trade and commerce was their occupation. The religion preached that they should lead a restricted life.

Three Gems or Triratna:

Right Knowledge

Right Belief

Right Action



The Five Doctrines

1. Ahimsa (Non-Violence)
2. Satya(Truth)
3. Asatya(Non Stealing)
4. Aparigraha(Non-possession)
5. Brahmacharya(Celibacy)

His principles spread far and wide when superstitious beliefs, quarrels and fightings prevailed.

Kings who followed Jainism:

Chandragupta Maurya
Kalingathu Karavelen
Koon Pandian
Mahendravarma Pallava I

Contribution of Jains to Tamil Literature:

Epics -

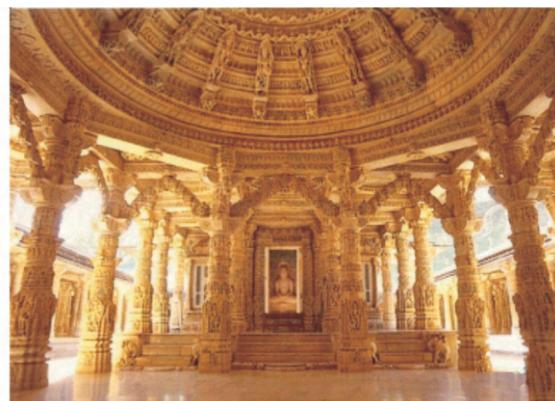
Sillapathigaram,
Chivgachinthamani,
Vallayapathi and Soodanani.

Literature and Grammar works-

Yapperungalaviruthi,
Neminatham,
Nannool,
Agaporulvillakam,
Naladiar,
Nanmanikadikai,
Pazhamozhi,
Thinaimalai Noorthiyampathu and
Tamil Nigandu.

Contribution of Jains to architecture:

Rajasthan - Dilwara temple at Mount Abu.
Kajiraho - Chittoor, Ranakpur – Temples of Jains.



Dilwara

"Kollaan pulaalai marutthaanai kaikoopi
Ella uyirum thozhum"

– Thirukkural



Sculpture:

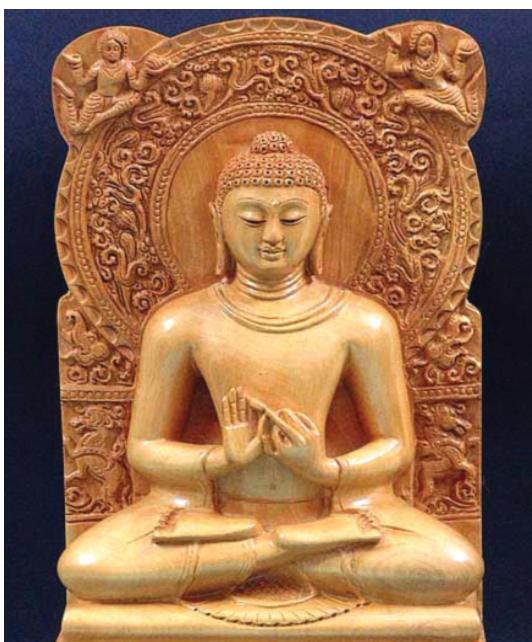
- Udaiyagiri
- Hathigumpa
- Girnar
- Saravanabelagola
- Kazhugumalai

The statue of Gomateshwara at Sravanabelgola is at Karnataka.

BUDDHISM

Gautama Buddha was the founder of Buddhism. His original name was Siddhartha. He lived during 563 B.C.- 483 B.C. He was born at Kapilavastu in Nepal. His father, Siddhodana belonged to the Saka dynasty. His mother, Mayadevi died at the seventh day of his birth, so he was brought up by his step-mother. He got married at the age of 16. His wife was Yasodha and Rahul was his son.

Even at his early age, he was anxious to know about what was happening in the world. He never showed any interest in hunting and luxury. The miseries and poverty of the poor people affected him very much.



Buddha

He was disturbed by the luxury on one side, poverty, sickness and old age on the other side. He disowned his parents, wife and son. He went to the forest and meditated. He controlled his

hunger and thirst. But he never got the answer for the question. Since he could not get an answer, he stopped torturing himself and ate food. To find out the truth, he started thinking. He was enlightened.

Siddhartha, who was enlightened under a pipal tree at Gaya became Buddha.

The meaning of the word 'Buddha' is a person who knows what is good, what is bad and what is suffering.

He preached his first sermon at Deer Park in Sarnath near Banaras in Uttar Pradesh.

Principles of Buddhism

Life is full of miseries. The reasons for the sufferings are not because of fate or the deeds of our previous birth. There are other reasons for sorrows. We should strive to overcome the sorrows by not being greedy, not telling lies and not harming others. To avoid miseries one should have right thinking, right speech and right livelihood. He opposed caste discrimination. Man need not have any fear for God, soul and fate. One should depend and live on his own ideas and knowledge. We should show compassion towards animals, birds and human beings.

Buddha's principles on suffering are the Four Noble Truths and the principles on conduct are the 'Eight Fold Paths'.

The Four Noble Truths are:

1. Life is full of sorrow.
2. Desire is the cause of sorrow.
3. Sorrow can be ended by giving up desire.
4. The eightfold path is the way to end sorrow.

Eight – Fold Paths to overcome desire:

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| ✓ Right belief | ✓ Right effort |
| ✓ Right speech | ✓ Right thought |
| ✓ Right living | ✓ Right action |
| ✓ Right memory | ✓ Right meditation |

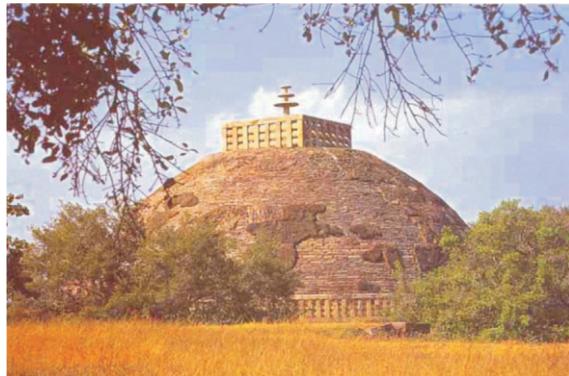
In order to spread the truth he went from place to place. Wherever he went, he discussed his ideas with various groups of people. Buddhist monks came forward to spread the principles of Buddha. The organization of the monks was called as 'Sangam'.

The agriculturists, poor people, women, menial labourers and those who were affected by the society accepted the principles of Buddha. The idea that all are equal was new to them. So Buddhism spread far and wide.

Many kings followed Buddhism like Jainism. The most important among them was King Ashoka. Jainism and Buddhism were at their zenith till the 6th century. They started to decline when Hinduism regained its earlier position. Buddhism split into Hinayana and Mahayana.

Hinayana	Mahayana
Accepted Buddha's principles.	Worshipped Buddha as God.
No idol worship.	Idol worship

Art and Architecture



Sanchi Stupa

Even today Buddhism is followed in Ceylon, Burma, Tibet, China, Japan and Thailand.

The kings who followed Bhuddism – Ashoka, Kanishka and Harsha.

Do you Know?

- Our National Emblem (The figure of four lions) is taken from the capital of Ashoka Pillar.
- The Chakra in our National Flag which has 24 spokes is taken from the '**Dharma Chakra**' of the Ashoka Pillar.
- Bihar is the place where there are many Buddha Viharas.

- Manimekalai and Kundalakesi are Buddhist literature.
- The books written by Jain monks.
- Sillapathikaram**, Nannool (Grammar)
- Chivagacinthamani; Vallayapathi (Literature).
- Religious text: Angas and Purvas.

Historical Monuments

- The Jataka tales describes the history of Buddhism. The **Jataka stories** are depicted at Gaya, Sanchi and Burcut.
- Ajantha and Ellora Cave paintings which are in Aurangabad at Maharashtra describe the fame of Buddha. Gandhara art also belongs to Buddhism.
- The prayer halls of the Buddhist monks are called Chaityas and their monasteries are called Viharas. They are of rock cut structures.

To know

Mahavamsam, a book of Sri Lanka says that Tripitakas was written during the reign of Vattakkamini Abayan. In Pali language it is called as Tripitakam which means three baskets.

Water cannot enter into a Properly constructed house;
Evil thoughts cannot enter into the hearts of those who have good thoughts.

— Buddha.

Literature

- The Buddhist religious texts are called **Tripitakas**. They are Vinaya Pitaka, Sutta Pitaka and Abhidhamma Pitaka.

Evaluation

I. Choose the correct answer.

- The one who laid strong foundation to Jainism
 - Vardhamana Mahavira
 - Athinathan
 - Rishabadeva
- The principles stressed by Jainism
 - idol worship
 - not to kill
 - untouchability

3. A place in Tamil Nadu where you can see Jain sculptures
 - a) Girnar
 - b) Kazhugumalai
 - c) Hathigumba
4. The place where Buddha was enlightened
 - a) Kundagrammam
 - b) Deer Park
 - c) Gaya
5. One of the most important kings who followed Buddhism
 - a) Chandra Gupta
 - b) Ashoka
 - c) Bindusara

II. Fill in the blanks.

1. _____ was known as Conqueror or Jina.
2. The principles stressed by Jainism are called _____.
3. _____ is the place where Gomatheswara statue is situated.
4. The principles of Buddha are called _____.
5. The organization of the Buddhist monks is called _____.
6. The Dharma Chakra in our National Flag is taken from the _____ pillar.

III. State whether the following statements are True or False

1. Mysore is the place where Gomatheswara statue is situated.
2. The son of Buddha was Rahul.
3. The founder of Jainism was Buddha.
4. Mahavira was the 24th Thirthankara.
5. There are 24 spokes in the Ashoka Chakra.

IV. Match the following.

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Tripitakam | - worshipped Buddha as God |
| 2. Hinayana | - Buddha's first sermon |
| 3. Sillapathigaram | - who accepted Buddha's principles |
| 4. Deer Park | - Jain literature |
| 5. Mahayana | - religious text of Jains |

V. Answer in five lines.

1. What are the causes for the rise of Jainism and Buddhism?
2. Describe the Triratnas insisted on by Jainism.
3. Write short notes on the contribution of Jains to Tamil literature.
4. Write the Four Noble Truths of Buddha.
5. Mention the Eight Fold Paths to overcome desire.

VI. Answer in detail.

1. Explain the distinctive features of Jainism.
2. Explain the ideas you like in Buddhism.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Which of the principles of Jainism and Buddhism do you like to follow? By following such principles what are the good changes that can happen? Think it over and explain.
2. Jainism and Buddhism which originated in India are now being followed only in the foreign countries. Examine the reasons.
3. Know the special features of Ajanta and Ellora or to visit a library and know these things through books.
4. On the outline map of India mark out the following places:
 - i. Sarvanapalakola
 - ii. Vaishali
 - iii. Mount Abu
 - iv. Kabilavasthu
 - v. Sanchi
 - vi. Gaya
 - vii. Ajanta and Ellora



1. RISE OF KINGDOMS

Mahajanapadas:

At the end of the Vedic period, the Janapadas fought with each other for the new fertile lands and mineral wealth and for the same reason they tried to move towards the east. Because of this, they had clashes with the non-Aryans who came from the east and south of the Indus Valley. Ultimately, the small janapadas were either defeated or aligned themselves with the Mahajanapadas.

The term Mahajanapadas actually means "great kingdoms" and is derived from Sanskrit. Buddhist texts provide elaborate facts of this Mahajanapadas.

Many Janapadas joined to form the Mahajanapadas. They depended more on the types of lands than on the clans. There are sources to prove that during the period of Buddha there were 16 powerful Mahajanapadas in North India. Some of them were ruled by hereditary kings. The rest were ruled by elected kings. There were 18 groups together in the Vajjian confederacy which had Vaishali as their capital. Kosala, Avanti, Vatsa and Magadha were some of the powerful monarchies of this period. They fought with each other and other republics. Ultimately, Magadha defeated others and became the most powerful Mahajanapada. The area around Patna

in Bihar is called Magadha. Its first capital was Siravasthi, The second capital was Rajgir and later Pataliputra became the capital.

Mahajanapadas

- | | | |
|------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. Anga | 7. Kedi | 13. Aswakas |
| 2. Magadha | 8. Vatsa | 14. Avanti |
| 3. Kosala | 9. Kuru | 15. Gandhara |
| 4. Kasi | 10. Panchala | 16. Kamboja |
| 5. Vajji | 11. Matsya | |
| 6. Malla | 12. Surasena | |

Rise of Magadha :

Bimbisara - Ajatasatru

Bimbisara belonged to Haryanka Dynasty. He expanded the kingdom of Magadha by conquests and by marriage alliances. His son Ajatasatru imprisoned his father and succeeded the throne. He waged war for a long period with Kosala, Avanti, Vaishali and extended his empire. The fort of Pataliputra was laid by Ajatasatru.

Sisu naga – Mahapadma Nanda

After Ajatasatru the noteworthy ruler who maintained the greatness of Magadha was Sisu naga. He even defected the ruler of the Avanti. It was during his reign the second Buddhist Council was called at Vaisali in 387BC.

Sisu naga defeated the Haryanka Dynasty. The Nanda Dynasty who succeeded Sisu naga Dynasty spread

the rule of Magadha throughout north India. Mahapadmananda, the first Nanda king crossed the Vindhya range and annexed Deccan. He extended the Magadha Empire beyond Vindhya to Deccan.

Though Sisunaga and Mahapadmananda, were Sudras they became the kings. It was a great change. The Nandas patronized Jainism. The Macedonian king Alexander came with his troops through the West of India. He had to return since he was aware of the Nanda warfare and his soldiers were tired after a long journey.

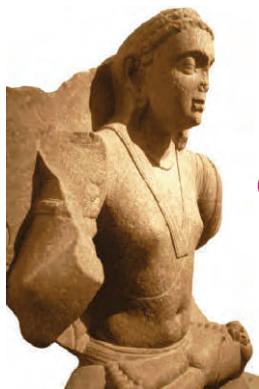
MAURYAN EMPIRE

Chandragupta Maurya :

Chandragupta of Mauryan Dynasty revolted against the last Nanda king Dhanananda, defeated him and took over the Magadha Dynasty (BC 324-299).



Chandragupta Maurya



Megasthenese

He invaded parts of West India which were annexed by the Greeks under the leadership of Alexander and extended the Mauryan Dynasty. He defeated the Greek General Seleucus Nikator and he annexed Afghanistan and Gandhara with his empire.

Megasthenese, the ambassador of Seleucus stayed at Pataliputra for many years and wrote about India in his book '*Indica*'. The Jain religious text says that Chandragupta Maurya became a monk leaving his throne and went with the Jain monk, Bhadrabahu to south India. He ended his life by fast unto death as a devout follower of Jainism at Saravanabelagola.

In 2001, a stamp was issued on the historical ruler Chandragupta Maurya the most Colourful Personality of Indian History.

Ashoka:

Chandragupta was succeeded by his son Bindusara, who ruled for 25 years. He was succeeded by one of his sons Ashoka. (BC 273-236) For the first four years, he spent his time to suppress his brothers who were his rivals. After the eighth year, he waged a terrible war against Kalinga which was separated and annexed with the Mauryan empire. Ashoka was so upset and grief stricken at the sight of the war that he took a pledge that he would never wage war again.

Ashoka's Dharma Vijaya:

Ashoka declared that helping his subjects and leading them in the righteous way is the duty of a king. He spent the rest of his life, meeting people and helping them. He hated 'Dig Vijaya' (Conquest of the World). In order to spread Dharma, he undertook a journey which was called 'Dharma Vijaya'. He constructed inns and hospitals for everyone irrespective of caste and creed. Medical assistance was given to cattle. Sacrifices were banned. The laws were altered on humanitarian basis. Death sentence was reduced. He spread Dharma among people through rock edicts which were inscribed on regional languages. He appointed Dharmamahamatras to help the people. Ashoka was the first emperor who established the welfare state for people.



Ashoka



Sarnath Pillar

Ashoka and Buddhism:

Ashoka embraced Buddhism which insisted love, knowledge and discipline. Eventhough he was a Buddhist, he was kind to Brahmins and

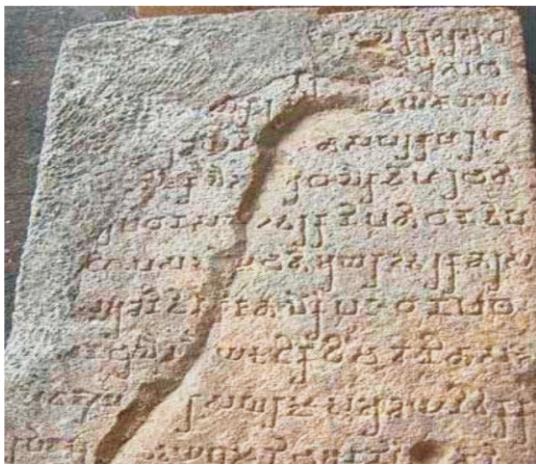
Agivagirs. He took maximum effort to spread Buddhism. He renovated and expanded the monuments at Kapillavastu, Saranath and Buddhagaya. He constructed hundreds of stupas and pillars. He organized the Third Buddhist Council at Pataliputra. In order to spread Buddhism, he sent Buddhist monks to different parts of his empire and also to foreign countries. He sent his son Mahendra and daughter Sanghamitra to spread Buddhism in ceylon. Buddhism became a world religion by the efforts of Ashoka.

Ashoka's contribution to art and architecture:

Ashoka's stupas and pillars are considered to be the oldest after the monuments of the Indus Valley Civilization. Buddhist stupas at Sarnath and Lumbini are marvellous. The Ashoka's pillar cannot be compared with any other art. The structure of Ashoka's pillar, the bell shaped capital resembling an inverted lotus shows the influence of the Persian architecture.

Ashoka's Stone Edicts:

Ashoka's royal proclamations and messages are inscribed on the walls of the caves, stone pillars and rocks that are kept all through his empire. Most of them are written in Prakrit, Kharoshti in north western India, Greek in Afghanistan. These edicts depict Ashoka's humanitarian love and non-violence.



Ashoka's
Stone Edict

The Stone Edict of Ashoka:

"I captured Kalinga after eight years of war. In the war, one lakh people died and one and a half lakh people left the country.

It made me very sad when more than a lakh of my people were killed and captured during the war of Janapata. The war separated loved ones.

The ruins of the war affected all the people. It troubled me. So I accepted Dharma more than war."

-Ashoka

After the death of Ashoka, Kalinga regained independence. Later, the great KharaVela became the emperor of Kalinga. The inscription found in the elephant caves of Khandagiri and Udaigiri mountains near Bhubaneswar describes in detail the reign of Emperor KharaVela.

Mauryan Administration:

For the convenience of administration, the empire was divided into five provinces. Taxilla was the capital of North province, Ujjaini was the

capital of West province, Swarnagiri was the capital of South province and Dosali was the capital of East province. The main province, Magadha was ruled by the king himself with Pataliputra as its capital.

A council of ministers and army chiefs were appointed to help the king in his administration. They were appointed without the discrimination of caste. The higher officials called Mahamatras were appointed as superintendents and governors of the big provinces. Princes were also appointed as Mahamatras.

There were other officers like Yukta s, Pradeshi k a s, Ambassdors and Spies. Those who protected the frontier were known as 'Andamahamatras'. Dharma mahamatras looked after the moral life of the public.

There were local self government in the cities. Megasthenese described in his Indica that the administration of the city of Pataliputra was maintained by a set of 30 officers who belonged to 6 committees. Each committee had a specific duty. The strong army of Mauryas was administered by a set of 30 officers. Infantry, cavalry, elephants, chariots and navy were controlled by 5 committees. The sixth committee looked after the transport, food, medical facility and production of weapons for the army.

The Mauryan Empire
during Ashoka's period



The judicial administration was very strict. Ashoka brought some changes on humanitarian grounds. Torture was banned. He introduced new methods to console the people who were given death sentence. The tenure of petty cases were reduced.

Kings and ministers went on tours to solve the problems of the people.

Brihadratha, the last king of the Maurya Dynasty was assassinated by Pushyamitra. After this, the Magadha lost its power for more than 500 years.

Evaluation

I. Choose the correct answer

1. The one who built fort Pataliputra
 - a. Ashoka
 - b. Bimbisara
 - c. Ajathasatru
2. The book written by Megasthenes
 - a. Arthashastra
 - b. Indica
 - c. Mudra-rakshasa
3. Ashoka ascended the throne in
 - a. BC 232
 - b. BC 273
 - c. BC 255
4. The place where the Third Buddhist Council was held
 - a. Pataliputra
 - b. Kashmir
 - c. Kapilavastu

II. True or false

1. Seleucus Nikator was the ambassador of Megasthenes.
2. Mahapadmananda was the first king of Nanda Dynasty.
3. Ashoka refused Dharma Vijaya and accepted Dig Vijaya.
4. Ashoka was the first one to establish a welfare state for people.
5. Mahendra spread Buddhism at Ceylon.

III. Answer the following

1. How did the Mahajanapadas establish themselves?
2. To whom does the credit go in establishing the first empire in India? - Explain.
3. Ashoka was the one who established an empire for the welfare of the people- Why?
4. What are the causes for the change in Ashoka's life?
5. Explain the inscriptions used in the stone edicts of Ashoka.
6. Give a detailed account of Maurya's Administration.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. The common people were much affected during the wars between kings of the older days. Enumerate how the people are affected today.
2. Visit a nearby stone edict and try to read the letters on it.
3. Draw a picture of Saranath pillar or Write the details you learnt from the picture of the pillar.
4. Draw the boundaries of Mauryan Empire during Ashoka's period and mark the following places in the given map.
 - Thatsaseelam
 - Indra prastham
 - Pataliputram
 - Saranath
 - Gaya
 - Kalingam
 - Girinagar

2. KUSHANA EMPIRE

The powerful empire which was established in India after the decline of the Mauryans were the Kushans. The Kushans were the people who belonged to the Yueh-chi tribe. During the 1st century AD Kadphises I established the kingdom of Kushana in the North west part of India. Kadphises II (AD 65-75) who succeeded Kadphises I conquered Punjab and Indus Valley.

Kanishka:

After the death of Kadphises II, Kanishka (AD 78-101) captured the throne. He was considered as the most powerful king of Kushans. He marched to Pataliputra and subdued Saka Satraps. He fought with the Chinese twice. He was defeated by the Chinese commander-in-chief Panchao in the first expedition. In the second war, he won and annexed Kashgar, Yarqand, Khotan and the parts of central Asia with his Empire. He created a new capital called **Purushapuram**. (Peshawar).

He was impressed by Buddhism. He organized the Fourth Buddhist Council at Kashmir. The famous Buddhist philosophers like Vasupandu, Ashvaghosa and Nagarjuna participated in the Fourth Buddhist Council.

The new division of Buddhism, Mahayana originated in this council. Groups of monks were sent to **Tibet and China** to spread Mahayana.



Ashvaghosha, who was the Mahayana Buddhist scholar wrote large volumes of Sanskrit literature like *Buddhacharita*, *Sutralankar*. Vasumithra compiled *Mahavibhasa*. Nagarjuna wrote books on philosophy. Charaka, a famous physician and the great builder Ajilasim were in Kanishka's Empire.

The Gandhara art which combined the Indo-Greek style made new statues of Buddha and Bodhisatvas. Kanishka was called **Asoka II** because of the involvement and the steps he took for the spread of Buddhism. The year that Kanishka ascended the throne was the beginning of the **Saka era**. He met a violent death in his tent. The successors of Kanishka were weak and inefficient. Thus the Kushan Empire declined.

THE GUPTA EMPIRE

After the Kushans the next empire to arise in north India was that of the **Guptas with Pataliputra as its capital.** **Chandragupta I** was the first important king of the Gupta dynasty(AD319-335). The year of his coronation was considered as the beginning of the Gupta Era. The Allahabad inscription describes the conquests and the victories of Samudragupta (AD 335-375) who succeeded Chandragupta I. The Gupta empire extended from Bengal to Indus and the Himalayas to Vindhya. The Allahabad inscription describes that he conquered 9 North Indian kings, 11 Republicans and 12 South Indian kings. The **Allahabad pillar** inscription was inscribed by his minister **Harisena.** After Samudra Gupta, **Chandragupta II** (AD 380 – 414) was considered as a famous king.

He defeated Sakas, the foreign invaders and captured Ujjain.



Ajanta Cave Painting

Mehrauli Iron Pillar

The epics like Ramayana, Mahabharatha, 18 Puranas and Panchathanthiras were compiled during Gupta's period. They patronized Sanskrit scholars like Kalidasa, Pasar and Visagathatha. Sanskrit was the official language. They built small temples for Gods and Goddess like Vishnu, Shiva and Durga. The Ajanta cave paintings and sculptures belonged to the Gupta age.

The famous astrologer and mathematician, **Aryabhatta**, **Varahamihira**, the famous physicians **Saragar**, **Susurudar** and **Dhanvantari** belonged to the **Gupta age.** The iron pillar at Mehrauli which is 1500 years old is a specimen of the art of metallurgy that flourished during the Gupta age. **Nalanda University** was founded by Kumara Gupta. Caste system was worse. The sacrifices which were banned during the period of Ashoka revived. They worshipped Shiva, Sakthi, Vishnu, Kumaran (Murugan) and temples were built for Hindu Gods. The **Chinese traveller Fahien** visited the Buddhist pilgrim centres during the period of Chandragupta II. (Vikramaditya)

Gupta period was considered the Golden Age. The Gupta empire declined because of the invasion of Pushyamithra and Huns.



Harsha



Nalanda University

HARSHA DYNASTY

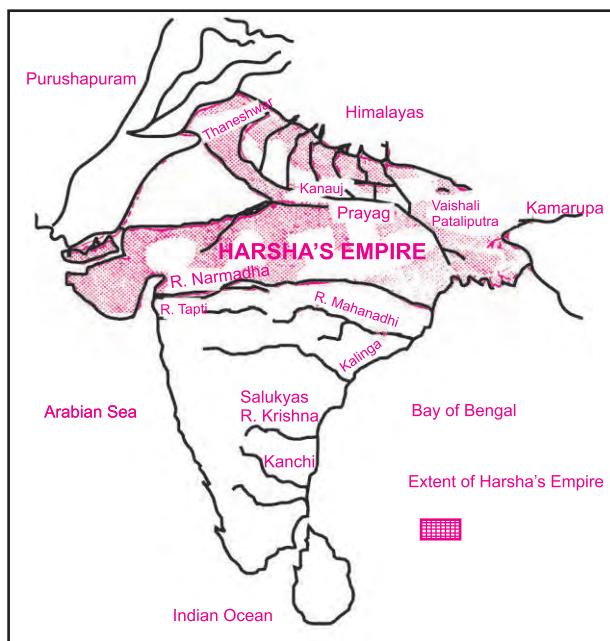
Harshavardhana, the King of Thaneshwar created an empire in north India which was already defeated by the Huns after the downfall of the Guptas. (AD 606 – 647) Harsha fought for a long time with Sasanka, the one who killed his brother. In this war, the king of Kamarubha, (Assam) Bhaskaravarma helped him. After the death of Sasanka, he annexed most of the parts of the kingdom of Bengal. As per his sister's request, he became **the king of Kanauj, which became his capital.** He conquered Malwa, Sind and Orissa. He also tried to conquer south India which was a failure because Pulikesi II defeated Harsha.

Because of the influence of his sister and **Hieun Tsang, the Chinese scholar,** Harsha embraced Buddhism. He held religious councils at Kanauj and Prayag. In this, most of the Buddhist and other religious scholars participated. At the end of the council, he generously distributed all his wealth

to the monks, scholars and public. The **Nalanda University** was the great seat of learning which came to limelight under Harsha's patronage. It attracted not only Indians but also foreigners.

Harsha went on frequent tours to find out the problems and fulfil the needs of his subjects during his administration. He patronized art and architecture. His minister **Bana** was a Sanskrit scholar who adorned his court. He wrote a book called **Harsha Charitha.**

HARSHA'S EMPIRE



Harsha, who was a great scholar wrote **Nagananda**, **Ratnavali** and **Priyadarshika**. The Chinese Buddhist monk **Hieun Tsang** visited India during his reign. He visited Kanauj, Prayag, Nalanda and

Kanchipuram. He stayed in Harsha's court for sometime. **Si-Yu-Ki**, a book on tours tells about Buddhism and about India of those days. Harsha's Empire was the last Empire in north India before the Islamic conquest.

Evaluation

I. Fill in the blanks

1. _____ established the Kushana Dynasty.
2. The book Buddha Charita was written by _____.
3. _____ was the physician of the Gupta period.
4. _____ was the king of Thaneshwar.
5. The period of Gupta was called the _____ of India.

II. State whether true or false

1. Peshawar was the capital of Kanishka.
2. Si-yu-ki was written by Hieun Tsang.
3. Ajilasim was the Greek architect.
4. Mehruali pillar belongs to the age of the Guptas.
5. Ashvaghosha wrote Sutralankar.

III. Match the following

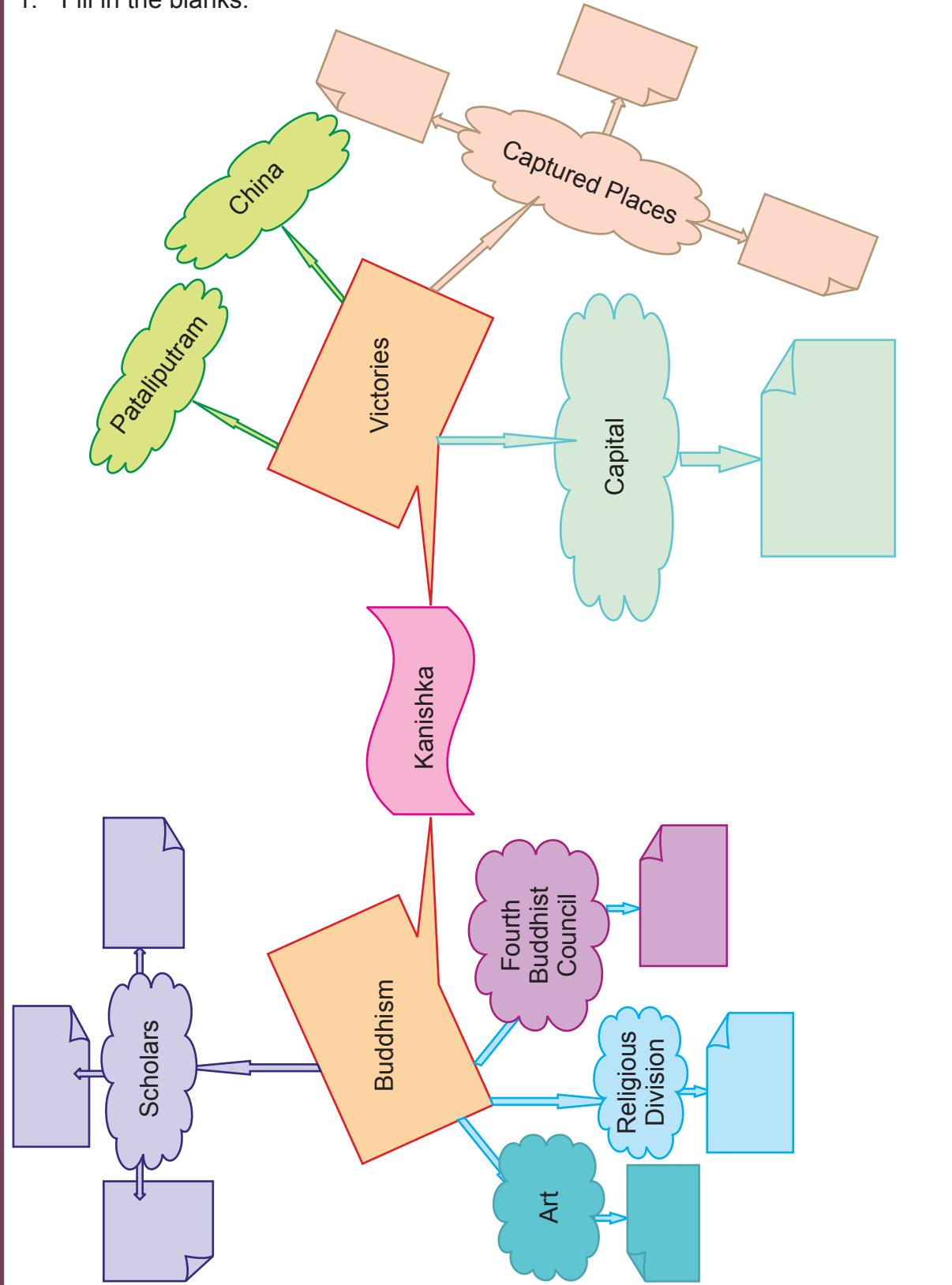
- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| 1. Fourth Buddhist Council | - | established Kushan Empire |
| 2. Samudra Gupta's period | - | Kumara Gupta |
| 3. Kanishka's period | - | Kanishka |
| 4. Pannar | - | Yueh - Chi tribe |
| 5. Harsha | - | AD 335 – AD 375 |
| 6. Kushan | - | AD 78 – AD 101 |
| 7. Ashoka II | - | Harshacharita |
| 8. Nalanda University | - | Kashmir |
| 9. Kadphises I | - | Priyadarshika |

IV. Answer the following

1. Explain the background of Gandhara art.
2. Why Gupta's period is known as the 'Golden Age' of India?
3. Mention the foreign invaders who were responsible for the decline of Guptas.
4. Explain - Saka period and Gupta period.
5. Discuss about Fahien and Hieun Tsang.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Fill in the blanks.



2. Write the names of the books and authors that you have read in the library.
3. How was it possible for Hieun Tsang to come to India when there was no transport facilities during those days? Know such travel experience by when reading or listening.
4. What was the main interest of the kings?
 - I. War
 - II. Social service – discuss.

SHAKTHII ACADEMY

SOCIAL STUDIES -HISTORY

STANDARD - SEVEN

COURSES OFFERED

- **BANK CLERK/PO/SO**
- **INSURANCE**
- **TANCET-MBA**
- **GRE, GMAT**
- **IELTS , TOEFL**
- **RRB, SSC**
- **TNPSC Group II, Group II- A, Group IV, VAO**

HISTORY

1. THE NORTH INDIAN KINGDOMS – THE RAJPUTS

The history of every country is long and complex. Hence to understand history in a very easy and convenient manner, the historians have divided it into different periods such as the **Ancient Period, the Medieval Period and the Modern Period.**

The period of history, that you are about to learn is the Medieval period of Indian History. This period lies between the 8th and the 18th century A.D. and is classified as **The Early Medieval period (8th-12th century A.D.) and the Later Medieval period (13th-18th century)**

In the forthcoming chapters you will be learning about the historical events that took place during this period in both North and South India. This chapter deals with the Rajputs who belonged to the early medieval period.

The Rajput Period (647 A.D- 1200 A.D.)

The Ancient Indian history came to an end with the rule of Harsha and Pulakesin II. From the death of Harsha to the 12th century, the destiny of India was mostly in the hands of various Rajput dynasties.

Origin of the Rajputs

Scholars have different theories about the origin of the Rajputs.

The popular theories are,

- i) They are the descendants of Lord Rama (Surya vamsa) or Lord Krishna (Chandra vamsa) or the Hero who sprang from the sacrificial fire (Agni Kula theory),
- ii) They belong to the ancient Kshatriya families,
- iii) They are foreigners.

There were nearly 36 Rajput clans. The major clans were

The Pratiharas of Avanti.
The Palas of Bengal.
The Chauhans of Delhi and Ajmer
The Tomars of Delhi
The Rathors of Kanauj
The Guhilas or Sisodiyas of Mewar
The Chandellas of Bundelkhand
The Paramaras of Malwa
The Senas of Bengal
The Solankis of Gujarat.

Struggle for Supremacy

During the Rajput period there were nearly 36 Rajput clans ruling over North India. A few of them were the Pratiharas, Palas, Chauhans, Tomars, Chandellas and Paramaras. There was no strong central

authority. The Rajputs lacked unity and struggled with one another. They also neglected the frontiers of India and gave way for the Muslims to invade India at a later period.

The Pratiharas 8th-11th Century A.D.

The Pratiharas were also known as Gurjara Pratiharas as they belonged to the Gurjara race.

They ruled over northern and western India from the 8th to the 11th century A.D.

Nagabhatta I (725–740 A.D.) was the founder of the Pratihara dynasty with **Kanauj** as his capital. He defeated the Arabs of Sind. He also captured Kathiawar, Malwa, Gujarat and several parts of the Rajputana.

Among his successors, **Vatsaraja** and **Nagabhatta II** played a vital role in consolidating the empire. **Mihirabhoja** was the most powerful Pratihara king. During his period, the empire extended from Kashmir to Narmada and from Kathiawar to Bihar. He was able to stop the Muslim invasion under Junaid of Sind. **Mahendrapala** (885-908 A.D.) son of Mihirabhoja, was also a powerful ruler. He extended his control over Magadha and north Bengal.

Pratiharas-A bulwark

The Pratiharas stood as a bulwark of India's defence against the aggression of the Muslims from the days of Junaid of Sind (725 A.D.) to that of Mahmud of Ghazni.

Decline of the Pratiharas

Rajyapala was the last Pratihara king. During his period the vast empire was reduced to Kanauj. The Pratihara power began to decline after Mahmud of Ghazni attacked the kingdom in 1018 A.D. After the decline of the Pratiharas their feudatories Palas, Tomars, Chauhans, Rathors, Chandellas, Guhilas and Paramaras became independent rulers.

The Palas (8th-12th Century A.D.)

There was complete anarchy in Bengal between 750–760 A.D. The chieftains of Bengal selected Gopala as the King of Bengal and Bihar in order to put an end to anarchy.

Gopala (765-769 A.D.) soon restored order and founded the Pala dynasty. Gopala extended his power over Magadha and the Pala dynasty ruled over northern and eastern India.

Dharmapala (769-815 A.D.) the son of Gopala, succeeded him. He brought Kanauj, Bengal and Bihar under his control and became the master of Northern India after defeating the Pratiharas. He was a staunch Buddhist and founded several monasteries and the famous Vikramasila University. He also renovated the Nalanda University.

Dharmapala's son **Devapala** (815-855 A.D.) who succeeded him kept the Pala territories intact. He also captured Assam and Orissa. His successors were weak. During the reign of **Mahipala** (998-1038 A.D.) the Palas became powerful again.

The Pala dynasty started declining after the death of Mahipala. The last Pala King was **Govinda Pala**. By the middle of the 12th century the Pala kingdom gave way to the rising power of the Senas.

Tripartite Struggle for Kanauj

The Pratiharas of Central India, the Palas of Bengal and the Rashtrakutas of Deccan wanted to establish their supremacy over Kanauj and the fertile Gangetic Valley. Their Tripartite struggle lasted nearly 200 years and weakened all of them and enabled the Turks to overthrow them.

The Tomars of Delhi

The Tomars were the feudatories of the Pratiharas. They rose to power and founded the city of Delhi in 736 A.D. In 1043 A.D., **Mahipala Tomar** captured Thaneshwar, Hansi and Nagarkot.

The Tomars became the feudatories of the Chauhans when Delhi was captured by them in middle of the 12th century.

The Chauhans of Delhi and Ajmer

The Chauhans who were the feudatories of the Pratiharas declared their independence in the 11th century at Ajmer. In the early part of the 12th century they captured Ujjain from the Paramaras of Malwa and Delhi from the Tomars. Thus they shifted their capital to Delhi. The most important ruler of this dynasty was **Prithviraj Chauhan**.

Rathors of Kanauj (1090-1194 A.D.)

There was a lot of confusion after the decline of the Pratiharas. Ultimately, the Rathors established themselves on the throne of Kanauj from 1090 to 1194 A.D. **Jaichand** was the last great ruler of this dynasty. He was killed in the battle of Chandwar in 1194 A.D. by Muhammad of Ghori.

The Chandellas of Bundelkhand

The Chandellas of Bundelkhand established themselves in the 9th century. The Chandella Chief **Yasovarman** had his capital at Mahoba.



Kandariya Mahadeva Temple

Kalinjar was their important fort. The Chandellas built a number of beautiful temples at **Khajuraho**, the most famous being the **Kandariya Mahadeva Temple** (1050 A.D.). Qutb-ud-din Aibak defeated, **Paramal** the last Chandella ruler in 1203 A.D.

The Guhilas or Sisodiyas of Mewar

The Rajput ruler **Bapa Rawal** was the founder of the Guhilas or the Sisodiya dynasty with its capital at **Chittor**. During the period of **Rana Ratan Singh** of Mewar, Ala-ud-din

khilji invaded his territory and defeated him in 1307 A.D. Rana Ratan Singh's wife Queen Padmini performed Jauhar. The Sisodiya rulers - **Rana Sangha** and **Maharana Pratap** gave a tough fight to the Mughal rulers of India.

The Paramaras of Malwa

The Paramaras were also the feudatories of Pratiharas. They asserted their independence in the 10th century and their capital was at Dhara. **Raja Bhoja** (1018-1069) was the most famous ruler of this period. He constructed a beautiful lake (More than 250 sq. miles) near Bhopal. He set up a college at Dhara for the study of Sanskrit Literature. The reign of the Paramaras came to an end with the invasion of Ala-ud-din Khilji.

Nature of the Rajputs

The Rajputs were great warriors and chivalrous by nature. They believed in protecting the women and the weak. The women preferred death to dishonour. They were educated and were highly honoured in society. They took part in public life and wars. Child marriage and polygamy were in practice. Women performed Sati and Jauhar to protect themselves from the hands of the enemies and to avoid dishonour.

Religion

The Rajputs were staunch followers of Hinduism. They also patronized Buddhism and Jainism. It was during their period that the Bhakti Cult started.

Government

The Rajput government was feudal in character. Each kingdom was divided into a large number of Jagirs held by the Jagirdars. The Jagidars collected revenue from the allocated villages and gave a share of it to the king. They also offered military assistance to their kings.

Contribution of the Rajputs

The Rajputs have contributed remarkably to the development of language, literature, art and architecture of India.

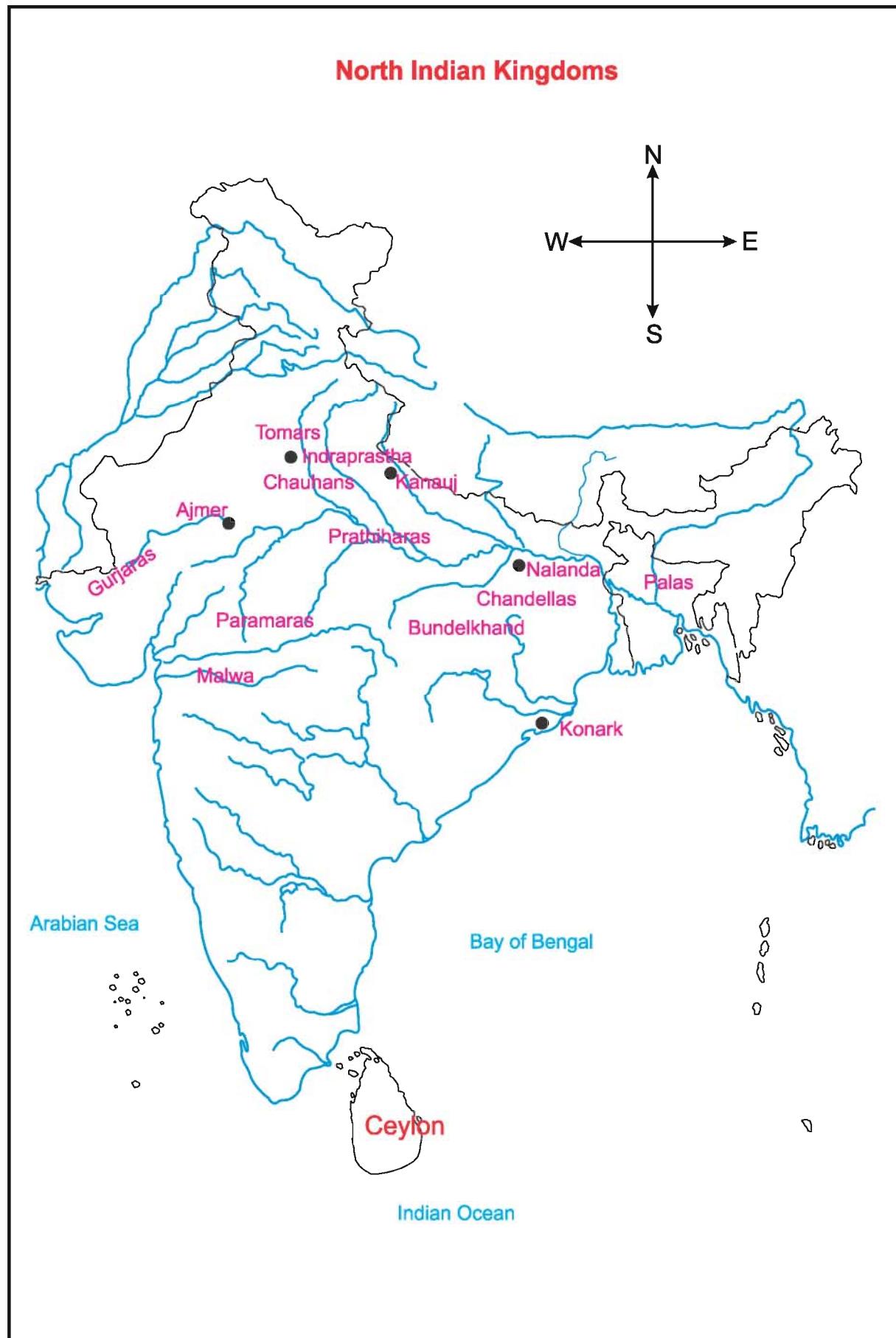
Language and Literature

During the Rajput period, regional languages like Marathi, Gujarati and Bengali were well developed. The Bhakti saints and the folk singers played a major role in the development of regional languages.



Lingaraja Temple

Some of the literary works of this period are **Kalhana's Rajatarangini**, **Jayadeva's Gita Govindam** and **Somadeva's Kathasaritasagar**. **Chand Bardai**, the court poet of Prithviraj Chauhan, wrote **Prithviraj Raso** in which he refers to the military exploits of Prithviraj Chauhan. **Bhaskara Charya** wrote **Siddhanta Shiromani**, a book on



astronomy. **Rajasekhara** was the court poet of Mahendrapala and Mahipala.



Sun Temple - Konark

His best known works were **Karpuramanjari** and **Bala Ramayana**.

Art and Architecture

Mural paintings and Miniature paintings became popular during this period.



Udaipur Palace

The Khajuraho group of temples, the Lingaraja Temple at

Bhubaneshwar, the Sun Temple at **Konark** and the **Dilwara Temple** at **Mount Abu** are the fine specimens of temple architecture of the Rajputs.



Dilwara Temple

The Khajuraho temples attract tourists from India and abroad. The Palaces at Jaipur and Udaipur and the forts at Jaisalmar, Chittor, Mandu, Jodhpur and Gwalior are fine examples of Rajput architecture.

End of the Rajput Power

During the Rajput period there was no strong military power in India to keep the warring princes in check and to co-ordinate their activities against foreign invasions. This political situation enabled the Turks to establish their control over India.

Sati : Self-immolation of a widow on her husband's funeral pyre.

Jauhar: A mass suicide of women in order to escape defilement at the hands of foreign victors.

The Rajput Literature - Gita Govindam: 'Song of the cowherd' Rajatarangini –'River of Kings', Kathasaritasagara – Ocean of tales'.

Khajuraho temples: The Khajuraho temples were built by the Chandellas between the 10th and 12th centuries A.D. They are regarded as divine poetry on stone. These temples were actually lost as they were overrun by a nearby jungle till the early 19th century and were found. There are around 30 temples in the area in and around Bundelkhand. The exterior and the interior of these temples have very fine sculptures

EXERCISE**I) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The Middle Period or the medieval period extended from the _____ century.
 a) 8th-18th b) 1-8th c) 18th – Present
2. The founder of the Pratihara dynasty was _____.
 a) Mahendrapala b) Mihirabhoja c) Nagabhatta I
3. Dharmapala founded the famous University at _____.
 a) Nalanda b) Taxila c) Vikramasila
4. The most important ruler of the Chauhan dynasty was _____ Chauhan
 a) Jayapala b) Mahipala c) Prithviraj
5. The capital of the Paramaras was at _____.
 a) Delhi b) Malwa c) Dhara

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. The Pratiharas were also known as _____.
2. Gopala extended his power over _____.
3. The Nalanda University was renovated by _____.
4. Raja Bhoja constructed a beautiful lake near _____.
5. Bhaskaracharya wrote Siddhanta Shiromani, a book on _____.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Khajuraho Temples | - Mount Abu |
| 2. Chand Bardai | - Chandellas |
| 3. Rajasekara | - Prithviraj Raso |
| 4. Sun Temple | - Karpuramanjari |
| 5. Dilwara Temple | - Konark |

IV) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. How is the Medieval Period of Indian History classified?
2. Name any four Rajput Clans which ruled over North India.
3. Write a note on the nature of the Rajputs.
4. What was the contribution of the Chandellas to temple architecture?
5. Who was the founder of Guhila dynasty? Where was its capital?

V) Answer in detail.

1. Write a detailed account of the Pratiharas.
2. What were the contributions of the Rajputs in various fields?

Formative Assessment

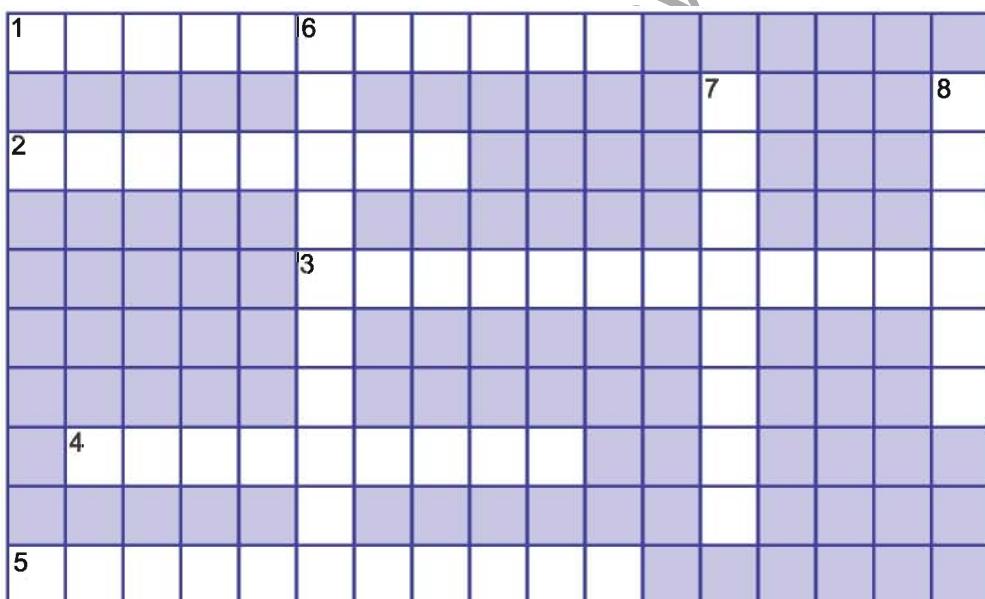
I. Rearrange the jumbled words:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. Founder of the Guhila dynasty | - WABAPARAL |
| 2. Chandella chief | - RYAANOSVAM |
| 3. Last Pratihara king | - ALPAYAARJ |
| 4. Last Chandella ruler | - MPLARAAN |
| 5. Most famous Paramara ruler | - JAHABAORJ |

II. WHO AM I ?

1. I renovated the Nalanda University - Who am I?
2. I constructed a beautiful lake near Bhopal – Who am I?
3. I was the last great ruler of Rathor dynasty – Who am I?
4. I wrote the book Rajatarangini – Who am I?
5. I am the son of Mihira Bhoja – Who am I?

III. Cross Word:



Across:

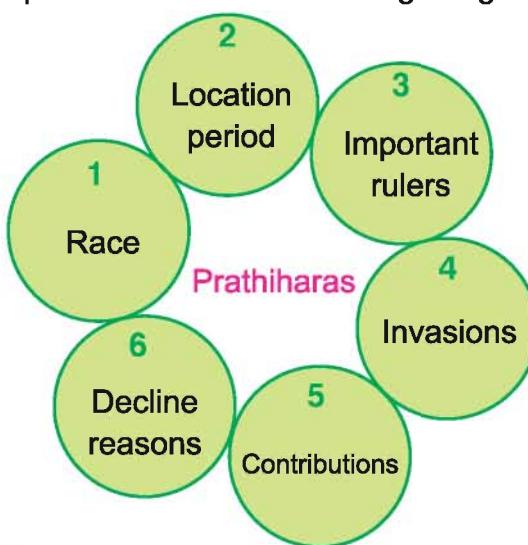
1. The last Pala ruler.
2. The ruler who strengthened the Pala dynasty.
3. The Pratihara ruler who extended his kingdom upto the Magadha Empire.
4. The ruler who consolidated the Pratihara Empire.
5. The most powerful ruler of the Pratiharas.

Down:

6. The founder of the Vikramasila University.
7. The son of Dharmapala.
8. The founder of the Pala dynasty.

IV. Mind Mapping :

Write a paragraph on the Prathiharas using the given hints.

**V. Group Activity:**

1. Write the names of all the rulers belonging to different clans on the board or on the flash cards.
2. Draw the following tabular column on the board.
3. Divide the class into groups and ask a child from each group to pick a name of the ruler, and fill it in the relevant column.

Prathiharas	Palas	Tomars	Chauhans	Rathors	Chandelas	Guhilas	Paramaras

VI. Things to do:

1. Mark the following places on the outline map of India.
Ajmer, Nalanda, Kanauj, Bundelkhand, Indraprastha.
2. Enact a skit on the theme - 'United we stand and divided we fall' keeping in mind the political conditions during the Rajput Period.

2. THE KINGDOMS OF THE DECCAN

The southern part of India is called the Deccan or the Dakshinapatha. The Deccan was separated from Northern India by the Vindhya and Satpura mountains, the Narmada and Tapti and the dense forests. Hence, the southern region was not affected much by the historical happenings in North India. The medieval period witnessed the rise of the Chalukyas and the Rashtrakutas in the Deccan. With the decline of the Chalukyas their feudatories namely the Hoysalas, Kakatiyas and Yadavas asserted their independence. This period also saw the extension of the Delhi Sultanate namely the Khiljis and the Tughluqs into South India.

The Chalukyas (6th - 12th century A.D.)

The Chalukyas were a dominant power in the Deccan. Their period is divided as follows: the Early Western Chalukyas - 6th-8th century A.D., the Later Western Chalukyas 10th-12th century A.D. and the Eastern Chalukyas-7th-12th century A.D.

Early Western Chalukyas (6th-8th century A.D.)

The Chalukyas rose to power in Karnataka in the 6th century A.D. Their capital was **Vatapi**, (modern Badami) in the Bijapur district. The Chalukya power had a humble beginning under **Jayasimha** and **Ramaraya**. **Pulakesin-I** (543-566 A.D) was the real founder of the

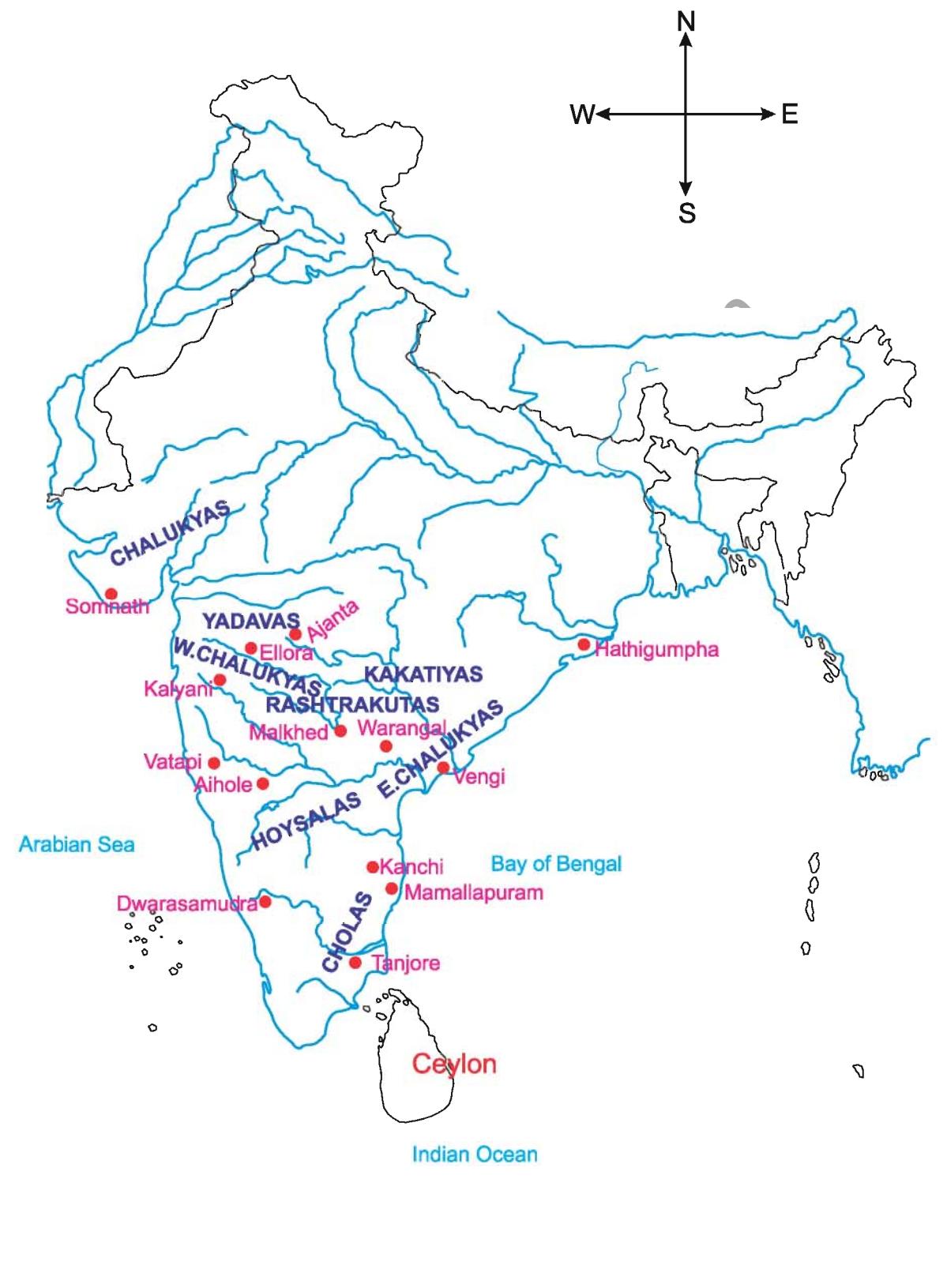
Early Western Chalukyas. **Pulakesin II** (610-642 A.D.) was the greatest ruler of this dynasty. He defeated Gangas, Malavas and Gurjaras. He successfully opposed Harsha's attack in the north and defeated him in 637 A.D. In the south he was constantly struggling with the Pallavas. Pulakesin II defeated the Pallava King Mahendravarman I after which he crossed the Cauvery and made friendly alliances with the Cholas, Cheras and Pandiyas. In 642 A.D., Narasimhavarman I invaded the Chalukya kingdom. Pulakesin II lost his life during the war.

Vikramaditya-I, **Vijayaditya** and **Vikramaditya-II** were the other important rulers of this dynasty. They had to struggle with the Pallavas and the Rashtrakutas. Dantidurga, founder of the Rashtrakuta Empire overthrew **Kirtivarman-II**, the last of the Chalukya Kings of Badami. The Chalukyas were not very significant for well over two centuries.

Later Western Chalukyas of Kalyani (10th-12th century A.D.)

The Chalukyas rose to power again at Kalyani during the second half of the 10th Century and continued to rule till the end of the 12th Century A.D. Tailapa II (973-997 A.D) the founder of this dynasty brought the Rashtrakuta rule to an end. The important rulers of this dynasty were **Someshwara-II**, **Jayasimha-II** and **Vikramaditya-VI**.

Deccan Kingdoms



Someswara IV was the last ruler of this dynasty.

Eastern Chalukyas of Vengi (7th -12th century A.D.)

Vishnu Vardhana, a brother of Pulakesin-II, was the founder of the Eastern Chalukya Empire of Vengi. The Eastern Chalukyas outlived the main Badami dynasty by many generations. They had matrimonial alliance with the later Imperial Cholas.

One of their descendants namely **Kulothunga Chola** (1071-1122 A.D.) was enthroned as a Chola ruler. He merged the Chalukya kingdom with the Chola Empire and started the Chalukya-Chola line of rulers.

Contributions of the Chalukyas

The Chalukya kings were the followers of Hinduism. They also patronized Jainism. **Ravikirti**, the court poet of Pulakesin-II who composed the **Aihole Inscription** was a Jain. The Chalukyas were great patrons of architecture. They had built around 70 Vishnu temples in Aihole. Hence Aihole has been called the "**Cradle of Indian Temple architecture**". Other important temples of this period are the **Virupaksha temple at Pattadakal** and the group of temples at Badami.

Pattadakal: It was a historical place known even to the ancient Greeks and Romans. There are as many as 10 temples at Pattadakal belonging to the Chalukya rulers.

The Virupaksha temple: This temple was built by Lokamahadevi, the queen of Vikramaditya II. In front of the Hall of the Priests or Antarala there is a pillared Mandapam or a meeting place for the people.

The Virupaksha temple is built on the model of the Kailasanatha temple at Kancheepuram.

Telugu literature developed during this period.



Temple at Aihole



Pattadakal group of Temples

The Rashtrakutas (8th -10th century A.D.)

The period of the Rashtrakuta ascendancy (753-975 A.D.) constitutes perhaps the most brilliant chapter in the history of the Deccan. The Rashtrakutas were the descendants of the Rathors of the North. Kannada was the mother tongue of the Rashtrakutas.

The term "Rashtrakutas" means designated officers-in-charge of territorial divisions called Rashtras. The members of the family were district officers under the early Chalukyas of Badami.

The greatness of the Rashtrakutas started with **Dantidurga**. He occupied Ellora in 742 AD and became a feudatory of Kirtivarman of Badami. He captured Maharastra, Gujarat and most of the districts of central and northern Madhya Pradesh. He subjugated the Cholas of Srisailam country (Kurnool) and then besieged Kanchi in 750 A.D. He entered into matrimonial alliance with Nandivarman II Pallavamalla of Kanchi and gave his daughter Reva in marriage to him. After strengthening his power, Dantidurga attacked his suzerain Kirtivarman-II and proclaimed himself the paramount ruler of the Deccan in 753 A.D. Rashtrakuta territory extended around Nasik in the Northern Deccan with **Malkhed** as its capital.

Dantidurga died in 756 A.D. and was succeeded by his uncle **Krishna-I** (756-775 A.D.). He made Silharas as his feudatory. He also invaded Gangavadi. **Govinda-II** (775- 780 A.D.), the son of Krishna I invaded the kingdom of Vengi and entered into alliances with the rulers of Gangavadi, Kanchi, Vengi and Malwa.

Dhurva (780-792 A.D.) who succeeded Govinda-II, was an able ruler. He annexed Malwa and made Chakrayudha of Kanauj to accept his overlordship. He defeated the Pallava ruler Dantivarman. The king of Ceylon also accepted his suzerainty. He defeated Vijayaditya-II of Vengi and supported Bhima, the half brother of Vijayaditya-II. Thus the Rashtrakuta

power became invincible during his time.

Govinda-III (792 – 814 A.D.) was succeeded by his fourteen year old son **Amoghavarsha-I** (814-880 A.D.). His cousin Karka defeated Vijayaditya-II of Vengi and the Ganga ruler Rajamalla-I. **Krishna-III** (936–968 A.D.) was the next famous ruler. He defeated the Cholas at Takkolam and captured Tanjore. He went as far as Rameshwaram. **Karka-II** (972-973 A.D.), the last ruler of the Rashtrakutas was defeated by Tailapa-II, the Chalukya ruler of Kalyani. This marked the downfall of the Rashtrakutas.

Significance of the Rashtrakutas

The Rashtrakuta rulers inflicted severe defeats on many north Indian rulers and changed the whole course of the history of north India. They subjugated the Palas, Pratiharas, Eastern Chalukyas, and Cholas and advanced as far as Rameswaram.

Ellora: The Ellora caves were excavated during the reign of the Chalukyas and later by the Rashtrakuta Kings. Hindu, Buddhist and Jain deities are found in these cave temples. The Kailasanatha temple found here is the world's largest temple hewn out of a single block of rock and is the most imposing.

Contributions

The Rashtrakutas were great patrons of art and architecture. Krishna-I built the magnificent

Kailasanatha temple at Ellora. The Elephanta caves near Mumbai were completed by the Rashtrakutas. **Amoghavarsha** was a great patron of literature. He wrote **Kaviraja Marga** in the Kannada language. His teacher **Jinasena** wrote **Parsavaudaya**, a biography of Parsava.

The Hoysalas of Dwarasamudra (11th - 14th Century A.D.)

The Hoysalas were originally feudatories of the later Western Chalukyas of Kalyani. **Vinayaditya** (1006 -1022 A.D.) carved out a petty principality of Mysore and ruled over it with **Sosavir** as his capital. **Vishnuvardhana** was the first distinguished ruler of Vinayaditya's family. He shifted his capital to **Dwarasamudra**. He captured Gangavadi from Kulothunga Chola.

Gangavadi served as a buffer state between the Chalukyas and the Chola Empire. The next important ruler **Vira Ballala-II** (1173-1220 A.D.) defeated Billama V of the Yadava Dynasty. He asserted the independence of the Hoysalas.

Narasimhan-II (1220-1235 A.D.) lost the territory between Krishna and Tungabhadra to Singhana, a Yadava ruler. But he defeated Maravarman Sundara Pandya and restored Rajaraja-III to the Chola throne and he erected the pillar of victory at Rameshwaram.

Ballala III (1291-1342 A.D) was the last great ruler of this dynasty. In 1310 A.D. he was defeated by Malik Kafur. He struggled hard against the

Turkish garrison. He fell a victim to the Sultans of Madurai in 1342 A.D. His son **Ballala IV** continued his struggle with the Muslims. With his death the Hoysala Kingdom came to end.

Contributions

The Hoysalas paved the way for the rise of Mysore into a big Kingdom. The Hoysalas were great partons of art, architecture and literature. They constructed a number of temples at Dwarasamudra and Belur. Scenes from Ramayana and Mahabharata were depicted in those temples. Hoysalas encouraged Kannada literature. **Nayachandra**, **Kanti**, **Raghavanka** and **Nemichandra** were the great writers of this period.

The Kakatiyas of Warangal (12th - 14th Century A.D.)

The Kakatiyas were the feudatories of the Later Western Chalukyas of Kalyani. **Prola-II** (1110 -1158 A.D.) the Kakatiya ruler captured the territory between the Krishna and the Godavari from the Chalukyas and ruled over it with **Hanumakonda** as his capital. His son **Prataparudra-I** (1158-1196.A.D.) shifted the capital to Warangal. The next remarkable ruler was **Ganapathi** (1199-1261.A.D.). He captured territories upto Kanchi from the Cholas. He invaded Kalinga and Western Andhra. Ganapati was succeeded by his daughter **Rudrambha** (1261-1291.A.D.). Peace and prosperity prevailed in the country during her reign.

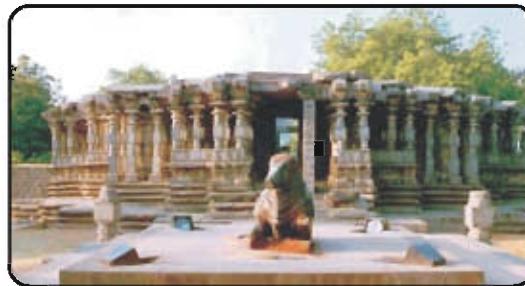
She abdicated the throne in favour of her grandson **Prataparudra-II** (1291-1326 A.D.). During his rule Malik Kafur invaded Warangal in 1309 A.D. After offering a stiff resistance, Prataparudra-II yielded and paid him an immense booty.

Ulugh Khan, the son of Ghiasud-din Tughluq captured Warangal in 1323 A.D. and sent Prataparudra II to Delhi. His successors continued their struggle with the rulers of the Tughluq dynasty. In 1327A.D. Mohammad-bin-Tughluq captured Warangal. **Vinayakadeva** the last nominal ruler of this dynasty was put to death by Muhammad Shah I, the Bahmani Sultan in 1362 A.D. After his death, the Kakatiya dynasty came to an end.

The famous **Kohinoor Diamond** which was unearthed in Kollur on the banks of the Krishna river belonged to the Kakatiyas.

Contributions

The Kakatiyas encouraged literature, art and architecture. The thousand Pillar temple at Hanumakonda stands as an everlasting contribution of the Kakatiyas.



The Thousand Pillar temple at Hanumakonda

THE YADAVAS OF DEVAGIRI (12th -14th Century A.D.)

The Yadavas of Devagiri claimed their descent from the epic hero Lord Krishna. They were known as Seunas because they ruled over Sevuna, the region from Nasik to Devagiri(Daulatabad). Their ancestors were the vassals of the Rashtrakutas and the Later Western Chalukyas of Kalyani.

Bhillama-V (1175-1190 A.D.) the Yadava ruler took advantage of the declining power of the Later Western Chalukyas of Kalyani, defeated Someswara-IV and declared his independence. He also came into conflict with Vira Balalla-II (1173-1220A.D.), a Hoysala ruler. In the battle of Lakkundi, Bhillama V lost his life.

Bhillama V was succeeded by his son Jaitrapala (1191-1210 A.D.) He defeated Kalachuris, Gurjaras and Kakatiyas. Jaitrapala was succeeded by his son **Singhana** (1210-1247A.D.) who defeated Mahadeva, a Kakatiya ruler. Singhana was the most distinguished ruler of this dynasty. He defeated Vira Ballala-II the Hoysala ruler and extended his dominion beyond the River Krishna. He invaded Gujarat many times and annexed Kolhapur which belonged to Silhara dynasty.

Singhana was succeeded by his grandson **Krishna** (1247-1260 A.D.). He was succeeded by his brother **Mahadeva** (1260-1271 A.D) who annexed north Konkan and put an end to the Silhara dynasty. He also

defeated the Kakatiyas and the Hoysalas.

Ramachandra Deva (1271-1309 A.D.) was the last great ruler of this dynasty. Ala-ud-din-Khilji defeated him and made him as a vassal of the Delhi Sultanate. **Sankara Deva** (1309 – 1312 A.D.) the son and successor of Ramachandra Deva failed to pay his arrears. So, Malik Kafur defeated and killed him in 1312 A.D. Harapala, brother-in-law of Sankara Deva raised the flag against the Khiljis. Mubarak, son of Ala-ud-din Khilji defeated and killed Harapala. Thus the Yadava dynasty came to an end.

The Elephanta Caves : The Elephanta Caves were hewn out of rocks by the Rashtrakuta Kings. They are located on a small island near Mumbai. The Portuguese named it so as they discovered a huge elephant sculpture here. The temple is dedicated to Lord Shiva and contains many sculptures of gods and goddesses.

Contribution of the Yadavas

The **Devagiri fort** was built during the reign of the Yadavas. It was one of the strongest forts in India. The Delhi Sultans later added a Juma Masjid and Chand Minar inside it. The Yadavas also patronized the study of science and astronomy.

End of the Deccan Kingdoms

The constant struggle among the rulers of the Deccan kingdoms weakened their rule. Further the attacks on them by the Sultans of Delhi ever since the rule of Ala-ud-din Khilji led to their decline.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the best answer.

1. The Virupaksha temple is built on the model of the _____ temple.
a) Kailasanatha b) Brihadeeswara c) Hoysaleswara
2. The Rashtrakuta power became invincible during the time of _____.
a) Dandidurga b) Govinda c) Dhurva
3. Vishnuvardhana the Hoysala ruler shifted his capital from Sosavir to _____.
a) Dwarasamudra b) Warangal c) Devagiri
4. The Kakatiya dynasty came to an end with the death of _____.
a) Prataparudra-II b) Vinayakadeva c) Rudramba

5. The most distinguished Yadhava ruler was _____.
 a) Jaitrapala b) Singhana c) Krishna

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. The greatest king of the Early Western Chalukyas was _____.
2. Kulothunga Chola merged the Chalukyan Kingdom with the _____ Empire.
3. The descendants of the Rathors of the North were the _____.
4. Krishna I built the _____ temple at Ellora.
5. Ballala III was the last great ruler of _____ dynasty.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Pulakesin I | - Devagiri |
| 2. Virupaksha Temple | - Dwara samudra |
| 3. Hoysalas | - Warangal |
| 4. Kakatiyas | - Early Western Chalukyas |
| 5. Yadavas | - Pattadakal |

IV) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. What separated Deccan from North India?
2. Why do we say that the Chalukyas were great patrons of architecture?
3. Write a short note on Dhurva, the Rashtrakuta ruler?
4. What do you know about the architecture of the Hoysala period?
5. What led to the end of Deccan Kingdom?

V) Answer the following in detail.

1. Given an account of the early western Chalukyas.
2. Give a detailed account of Dantidurga, the Rastrakuta ruler?

Formative Assessment

I. Test your memory and fill in the blanks.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. The capital of the early western Chalukyas | _ at _ p _. |
| 2. Founder of the Rashtrakuta empire | D _ n _ id _ r _ a. |
| 3. The court poet of Pulakesin II | Ra _ iki _ _ i. |
| 4. The Cradle of Indian temple Architecture | A_h_ _ e. |
| 5. One of the strongest forts of Yadavas | D_va_i_i fort. |

II. Prepare an album on Art, Architecture and paintings belonging to the Deccan Kingdoms.

III. Conduct a debate on "Our Dynasty is the best".

Divide the class into groups as Chalukyas / Rashtrakutas / Hoysalas / Kakatiyas / Yadavas. Two students from each group can participate and claim that their dynasty is the best.

IV. Prepare a poster:

Prepare a poster on any one of the Deccan rulers whom you think is the best.

V. Group activity:

Know more about the topic

1. Write the name of the Ruler/ Book / Author/ monument on small strips of paper. Fold and keep it in a container.
2. Ask a child from each group to come forward, pick a chit and say a few words about the topic.

VI. Things to do:

On the outline map of India mark the following places.

Vatapi, Vengi, Kalyani, Dwarasamudra, Malkhed, Aihole, Ellora, Warangal.

3. THE SOUTH INDIAN KINGDOMS

The ancient Tamizhagam was divided into three political units under the Cheras, Cholas and the Pandiyas. Their period of existence is known as the Sangam Age. The Kalabhras who rose to power during this period ruled nearly for three centuries from 300-600 A.D. In this chapter we will study in detail about the Later Pallava dynasty, Imperial Cholas and the Pandiyas.

THE PALLAVAS Political History

There is a controversy over the origin of the Pallavas. Some of the views are—they were of Persian origin or the feudatories of the Satavahanas or the natives of Tondaimandalam. There were two branches of Pallavas namely, the early and later Pallavas.

LATER PALLAVAS (570-903 A.D.)

Simhavishnu was the first ruler of the later Pallava dynasty. He destroyed the Kalabhras and firmly established the Pallava rule in Tondaimandalam with his capital at **Kanchi**. He seized the regions of the Cholas. His kingdom extended from Andhra Kingdom, Vishnukundin up to the river Cauvery. He assumed the title 'Avanisimha' or the 'Lion of the Earth'.

- **Hieun Tsang:** Hieun Tsang visited the Pallava capital Kanchipuram. According to him Kanchi was about 6 miles in circumference. There were more than one hundred Buddhist monasteries and many Jain temples here. Kanchi was the greatest centre of education in the south.
- **Vatsayana** was a pandit of Kanchi. Dharmapala went from Kanchi to Nalanda. Dandi the author of "Dandi alangaram" a poet from North India lived in Kanchi.

MAHENDRAVARMAN-I (600 – 630 A.D.)

Mahendravarman-I was the son of Simhavishnu. Conflicts arose between the Chalukyas and the Pallavas during this period. He lost the northern parts of the Pallava Kingdom to Pulakesin II.

Though a follower of Jainism, he embraced Saivism due to Saint Appar's influence. He was a versatile scholar. He took up the titles like Chitrakarapuli and Vichitra Chitta for his excellence in building, painting and music. He constructed the cities of Mahendramangalam and Mahendravadi.

NARASIMHAVARMAN-I (630-668 A.D.)

Narasimhavarman-I was the first son of Mahendravarman I. He was known as Mamalla which means **a great wrestler**. He assumed the title Vatapi Kondan for destroying the Chalukya capital Vatapi. He sent two expeditions to Ceylon, to restore his friend Manavarman to the throne of Ceylon. During his period Hieun Tsang visited the Pallava capital Kanchipuram. Narasimhavarman was a great builder. The monolithic rathas at Mamallapuram stand testimony to his architectural skill.

RAJASIMHA OR NARASIMHAVARMAN-II (691-728 A.D.)

Narasimhavarman II, the son of Parameswaran I was one of the most famous rulers of the Pallavas. His reign was marked by peace and prosperity. He built several fine temples including the Kailasanatha



Kailasanatha Temple-Kanchi



A Pallava Coin

temple at Kanchi, the Shore temple at Mamallapuram and the Talagirisvara temple at Panamalai. The famous Sanskrit scholar Dandin, author of Dandialankaram (Sanskrit Grammar work) spent many years in his court. Trade relations were established even with China.

Parameswaran-II (728-731 A.D.), the son of Narasimhavarman-II came to power in 728 A.D. He was defeated by the Chalukya ruler Vikramaditya-II. He died in a battle with the Gangas. The Simhavishnu line of rule came to an end with the death of Parameswaram-II as his son did not succeed him.

Nandivarman-II Pallavamalla (731-796 A.D.) was the son of Simhavishnu's brother Hiranyavarman. He was chosen by the Pallava ministers, the members of ghatika (college of learning) and the common people to succeed Parameswaran-II. Nandivarman II was a worshipper of Vishnu. He built the Vaikunta Perumal temple at Kanchi. The great Vaishnava Saint Thirumangai Alwar was his contemporary.

Decline of the Pallavas

The successors of Nandivarman-II were not very strong and powerful. They had to face Pandya aggressions. The last Pallava ruler **Aparajitha** (885-903 A.D.) was defeated by Aditya-I, a Chola ruler. The Pallava rule at Tondaimandalam thus came to an end with his downfall.

Administration of the Pallavas

The Pallavas had a well organized system of administration. The Pallava region was divided into four divisions namely the Rashtras or Mandalams, Vishayas or Kottams, Nadus and Urs. The King was the head of the Central administration.

He was assisted by Ministers and Secretaries. There were civil and criminal courts.

The village was the lowest unit of administration. The Uravai or the village Assemblies were in charge of the village Administration. Various variyams played an important role in taking care of the needs in the villages. There were 20 variyams like the Erivariyyam, Thottavariyyam, and Kovilvariyyam etc.

Variyams were Executive committees.

Contributions of the Pallavas Literature

The Pallavas were great patrons of learning. Mahendravarman-I wrote **Mattavilasa Prahasana** and **Bhagavadviugam**. Bharavi wrote **Kiratharjunyam**. Avanti Sundari Kathasara was written by Dandin. The works of Alwars and Nayanmars belong to this period. **Nandi Kalambhagam** and **Perundevanar's Bharatavenba** were the other books which belonged to this period.

Pallava art and architecture

The Pallava rulers began the Dravidian style of temple architecture. Its development can be



Monolithic Rathas- Mamallapuram

seen in four styles. The first style was the Rock cut temple which was introduced by Mahendravarman I.

This style of temples were excavated at places like Mahendravadi, Mammandur, Dalavanur, Thiruchirappalli, Siyamangalam, Thirukazhukundram, etc.

The second style is represented by the Monolithic rathas and mandapas found at Mamallapuram. The third style is the structural temple in the Rajasimha style. Eg. **Kailsanatha temple at Kanchi**, the **Shore temple at Mamallapuram**, etc. The last style is also the Structural temples continued by the later Pallavas. Eg. **Vaikundaperumal temple**, the **Muktheeswara temple**, etc.

The Pallava rulers also paid considerable attention to the fine arts like music and painting. Mahendravarman assumed the title of **Sankirtanajati** for his mastery in music. Exquisite paintings of the Pallavas are found in the Kailasanatha temple at Kanchi.

The Cholas

The Cholas were an antique ruling family. References to the Cholas are made in the Mahabharata, the inscriptions of Asoka and the works of Megasthenes and Ptolemy.

During the Sangam Age, the Cholas ruled Tiruchi and Tanjore region. Their capital was Uraiyur. Tiger was their emblem. Their greatest ruler Karikala built Kallanai across the river Cauvery near Trichy.

The Chola rule declined as they became feudatories of the rulers of Uraiur.

Later Cholas or Imperial Cholas

The Cholas who emerged to power in the middle of the ninth century were known as later Cholas or Imperial Cholas. They were called as Imperial Cholas because their kingdom extended to a major portion of south India, Srilanka and Kadaram (including Sumatra and Malaya).

Vijayalaya (850-871 A.D) laid the foundation for the rise of later Cholas.

Aditya I (871-907 A.D) son of Vijayalaya became the ruler of Tondaimandalam as well as Cholamandalam. He defeated Gangas and Kongu country. Parantaka-I, son of Aditya-I defeated the Pandya ruler and took up the title-Maduraikondan. He was defeated by the Rashtrakuta ruler Krishna-III in the battle of Takkolam. Parantaka died in 955 A.D.

Successors of Parantaka-I

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. Gandaraditya | 949 -957 A.D. |
| 2. Arinjaya | 956 -957 A.D. |
| 3. Parantaka-II | 956 -973 A.D. |
| 4. Aditya | 956-966 A.D. |
| 5. Uttama Chola | 965-985 A.D. |

- The later Cholas were well-versed in maintaining and auditing of accounts.
- Free hospitals called 'Aathular salai' were setup at Thanjavur and many more places.

Rajaraja-I (985-1014 A.D.)

Rajaraja-I was the most powerful ruler of the Chola Empire. He was a great conqueror. He defeated the Cheras, Pandyas and the Chalukyas. He defeated Mahinda-V of Ceylon and built a Siva temple at Anuradhapuram. He even conquered Maldives. Thus the power of Cholas extended beyond South India.

Rajaraja I defeated the Chera ruler Bhaskaravarman at Kanthalursaalai (Trivandrum) and Sathyasraya, ruler of Kalyani and restored the throne of Vengi to Sakthivarman. He gave his daughter in marriage to Vimaladitya, brother of Sakthivarman. He captured Gangavadi, Adigaipadi, Nolambadi, in the Mysore region and Raichur Doab.

Rajaraja-I assumed the titles Mumudi Chola, Jayamkondan and Sivapadasekara. He was a follower of Saivism. Devaram was collected and codified only during his period. He constructed the Brahadeeswara Temple at Tanjore in 1010 A.D. He died in 1014 A.D.

Varipotthagam

The Varipotthagam was a book containing all revenue records. During Rajaraja's reign a revenue survey was undertaken in 1001 A.D. by Senathipati Kuravan, a revenue officer.

Rajendran-I (1012 – 1044 A.D.)

Rajendran-I further expanded and consolidated the empire.

He captured Idaidurainadu (Raichur Doab), Vanavasi (Kadamba capital), Kollipakkai (areas in Hyderabad) and Mannai Kadakkam (Malkhed).



Brihadisvara Temple - Tanjore

He conquered the whole of Ceylon (Ilamandalam). He also defeated the Pandyas, the Cheras and the Western Chalukyas. Rajendran - I defeated Mahipala, ruler of Bengal and in memory of his expedition, he founded the city 'Gangaikonda Cholapuram'. His greatest achievement was his conquest of Srivijaya, Kadaram and the places between the Nicobar Islands and the Malaya Peninsula. He earned the titles Gangaikondan, Panditha Cholan and Kadaram Kondan. The Chola Empire reached its zenith of glory under Rajendra I.

Immediate successors of Rajendra-I

Rajadhiraja I	1018- 1054 A.D.
Rajendra II	1056- 1064 A.D.
Rajamahendra	1060- 1063 A.D.
Virarajendra	1063-1070 A.D.
Adirajendra	1067- 1070 A.D.

Kulottunga-I (1071- 1122 A.D.)

Kulottunga-I who was born to

Ammangadevi, the daughter of Rajendra-I and Rajaraja of Vengi started the Chalukya Chola line of rulers. He united Vengi Kingdom with the Chola Empire.

Kulottunga-I defeated the western Chalukyas. He also captured Kalinga. During his reign Srilanka declared its independence. He had very close relationship with Srivijaya and sent trade missions to their land in 1077 A.D.

Kulottunga-I was a great administrator. He measured the lands and regulated land revenue. As he removed excise duties he was called as 'Sungam Thavirtha Cholan'. He patronized great literary scholars like Jeyamkondan, Ottakkuthar, Pugazhendi and Kambar.

Disintegration of the Cholas

The Chola Empire began to disintegrate due to the rise of feudatories like the Kadavarayas and the emergence of the Pandya Empire. Rajendra-III (1246-1279 A.D.) was the last Chola ruler. The Chola Kingdom was annexed to the Pandya Empire with the defeat of Rajendra-III by Jatavarman Sundrapandya-II.

Chola Administration

The Cholas set up a highly efficient system of administration. The empire was divided into provinces called Mandalams. The Mandalams were further divided into Kottams, Districts called Nadu or Valanadu and Villages called Urs.

The Utharamerur inscription of

Parantaka-I gives a detailed account of the village administration. Each village had a Village Assembly called Ur or Sabha, which looked after the administration of the village.

The members of the village Assembly were elected by the **Kudavolai System**. The names of the eligible persons were written on palm leaves and put into a pot. A boy or a girl would pick up thirty names. The chosen persons were declared elected.

There were Variyams such as Samvatsara Variyam, Eri variyam, Thotta variyam, Pancha variyam, Pon variyam and Puravuvari variyam to carry out the different functions of the village. It's members were called as Variyaperumakkal. The number of Variyams and it's members varied from village to village.

Socio-Economic Conditions

There were many castes and sub-castes in the Chola society. The practice of Sati and Devadasi system were prevalent. The women were in the habit of saving money called 'Sirupadu'.

The weaving industry and metal works were developed. Guilds were prevalent. Commercial contacts were established with China, Sumatra, Java and Arabia.

Religion and Education

The Chola kings were patrons of Saivism. They were tolerant towards other religions like Vaishnavism and Buddhism. Temples and Matts were

the centres of learning. Details about these learning centres are found in the inscriptions at Ennayiram, Thirumukkudal and Thirubuvanam.

Literature

The development of Tamil literature reached its zenith during the Chola period. The two master pieces of this age are the **Ramayana** composed by Kambar and the **Periyapuram** or **Thiruttondarpuranam** by Sekizhar. **Seevaka Chinthamani** was written by Thiruthaka Devar. **Nambiandar Nambi** compiled **Panniruthirumurai**, a saivite work. **Nalayiradivyaprabhandam** a Vishnavite work was compiled by Nathamuni. Muvarula, Kulothunga Pillai Tamil, Thakayagaparani were written by Ottakkuthar. Jeyamkondar wrote **Kalingathuparani**. Commentators like Ilampuranar, **Nachinarkiniyar** and Parimelazhagar belonged to this period.

Art and Architecture

The Dravidian style of art and architecture reached its perfection under the Cholas. The chief feature of the Chola Temples is the Vimana. More than seventy temples are found in the regions between the Lower Krishna and the Gulf of Mannar. Thiruchirappalli, Srirangam, Tanjore, Kumbakonam, Chidambaram, Thiruvannamalai, Trivandrum, Suchindram and Udipi are the chief centers of Chola art.

The Chola temples built at an early stage were known for their simplicity. Example: Vijayalaya Choleswaram temple at Narttimalai and Aivar koil temple at kodumbalur.

Gradually the temples became more imposing. The finest examples are the Brahaddeeswara Temple at Tanjore and Siva temple at Gangaikonda Cholapuram. The height of the Vimana of the Brahaddeeswara temple rises to nearly 216 ft. over the Garbagraha. It has 13 tiers. The Subramanya temple at Tanjore, Airavatesvara temple at Darasuram and the Kampahareswara or Thirubhuvaneswara temple at Thirubhuvanam in Tanjore which were built later were more graceful and less imposing.

○ World Heritage sites: The Brahaddeeswara temple at Tanjore, Siva temple at Gangaikonda Cholapuram and Airavatesvara temple at Darasuram have been declared as World Heritage Sites by the UNESCO.

Sculptures

Portraits, icons and decorative sculptures are the main features of Chola sculptures. The portraits are full of grace and beauty. The icons of Rajaraja-I are remarkable. The



Nataraja - Bronze Idol

sculptures of Shiva, Vishnu, Brahma, eight armed Durga in the Shiva and Vishnu temples are a few examples of Chola sculptures.

The Cholas are also well known for their bronze images. The Nataraja idol in the Nageswara Temple at Kumbakonam is the largest and the finest. The bronze idol of Arthanareeswarar is another important specimen of the Chola period.

Paintings

The Cholas are known for their paintings as well as fine murals (paintings done directly on walls). The paintings of the Chola period are found at Tanjore, Thirumayam, Kanchi Kailasanatha Temple and Narttimalai Vishnu Temple.

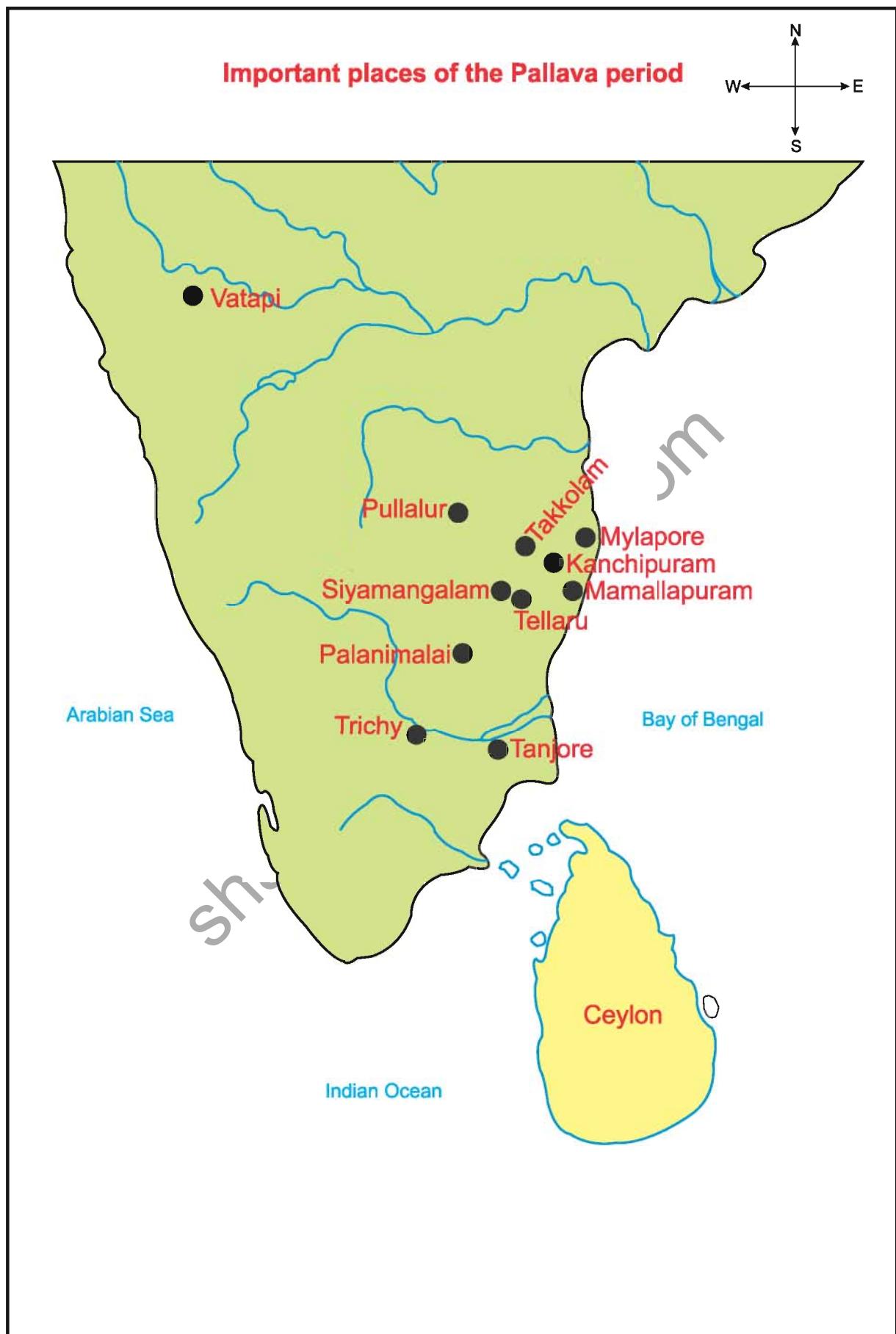
Music and Dance

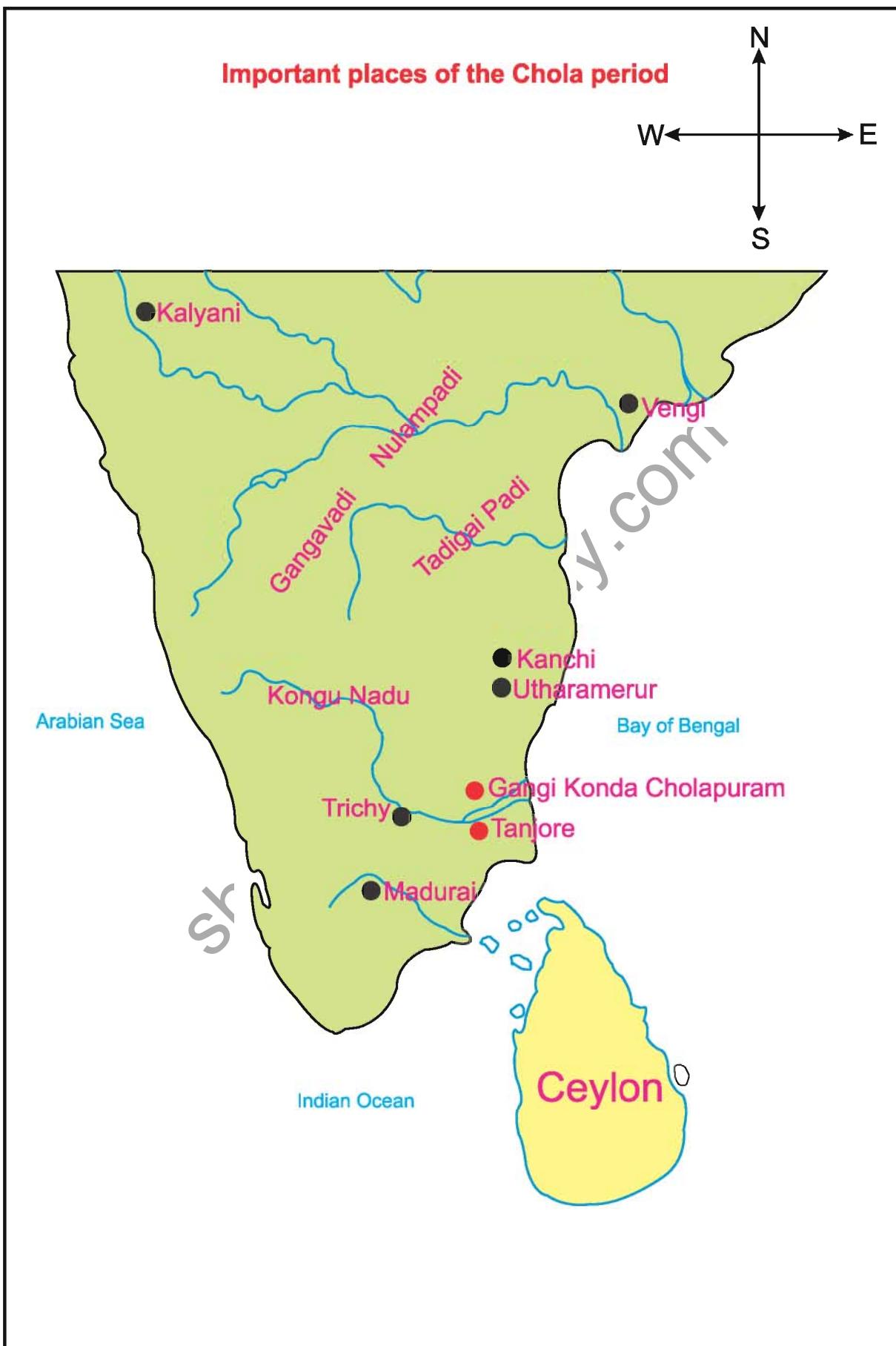
Music developed into a fine art under the Cholas. This development provided the basis for the later day Carnatic Music. Bharatanatyam as a fine art also developed during this period.

Impact of Imperial Cholas

The Imperial Cholas who ruled from 850 A.D. to 1279 A.D. played a significant role in the Tamil country for about 430 years. They have made an impressive impact on Polity, Tamil literature, Temple architecture, music and dance. They were the only imperial power who founded an overseas empire and spread the glories of the Tamil culture far and wide.

○ World Heritage Day: The World Heritage Day is celebrated every year on 18th April. This day is intended to make people aware of their social and cultural Heritage. It also instills the value to care and preserve all the heritage sites.





The Pandya Empire

The Pandyas occupied the region comprising of the modern districts of Madurai and Tirunelveli, part of Trichy and sometimes even parts of Tranvancore. We come to know of the Pandyas from the writings of Magasthenese, Pliny, the ancient Tamil literary works and the accounts of Hiuen-T-sang and Marco-polo. The history of the Pandyas can be divided as the Early Pandyas, First Pandya Empire and Second Pandya Empire.

The early Pandyas

The Early Pandyas belonged to the Sangam Age. A remarkable feature of this period was the maintenance of a flourishing Tamil Literary Academy or Sangam at Madurai. The capital of the Pandyas was Madurai and their emblem was fish. With the rise of the kalabhras, the Sangam Age declined.

First Pandya Empire

The Pandya king Kadungon restored the position of the Pandyas in the last quarter of the 6th Century A.D. by overthrowing the Kalabhras. The dynasty founded by him is generally referred to as the First Pandya Kingdom (550-950 A.D.)

The most important rulers of this period were Arikesari Maravarman, Ranadhiran, Maravarman Rajasimha-I, Varaguna-I and Srimara Srivallabha.

The Pandya empire extended to Tanjore, Tiruchirapalli, Coimbatore and Salem.

Decline of the First Pandya Empire

The successors of Srimara Srivallabha had to face the onslaught of the Pallavas and the Cholas. In the 10th and the 11th centuries the Pandyas made several attempts to revive their past glory. The opposition from the Pallavas and the Cholas led to the decline of the First Pandya Empire.

The Second Pandya Empire

From the 13th century onwards the Pandyas progressively detached themselves from the Chola rule and reasserted their independence. In the civil war which broke out between Vikrama Pandya and Virapandya, **Vikrama Pandya** captured power with the support of Kulothunga-III the Chola Emperor.

Jatavarman Kulasekara-I (1190-1216 A.D.) succeeded his father Vikrama Pandya. He ruled over Madurai, Ramanathapuram, Tirunelveli and Kanyakumari. He appointed his brother, Maravarman Sundara Pandya as his successor.

Maravarman Sundara Pandya-I (1216-1238 A.D.) defeated Kulottunga Chola-III in 1219 A.D. As the Hoysalas came to the support of the Cholas, he restored the throne to the Chola ruler Rajaraja-III and assumed the title 'Sonadu Valangiaruliya Sundara Pandya'.

Maravarman Sundara Pandya-II (1238-1253 A.D.) recovered from the Chola ruler Rajendra-III some of the territories which he had lost earlier.

Jatavarman Sundara Pandya-I (1253-1268 A.D.) succeeded Maravarman Sundara Pandya-II. He extended the empire from Nellore and Cuddappah districts in the North to Cape Comorin in the South. He took up the titles Emmandalamum Kondaruliya Maharajathiraja, Sri Paramesvaran and Ponveinthra Perumal.

Jatavarman Sundara Pandya-I's son Maravarman Kulasekaran-I (1268-1308 A.D.) enlarged his kingdom. He invaded Ceylon and captured Kollam in the Chera land. He assumed the title Kollam Konda Pandya. The power of the Pandyas started declining after him.

Decline of the Pandyas

A war of succession broke out between Sundara Pandya and Vira Pandya, the sons of Maravarman Kulasekaran-I. With the help of Alauddin Khilji's commander Malik Kafur, Sundara Pandya ascended the throne.

The Tughluqs who succeeded the Khiljis, extended their hold over South India and declared the Pandya empire as a part of the Tughluq Empire.

The decline of Tughluq power led to the establishment of the Sultans of Madurai which ultimately

resulted in the complete decline of the Pandya Empire

Administration

The Pandya Empire was called as Pandya Mandalam. The Mandalam was divided into Valanadu and further into Urs. The King was assisted by the Ariyans (Ministers) and the Army Chief. Special officers were appointed to collect taxes and maintain accounts.

Local self Government

Village administration was looked after by five Variyams, namely Aranilaya Variyam, Neernilai Variyam, Nanaya Variyam, Varithandal Variyam and Needhi Variyam.

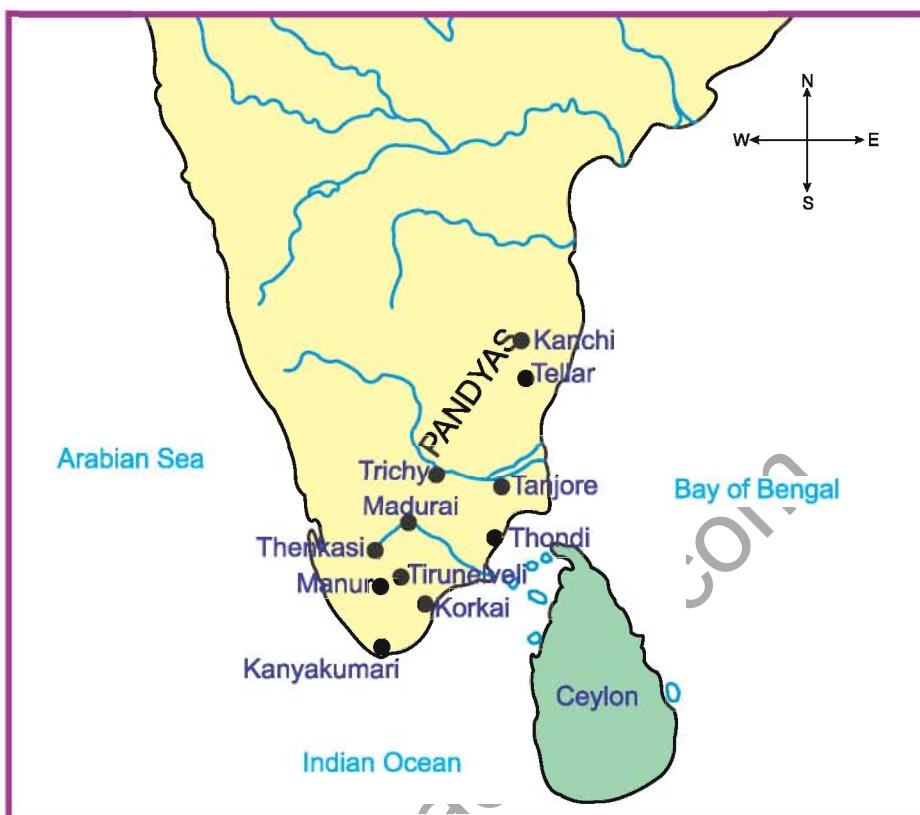
Occupation

Agriculture and Trade were the main occupations of the people. The agriculturists were called as Boomiputirar. Many slaves were employed to carry on different tasks. The Pandyas were famous for pearl diving. The pearls of the Pandya empire were famous all over the world. The famous ports of the Pandyas were Korkai and Thondi.

Literature

Manickavasagar's composed Thiruvatasagam, Andal's composed Thiruppavai, Nammalvar's composed Thiruppallandu, Villiputhurar wrote Mahabharatha, Adhiveerarama Pandya wrote Naidadham, Srikaviraya wrote books namely Seyur Murugan ula and Rathinigiri ula. Thus the Pandyas contributed greatly to the progress of literature.

Important places of the Pandya period



Art and Architecture

The Pandya contribution to art and architecture is noteworthy. The special features of the Pandya temple architecture are the Gopuras, Prakaras, Vimanas, Garbagrahas and Gateways.

The Pandya period marked a reawakening in the field of rock-cut temples. More than 50 rock cut temples were excavated in the Pandya Kingdom at several places like Kunnakudi, Anaimalai, Sithannavasal, Thiruparan k u n d r a m , Kalugumalai, Malaiyadikurichi, Thiruchirappalli, etc.,

Structural temples were constructed by the Pandya rulers at Kovilpatty, Tiruppattur, Madurai,

Srivilliputhur and other places. Kulasekara Pandya built arthamandapa, manimandapa and sannati in every temple of his empire. Public meetings, social gatherings, religious keerthans, recitals and Katha-Nataka were held in the sabha mandapas of temples.

Sculptures

The Pandya sculptures are beautiful and ornamental. The sculptures of Somaskandar, Durga, Ganapathy, Narasimha and Nataraja are good specimens of this period.

Many sculptures are also found at Kalugumalai, Thiruparkundram, Thirumalaipuram, Narttamalai and Kunnakudi.

Paintings

Among the fine arts, painting was greatly developed by the Pandyas. The mural paintings of Srimaran Srivallabha Pandya of the first Pandya period are seen in the Sithannavasal cave temples. The



Sithannavasal Cave Temple

paintings of lotus, bathing elephants and playing fish are noteworthy.

The Pandya rulers have thus left a unique and everlasting impact on the Tamil society and South Indian history.

Uttaramerur inscriptions: It laid down the qualifications for those who wished to become a member of the Sabha. He must be honest, a land owner from which land revenue is collected, in the age group 35 and 70 years, having a knowledge of the Vedas and well versed in administrative matters. Members of the village if found guilty were punished severely. They could not take part in the elections.

The lost wax technique: The lost wax technique was used by the Chola craftsmen to make bronze statues. First the image was made in wax. Then it was covered in clay and allowed to dry. A tiny hole was made in the clay cover. Next, it was heated and the molten wax was drained out through the hole. Bronze (an alloy of copper and metal) was melted and poured into the clay through the hole. Once the metal was coated and solidified the clay cover was carefully removed and the image was cleaned and polished.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Pallavas under _____ overthrew the Kalabhras and established their supremacy over Thondaimandalam.
a) Simha Vishnu b) Mahendravarman I c) Narasimhavarman II
2. Narasimhavarman I assumed the title _____.
a) Vatapikondan b) Jayankondan c) Kadaramkondan
3. The Kallanai across river Cauvery was built by _____.
a) Rajendra I b) Karikala Chola c) Rajaraja Chola
4. Parantaka I, the son of Aditya I defeated the Pandya ruler and took up the title _____.
a) Madurai Kondan b) Mudikondan c) KadaramKondan
5. The Pandya Empire was called Pandya _____.
a) Mandalam b) Valanadu c) Uravai
6. Andal composed _____.
a) Devaram b) Thiruppavai c) Ramayanam

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. During the period of Narasimhavarman-I _____ visited Kanchipuram.
2. Monolithic Rathas are found at _____.
3. _____ was called Sungam Thavirtha Cholan.
4. The Chola kings were patrons of _____ .
5. Thiruvatasagam was composed by _____.
6. The paintings of Srivallabha Pandya are seen in the _____ cave temples.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Uravai | - Sanskrit Grammarian |
| 2. Shore Temple | - Ramayana |
| 3. Kambar | - Village Assembly |
| 4. Brihadeeswara Temple | - Greek writer |
| 5. Megasthenese | - Tanjore |
| 6. Katyayana | - Mamallapuram |

IV) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. Write a short note on the origin of the Pallavas.
2. Write a note on the administrative divisions of the Pallavas.
3. Mention the sources of information about the Cholas.
4. Which are the chief centres of the Chola art and architecture?
5. What do you know about Jatavarman Kulasekara Pandya I?
6. Name a few occupations of the Pandyas.

V) Answer in detail.

1. Discuss the contributions of the Pallavas to art, architecture and fine arts.
2. Explain in detail about the Chola administration.
3. Give an account of the Pandya contribution to temple architecture.

Formative Assessment

I. Play and Learn:

One group of students can take the name of each king. The other group can take up the titles. Now the rulers can acquire their titles. (The name / title can be written on strips of paper)

Rulers (Group – 1)

- Simha Vishnu
- Narasimha Varma
- Parantaka
- Raja Raja I
- Rajendra I
- Kulothunga I
- Jatavarman Sundara Pandyan
- Maravarman Kulasekaran I

Titles (Group – 2)

- Mamalla
- Madurai Kondan
- Mummudi Chola
- Kadaram Kondan
- Avanisimha
- Ponveinthra Perumal.
- Kollam Konda Pandya.
- Sungam Thavirtha Cholan.

II. Design a newspaper dating back to the rule of Pallava / Chola / Pandya.

- Headlines
- Local news
- Neighbouring Kingdoms
- Entertainment

Newspaper Format

- Literary activities
- Short story
- Administration
- Sports

III. Find the Author of the given work

Sekizhar

Bharavi

Dandi

Ottakkuthar

Andal

Jeyamkondar

Books

1. Dandi alankaram
2. Kiratharjuniyam
3. Periyapuram
4. Thiruppavai
5. Kalingathuparani
6. Muvar Ula

Authors

IV. Design an invitation card:

Subject: Raja Raja I assumed the title 'Mummudi Chola'

Details to be included in the card.

1. Date of the function.
2. Venue.
3. Chief Guest.
4. Programme.
5. Felicitation.

V. Things to do:

1. Mark the following places on the outline map of India.
Mamallapuram, Tiruchirapalli, Kanchipuram, Tanjore and Madurai.
2. Collect pictures and prepare an album on the art and architecture of the South Indian Kingdoms.
3. Request your school authorities to take you on a study tour to a historical site connected with Pallavs or Cholas or Pandyas.

HISTORY**1. ARAB AND TURKISH INVASIONS**

The rise and growth of Islam has been regarded as one of the most important events in World history. Prophet Muhammad (570-632 A.D) was the founder of Islam. Islam grew up in the deserts of Arabia. Its first converts were the Arabs. The Arabs made Islam a powerful force in the politics of Asia. The Persians strengthened Islam and the Turks extended it both towards the West and the East and made Islam as one of the foremost religions of the World.

**Arab conquest of Sind and Multan
712 A.D.**

Commercial contacts prevailed between India and Arabia for a long time. There were many causes for the conquest of Sind. The Arabs were attracted by the rich ports of Sind and so they wanted to extend their political and religious control over it. They were angry with the ruler of Sind who failed to check the pirates who plundered them.

Muhammad-bin-Qasim was sent by Al-Hajjaj, the Governor of Iraq with the permission of Caliph Walid to conquer Sind. He marched against Dahir the ruler of Sind, defeated him in the Battle of Rewar and captured Sind. He also captured Multan. He got so much of wealth from Multan that he called Multan 'The City of Gold.'

Administrative System

Muhammad-bin-Qasim divided Sind and Multan into a number of

Iqtas or districts. Arab military officers were appointed as heads of the Iqtas. Local Hindu officers were allowed to administer the subdivisions of the districts. The Arabs imposed Jizya on non-muslims.

End of Muhammad-bin-Qasim

Caliph Sulaiman, succeeded Caliph Walid after his death. He was an arch enemy of Al-Hajjaj, the Governor of Iraq. He dismissed Muhammad-bin Qasim as he was the son-in-law of Al-Hajjaj. He sent him as a prisoner to Mesopotamia and tortured him to death.

Sind and Multan remained as part of the Caliph's empire for more than 150 years. Their power gradually declined.

Effects of Arab Conquest

The conquest of Sind sowed the seeds for the coming of Islam into India. The Arabs learnt the art of administration, astronomy, music, painting, medicine and architecture from our land. Indian Philosophy, numerals and astronomy were taken to Europe by the Arabs.

Qasim and his Defence Forces

Muhammad-bin-Qasim had an army of 25,000 troops including 6000 Syrian horses, 6000 Camels, 3000 Bactrian Camels, an artillery force of 2000 men with five catapults and advanced guards.

Turkish Invasion

The Expansion of Turks into India

The Turks got the upper hand over the Caliphs of Baghdad in the 8th and 9th centuries. They were more aggressive than the Arabs. They completed the work begun by the Arabs and extended their dominion beyond Sind and Multan into India.

Heroic Defence of Women

Rani Bai, the wife of Dahir and the other women of Sind put up a heroic defence within the Fort of Rewar. When their attempt failed they performed Jauhar to save their chastity and escape from the hands of the invaders.

Indian Impact

Brahma Siddhanta, a Sanskrit work of Brahma Gupta was translated into Arabic. Arabic works mention the names of Indian scientists like Bhala, Manaka and Sindbad. Dhana was appointed as a chief Medical officer in a hospital at Baghdad. Manaka, a physician cured a serious disease of Caliph Harun-al-Rashid.

Mahmud of Ghazni

Sabuktigin the ruler of Ghazni was succeeded by Ismail. He was dethroned in 998 A.D. by his brother, the famous Mahmud of Ghazni. He invaded India in 1000 A.D. He was the first Turkish invader. Mahmud defeated Jaipala, the ruler of the Hindu Shahi dynasty, Fateh Daud of Multan and Anandpala of Nagarkot. He also crushed the Chandelas, the rulers of Mathura, Kanauj and Gwalior. After each expedition he

returned to Ghazni with enormous wealth.

Mahmud's important expedition in Hindustan was against the Somnath temple in 1025 A.D. which was situated on the coast of Kathiawar. As the ruler of Kathiawar, Raja Bhima Dev, and his followers fled from the place, he easily plundered the temple and returned to Ghazni with a rich booty which exceeded twenty lakh dinars.

Estimate of Mahmud of Ghazni

Mahmud of Ghazni was one of the greatest Muslim rulers of Asia. He was a great patron of art and letters and he patronised scholars like Firdausi and Alberuni.

Sir Henry Elliot in his book "The History of India" refers to the seventeen expeditions of Muhammad of Ghazni. He says that after every expedition Muhammad returned to Ghazni with countless wealth and enormous booty beyond all calculations.

End of Ghazni's rule in India

Mahmud's successors were weak. So Ala-ud-din Husain of Ghori invaded Ghazni, plundered and burnt it. By 1186 A.D. the power of the House of Ghazni declined and that of Ghori rose up.

Muhammad of Ghori

Muhammad was the third important Muslim invader of Hindustan. He became the ruler of Ghori, a mountainous region situated between Ghazni and Herat.

Hence, he was popularly known as Muhammad of Ghori.

His invasions

As an ambitious and enterprising ruler, he started his attacks on India in 1176 A.D. He captured Multan and Uch. He subjugated lower Sind in 1182 A.D. In 1185 A.D., he invaded Punjab and captured the Fortress of Sialkot. In 1186 A.D. he besieged Lahore.

First Battle of Tarain (1191 A.D.)

In 1189 A.D. Muhammad of Ghori captured the fortress of Bhatinda and advanced into the kingdom of Prithviraj Chauhan, the Rajput ruler. Prithviraj marched against him with a large force and defeated Muhammad of Ghori in the Battle of Tarain in 1191 A.D. Prithviraj also recovered Bhatinda, which was earlier occupied by Mahmud of Ghazni.

Second Battle of Tarain (1192 A.D.)

Muhammad of Ghori reinforced himself and marched against Prithviraj for the second time in 1192 A.D. He gave a crushing defeat to the combined forces of the Rajput rulers under Prithviraj at Tarain. Prithviraj was imprisoned and later put to death. The Second Battle of Tarain marked the beginning of the Turkish rule in the heart of Hindustan for the first time in Indian history.

Muhammad of Ghori appointed Qutb-ud-din Aibak as his commander.

Tactics of Muhammad

Muhammad divided his army into five divisions. Four armies were sent to attack the Rajput army on all sides. The fifth army was kept in reserve. The Rajputs fought with great gallantry. When they became exhausted, the fifth army was sent. They attacked with vigour and defeated the Rajputs.

Rajput Uprisings

Between 1193 and 1198 A.D. there were many Rajput uprisings. Qutb-ud-din Aibak put them down and brought many of their territories under his control. Delhi was made the capital of Muhammad of Ghori's territory in India.

Battle of Chandwar (1194 A.D.)

Muhammad of Ghori marched against Jaichandra, the greatest Rajput ruler of Kanauj who was having a vast part of Indian Territory under his control. In the Battle of Chandwar, Jaichand was struck in the eye by an arrow and he was killed by Muhammad of Ghori. The victory at Chandwar helped Muhammad of Ghori to extend further into India.

Conquest of Bengal and Bihar

Muhammad-bin-Baktiyar Khilji, one of the commanders of Muhammad of Ghori, destroyed Vikramasila and Nalanda Universities in 1202-1203 A.D.

He also captured Nadia in Bengal and parts of Bihar.

Death of Muhammad of Ghori

Muhammad of Ghori went back to Ghazni in order to check his Central Asian enemies. While he was engaged in evening prayer, he was assassinated on 25th March 1206 A.D., by some Shia rebels and Khokhars.

An Estimate

Muhammad of Ghori was considered to be the real founder of the Turkish Empire in India because of his various conquests and annexations of the Rajput territory in North India.

EXERCISE**I) Choose the best answer.**

1. Muhammad-bin-Qasim was sent to conquer _____.
 - a) Sind
 - b) Delhi
 - c) Ghori
2. Mahmud of Ghazni defeated _____ the ruler of Hindu Shahi dynasty.
 - a) Jaichand
 - b) Jaipala
 - c) Rajya Pal
3. Somnath temple was plundered by Mahmud of Ghazni in _____.
 - a) 1025 A.D.
 - b) 1027 A.D.
 - c) 1001 A.D.
4. In the First Battle of Tarain Muhammad of Ghori was defeated by _____.
 - a) Sabuktigin
 - b) Ghiyasuddin
 - c) Prithviraj
5. The Commander of Muhammad of Ghori was _____.
 - a) Qutb-ud-din Aibak
 - b) Balban
 - c) Nasir-ud-din

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. Prophet Muhammad was the founder of _____.
2. Muhammad-bin-Qasim invaded Sind in _____ A.D.
3. In the Second Battle of Tarain Muhammad of Ghori killed _____.
4. Muhammad-bin-Baktiyar Khilji captured Nadia in _____.
5. Muhammad of Ghori was considered to be the real founder of a _____ Empire in India.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. Al-Hajjaj | City of Gold |
| 2. Multan | Governor of Iraq |
| 3. Sabuktigin | Kathiawar |
| 4. Somnath Temple | Scholar |
| 5. Firdausi | Ruler of Ghazni |

IV) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. Write a note on the administrative system of Arabs in Sind?
2. Who dismissed Muhammad-bin- Qasim and Why?
3. Who were the rulers defeated by Mahmud of Ghazni?
4. What were the regions invaded and captured by Muhammad of Ghori?
5. Why was the Battle of Chandwar important in the history of India?

V) Answer in detail.

1. Write in detail about the Arab conquest of Sind and Multan and its effects on India.
2. Give an account of the First and Second Battle of Tarain.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Group Discussion:

Divide the class into groups. Ask each group to discuss the topic. "The Arabs made Islam – a powerful force in the politics of Asia". Then a child from each group can come forward to share what they discussed.

2. Find more:

Read about Qasim and his defence forces and the tactics of Muhammad of Ghori given in your lesson.

Find out details of the present day defence forces of India.

- i. Army
- ii. Navy
- iii. Air force
- iv. Training centers

3. Oratorical competition:

Imagine yourself to be Muhammad of Ghori. Your soldiers have lost hope after their defeat in the First battle of Tarain at the hands of Prithviraj Chauhan. How would you instill confidence in them to fight again?

- The pupil who is motivated best wins

4. Debate:

Which of the conquests – Arab or Turkish had a lasting impact on medieval History.

5. Prepare charts:

The class can be divided into groups. Each group can prepare a chart on the following topics.

- i. Indian impact on the Arabs
- ii. Administration
- iii. Astronomy
- iv. Music
- v. Art and Architecture

6. Things to do:

Collect information about the foreigners who invaded India during medieval period.

2. SULTANATE OF DELHI

The period from 1206 A.D. to 1526 A.D. came to be known as the Sultanate period. During this period the Mamaluk, Khilji, Tughluq, Sayyid and Lodi dynasties ruled over India. With the death of Muhammad of Ghori, his commander Qutb-ud-din-Aibak came to power and founded the Mamaluk dynasty.

MAMALUK DYNASTY

Qutb-ud-din Aibak (1206-1210 A.D.)

The rule of Qutb-ud-din Aibak, the commander of Muhammad of Ghori marked the beginning of the Mamaluk rule and the establishment of Sultanate period in India. He assumed sovereign powers on 24th June 1206 A.D. He did not issue coins or read the khutba in his name. He was the founder of the Turkish dominion in India.

The term Mamaluk was the Quranic term for a slave.

Task of Saving his Empire

Qutb-ud-din's immediate tasks were

- to prevent Ala-ud-din Muhammad, the Shah of Khwarizm from occupying Ghazni and Delhi.
- to prevent the Rajputs from recovering their principalities.
- to put down Ali Mardan Khan of Bengal, Qubacha and Yalduz.

In order to save his infant Turkish Empire, he made many matrimonial alliances and shifted his capital to Lahore. He successfully

put down his enemies and firmly established his hold over India.

An Estimate

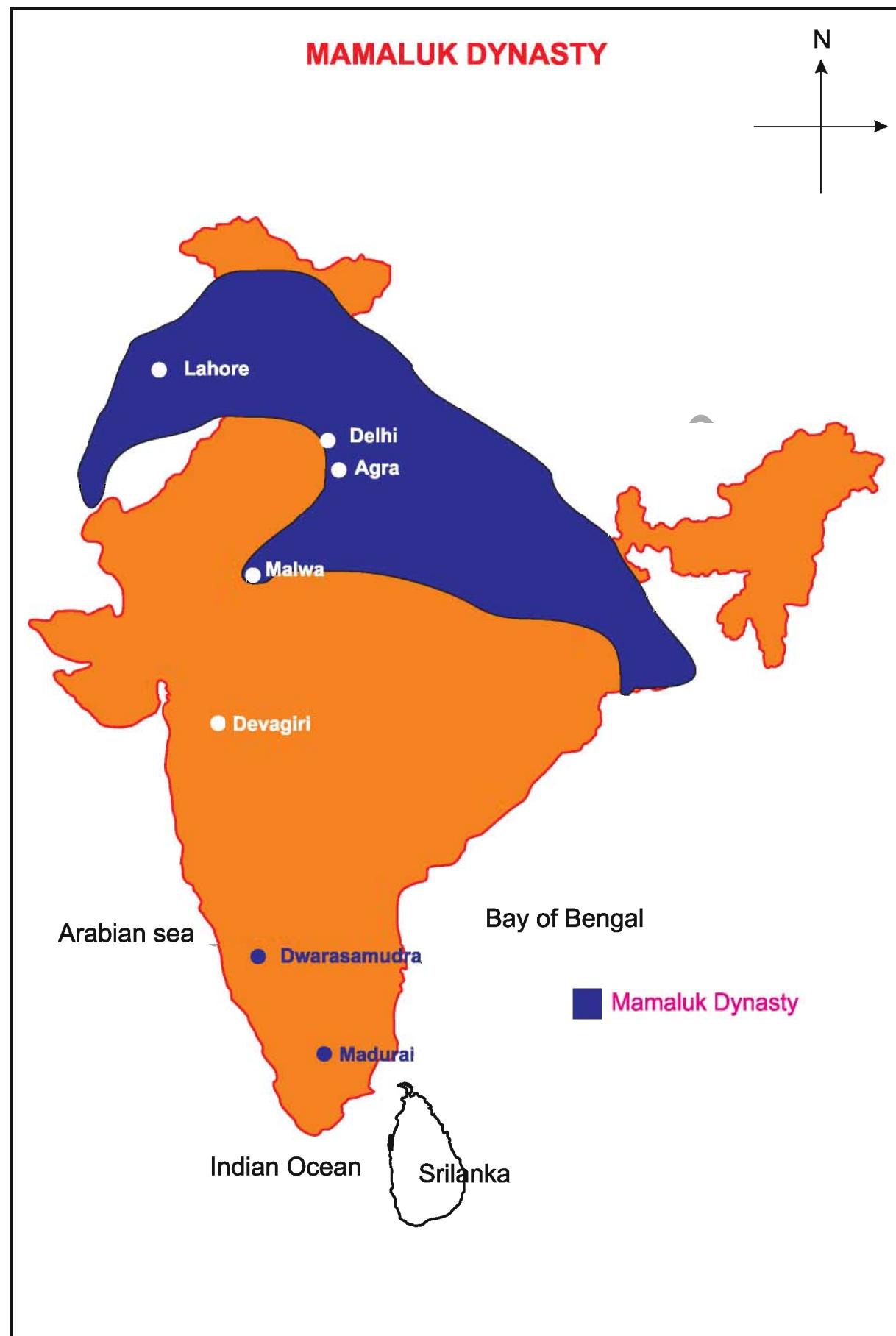
Qutb-ud-din Aibak was a pious Muslim. His administration was purely based on his military strength. Local administration was entrusted to native officers. He built Quwat-ul-Islam mosque at Ajmer and Dhai Dinka Jhonpara mosque at Delhi. He started the construction of Qutb Minar at Delhi. He patronized Hassan Nizami and Fakhre Mudir. He was called as **Lakh Baksh** or **Giver of Lakhs** for his generosity. He died in November 1210 A.D. after he fell from his horse while playing polo.

Iltutmish (1211 – 1236 A.D.)

Iltutmish was born in the Ilbari tribe of Central Asia. As a boy he was sold as a slave to Qutb-ud-din Aibak. Aibak made him as his son-in-law. He killed Aram Shah, the son of Aibak and became king in 1211 A.D.

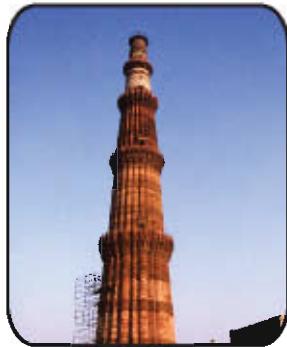
Conquest of Iltutmish

Iltutmish was surrounded by enemies on all sides. He put them down and strengthened his position. As Yalduz considered himself to be the successor of Muhammad of Ghori, Iltutmish defeated him and put him to death. He drove out Nasir-ud-din Qubacha, the ruler of Uch and Multan from Punjab in 1217 A.D. He captured Bhakkar, where Qubacha took shelter. Bengal was also brought under his control.



Iltutmish put down the revolt of the Khilji Maliks of Bengal in 1230 A.D. Iltutmish refused to give shelter to Jalal-ud-din Mangabarni, the Shah of Khwarizm who was attacked by Mongols. This pleased Chengiz Khan and so he did not invade India. In this way Iltutmish saved Delhi from Mongol invasion. In Rajputana, Iltutmish recaptured Ranthambore and Mandor. He defeated Udai Singh, the ruler of Jalor and made him a feudatory. Thangiri, Ajmer, Sambha, Nagur, Kalinjar and Gwalior were captured by him.

Iltutmish re-established his authority over Badaun, Kanauj, Benaras and Katchar-the doab region between the Ganga and the Yamuna.



Qutb Minar

Qutb Minar was built in honour of Sufi Saint Khwaja Qutb-ud-din Bakhtiyar kaki who died in Delhi. The construction started by Aibak was completed by Iltutmish

End of Iltutmish

Iltutmish undertook an expedition against Bamiyan. He nominated his daughter Raziah as his successor before his death. He fell ill and died in 1236 AD.

Administration

Iltutmish set up Iqtas under Iqtadars. The army was maintained by 'A Corps of Forty' or Chahalgan. He was the first Turkish ruler to introduce Arabic coinage.

Estimate

Iltutmish was a successful general and administrator. He completed the work of Aibak. He built up the Turkish Kingdom in North India.

Coins of Iltutmish

The silver tanka of Iltutmish weighed 175 mgs and had an Arabic inscription on it. Iltutmish also introduced copper Jital.

Sultana Raziah (1236-1240 A.D.)

Raziah was the first woman ruler of Sultanate period. She defeated and killed Firoz Shah who ascended the throne after the death of Iltutmish. She successfully restored the prestige of the Turkish Kingdom in India. Her rule ended in 1240 A.D. because of a conspiracy by the Turkish nobles. The successors of Raziah were weak and hence Balban rose to power in 1265 A.D.

Successors of Raziah

Bahram Shah	1240-1242 A.D.
Alaud-din Masid	1242-1246 A.D.
Nasir-ud-din Mahmud	1246-1264 A.D.
Balban	1265-1287 A.D.

Balban (1265-1287 A.D.)

Balban an Ilbari Turk became the ruler in 1265 A.D. after the death of Nasir-ud-din Mahmud.

He believed in the Divine Right Theory of Kingship. He introduced **Poibos**- a form of salutation to the king by kissing his feet in the court.

According to Lanepoole, “**Balban**, a slave, water carrier, huntsman, general, statesman and Sultan-is one of the most striking figures among the notable men in the long line of Kings of Delhi”.

Internal policies

Balban curtailed and destroyed the ‘Corps of Forty’ by giving them severe punishments and promoting juniors to important positions. He introduced a well organised spy system.

A separate military department called Diwan-i-arz was established. Many military posts were set up at Bhojapur, Patiali, Kampil and Jalali. Balban suppressed Tughril Khan, who declared his independence and recovered Bengal.

Divine right Theory

The ruler was considered as a representative of God on earth.

An Estimate of Balban

Balban was a great patron of learning. He patronized Amir Khusrau who is called as the 'Parrot of India' and Amir Hasan. Balban was the most successful ruler among the slave kings.

End of Balban

Balban was shocked when his

son Mahmud was killed during an encounter with the Mongols. He never recovered from the sorrow and died in 1287A.D.

End of the Mamaluk Dynasty

Balban was succeeded by Kaiqubad his grandson who was very incompetent. The nobles made Kayumar, the infant son of Kaiqubad as ruler. Jalal-ud-din Khilji, the commander of Balban became the regent of the infant king. He killed Kaiqubad and Kayumar and became the ruler of Delhi. Thus Mamaluk Dynasty was brought to an end and the Khilji Dynasty was founded.

KHILJI DYNASTY

**Jalal-ud-din Firoz Khilji
(1290 – 1296 A.D.)**

In 1290 A.D. Jalal-ud-din Firoz Khilji ascended the throne of Delhi. He followed the policy of peace after he became the ruler. He wanted to rule without bloodshed. Hence, he was called as **Clemency Jalal-ud-din**.

Domestic Policies

Jalal-ud-din suppressed a revolt by Malik Chhajju at Kara. He appointed his nephew and son-in-law Ala-ud-din Khilji as the Governor of Kara. Theft and robbery became common during his reign. Though a number of thugs and robbers were arrested, Jala-ud-din forgave them and even set them free in Bengal. He arrested and killed Sidi Maula, a religious leader who tried to seize the throne.

Mongol Invasion

Jalal-ud-din defeated and arrested the Mongols who tried to advance upto Sunam in 1292 A.D. He pardoned them as they sued for peace. A few of the Mongols stayed back in India after the invasion.

End of Jalal-ud-din

Jalal-ud-din's policy of peace was not liked by the young Khiljis. Ala-ud-din Khilji the son-in-law of Jalal-ud-din treacherously murdered him and came to power after his return from Devagiri.

Ala-ud-din Khilji (1296-1316 A.D.)

Ala-ud-din Khilji ascended the throne in 1296 A.D. He consolidated his hold over North India and invaded South India also.

Conquests in the North

Ala-ud-din Khilji sent a strong army under his generals Ulugh Khan and Nusrat Khan to conquer Gujarat and they succeeded in doing so. Ranthambore was captured and its ruler Hamir Deva was killed. Chittor, Malwa, Mandu, Ujjain, Dhar, Chanderi, Marwar and Jalore were also captured.

Conquest in the South

Ala-ud-din Khilji was the first Sultan who invaded South India. He sent his most trustworthy general, Malik Kafur against the rulers of the south. Ramachandra Deva, the Yadava ruler of Devagiri, Prataprudra-II of Warangal and Vira Ballala-III, the Hoysala ruler were defeated and made vassals of Delhi.

Malik Kafur helped Sundara Pandya against his rival Vira Pandya. He reached as far as Rameswaram and built a mosque there. The kingdoms of the south accepted the overlordship of Ala-ud-din khilji and agreed to pay tribute to him.

The Mongol Invasion

Ala-ud-din successfully repelled the Mongol invasion more than a dozen times. He renovated the existing forts and outposts. He constructed new forts and strongly garrisoned them to strengthen his frontiers.

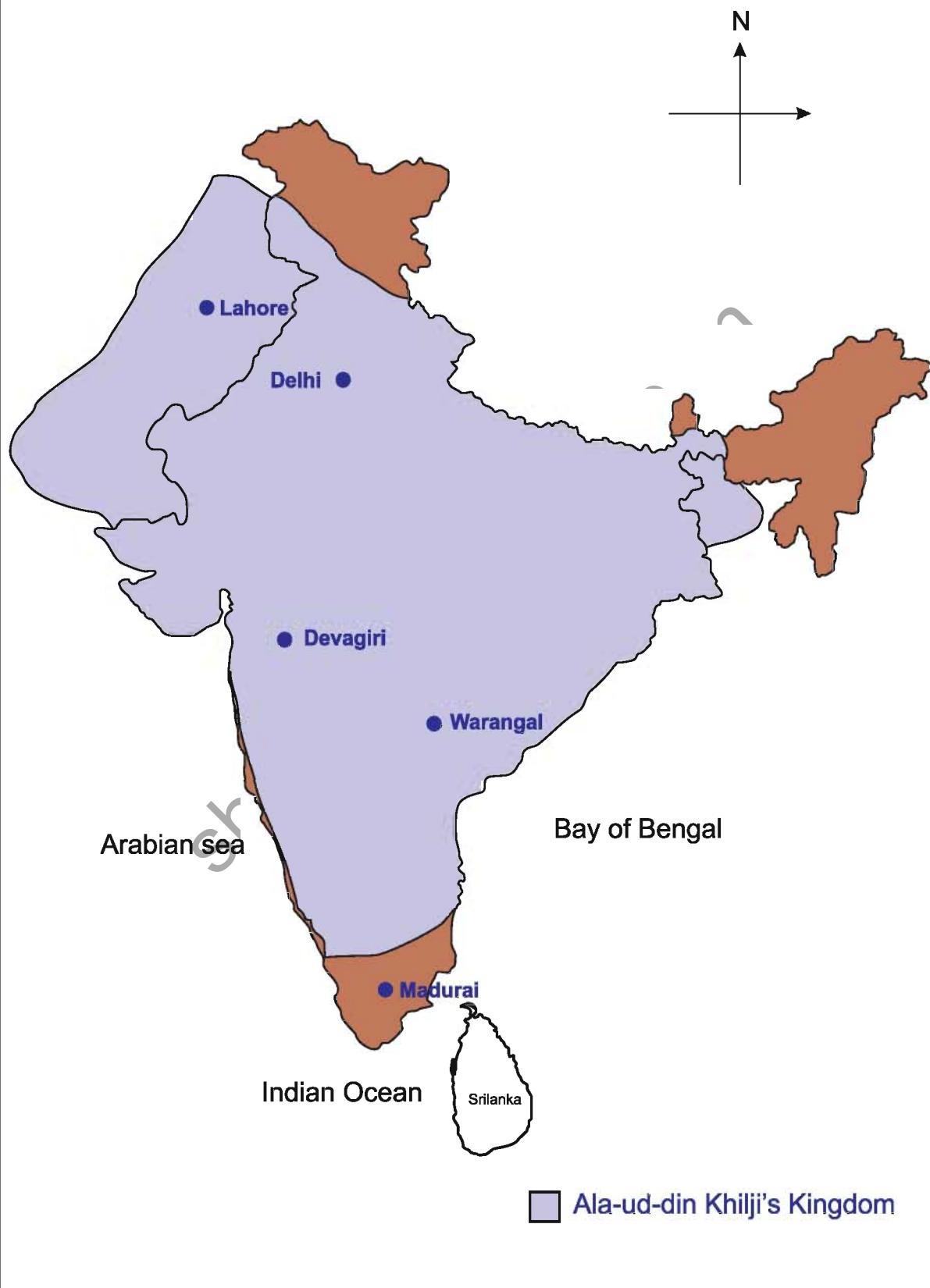
Domestic Policies of Ala-ud-din Khilji

Ala-ud-din believed in the Divine Right Theory of Kingship. He introduced **four ordinances** to prevent frequent rebellions. He confiscated religious endowments and free grants of lands, reorganized the spy system, prohibited social parties and use of wine.

A permanent standing army was organized by Ala-ud-din. He introduced the system of branding of horses and descriptive roll of individual soldiers to prevent corruption.

The prices of essential commodities were fixed which was less than the usual market rates. Black marketing was strictly prohibited. Revenue was collected in kind and not in cash. He posted several horsemen and clerks in new posts. The postal system was good

Empire of Ala-ud-din Khilji



during his period. He followed a harsh policy towards the Hindus. Jizya, grazing tax and house tax were imposed on them.

Marketing System

Officers like Diwan-i-riyasat and Shahana-i-mandi were appointed to regularize the market. All merchants were required to register themselves in the office of the Shahana-i-Mandi and sell their goods at fixed rates.

An Estimate

Ala-ud-din was the first to raise a standing army, to regularize the markets and to capture regions south of the Vindhya range. He built Alai Darwaza, fort of Siri and the Palace of a thousand pillars. He was undoubtedly a great conqueror and a noble administrator. He was a man of determination.

End of the Dynasty

Ala-ud-din died in 1316 A.D. Due to weak successors like Qutb-ud-din Mubarak Shah (1316–1320 A.D.) and Nasir-ud-din Khusrav Shah (1320 A.D.), the Khilji dynasty came to an end. Finally in 1320 A.D. a group of nobles led by Ghazi Malik, the Governor of Punjab, invaded Delhi and captured the throne. Ghazi Malik assumed the title of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughluq and founded a new line of rulers at Delhi known as the Tughluq Dynasty.

TUGHLUQ DYNASTY

Ghiyas-ud-din Tughluq (1320–1325 A.D.)

Ghiyas-ud-din Tughluq or Ghazi Malik was the founder of the Tughluq dynasty. From a humble origin he ascended the throne by his ability and hard work in 1320 A.D.

Domestic and Foreign Policies

Ghiyas-ud-din restored order in his empire. Lot of importance was given to agriculture, irrigation, judicial, police and postal arrangements. Warangal, Utkala or Orissa and Bengal were brought under his control. He captured and imprisoned the Mongol leaders who invaded North India.

End of his rule

While attending a reception for his victories at Bengal the pavilion on which he stood gave way and Ghiyas-ud-din was crushed to death in 1325 A.D. The crown prince Junakhan succeeded him.

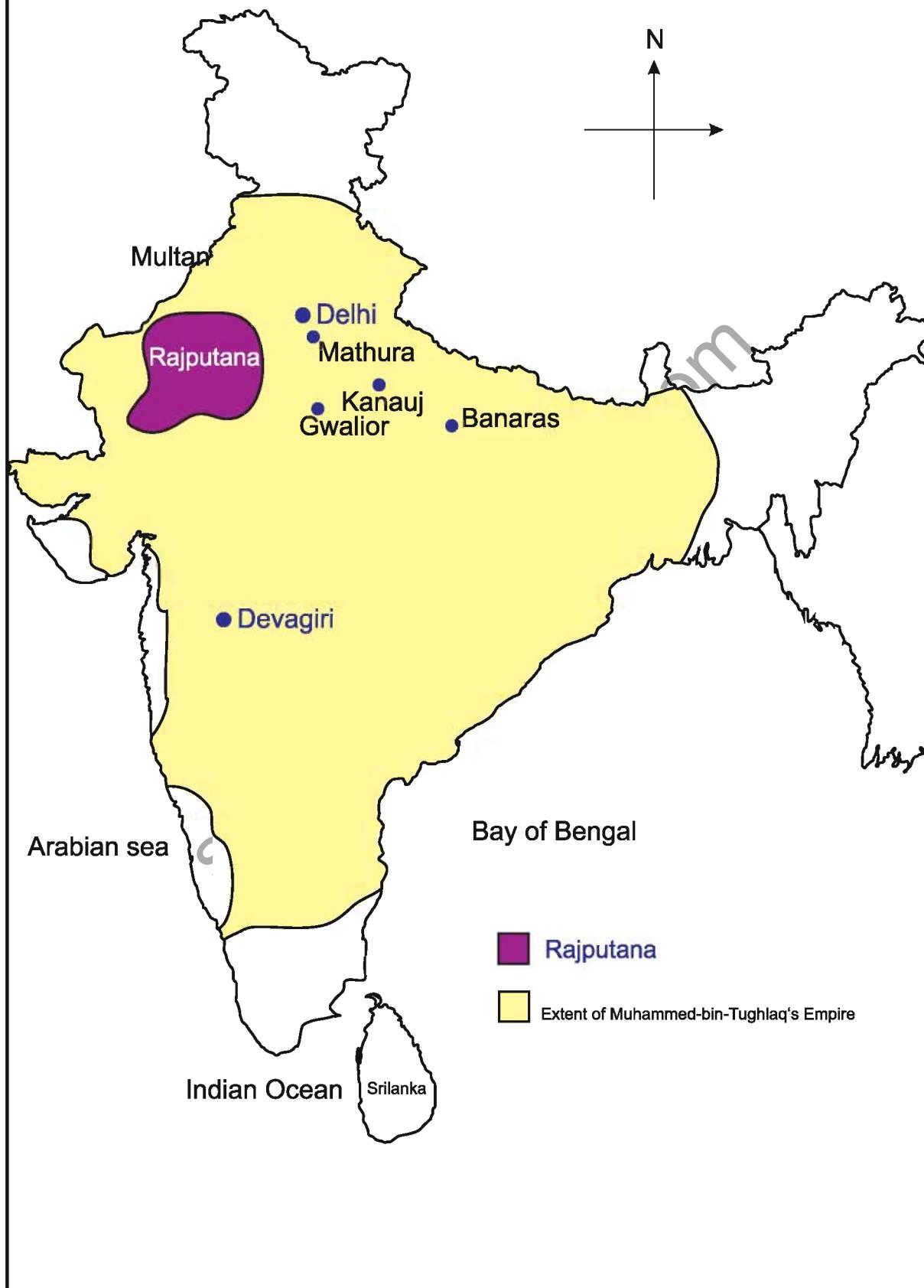
Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq (1325–1361 A.D.)

Prince Junakhan took up the title Muhammad-bin-Tughluq in 1325 A.D. when he ascended the throne. He stood for political and administrative unity of India. He captured Warangal in 1327 A.D.

Domestic Policies

Mohammed-bin-Tughluq raised the taxes in the Doab region to fill up his empty treasury. To avoid heavy taxes the people ran away to the forests. As cultivation was neglected severe famines occurred. He realized his mistake and sanctioned

Empire of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq



loans and dug canals to overcome famine but it was too late.

Mongols were often invading the Indian frontiers. Inorder to protect his capital, he transferred his capital from Delhi to Devagiri. He ordered both the government officials and the common people to shift to Devagiri. The people faced untold miseries. Due to practical difficulties he ordered them to return back to Delhi.

Copper currency system was introduced by the Sultan. The official machinery was not appointed to mint coins. So, people started minting coins in huge numbers. The value of coins fell so low that the Sultan withdrew the copper token currency.



Coin of Mohammed-bin-Tughluq

Mohammed-bin-Tughluq raised an army of 3,70,000 men in order to conquer Tranoxiana, Khurasan and Iraq. He disbanded them after realizing that it was not possible.

Mohammed-bin-Tughluq's policy of giving huge presents to Tamashirin, the Mongol leader, to avoid a Mongol invasion was a great burden on his exchequer.

An Estimate

The domestic policies of Mohammed-bin-Tughluq were good but his operative measures ended in a failure. His character of taking hasty decisions and inoperative policies were responsible for the decline of the Delhi Sultanate.

Firoz Tughluq (1351-1388 A.D.)

Firoz Tughluq, the son of the younger brother of Ghiyas-ud-din Tughluq ascended the throne in 1351 A.D.

Administrative Reforms

Firoz Tughluq introduced a lot of reforms which were beneficial to the people. He cancelled all Taquavi (agricultural) loans granted by Mohammed-bin-Tughluq. He increased the salary of the revenue officers. Unlawful and unjust cesses were abolished. He collected four important taxes such as Kharaj-1/10 of the produce of the land, Khams-1/5 of the warbooty, Jizya-Poll Tax and Zakat-Tax on muslims for specific religious purposes. He gave importance to public works. He excavated many irrigation canals, constructed 50 dams, 150 wells and 100 bridges. He built the towns like Firozabad, Fatehabad, Jaunpur and Hissar. Firoz prohibited all kinds of mutilations and torture. The Koranic laws were followed. He imposed Jizya on the Brahmins.

An Employment Bureau, Marriage Bureau, (Diwani-i-kherat) and hospitals (Dar-ul-shafa) were established.

Diwan-i-Istibqaq was established to give financial help to the poor. Liberal grants were given to scholars and religious institutions.

Foreign Policy

In 1353 A.D. and 1359 A.D. Firoz besieged Bengal. He captured Jainagar and destroyed the Jagannath Temple at Puri. He made the rulers of Nagarkot and Tatta to pay tributes.

An Estimate

Firoz proved his greatness by his benevolent reforms and contributed to the material prosperity of his people. The Sultan himself wrote his autobiography called *Futuhat-i-Firoz Shahi*. He patronized the scholar Zia-ud-din Barani. During his period a number of Sanskrit books on medicine, science and arts were translated into Persian. *Kutab- Feroz Shahi* was a book which dealt with Physics.

Later Tughluqs

Ghiyas-ud-din Tughluq Shah II, Abu Bakr Shah, Nasir-ud-din Mohammed Tughluq were the successors of Firoz. They were not very strong and powerful. By the end of the fourteenth century, most of the provinces under them became independent. Punjab and Delhi alone remained in the hands of the Tughluqs.

The Sultans of the Tughluq Dynasty however, continued to rule upto 1414 A.D. It was during their period that the invasion of Timur took place.

Timur's invasion (1398 A.D.)

The ruler of Samarcand, Timur was attracted by the fabulous wealth of Hindustan. He invaded India during the period of Nasir Mahmud Tughluq. He crossed the river Indus and reached Delhi. The Sultan and his Prime Minister Mallu Iqbal opposed Timur. Timur defeated them and occupied Delhi in 1398 A.D. Timur inflicted untold miseries on the people by plundering and massacring them. His invasion led to the decline of the Tughluq Dynasty.

THE SAYYID DYNASTY

(1414-1451 A.D.)

The Sayyid dynasty rose to prominence in Delhi with the decline of the Tughluq dynasty. **Khizr Khan** (1414-1421 A.D.) the Governor of Multan took advantage of the chaotic conditions in India after Timur's invasion occupied the throne of Delhi in 1414 A.D. and founded the Sayyid dynasty. Khizr Khan, the founder did not assume any royal title. Though he brought Punjab, Dilapur and parts of Surat under his control, he lost Jaunpur, Malwa, Gujarat, Khandesh, Bengal and Deccan. He died in 1421 A.D. and was succeeded by his son **Mubarak Shah** (1421-1434 A.D.) He suppressed the Khokhars and the local chiefs of the Doab region. His reign is notable for the fact that for the first time Hindu nobles were appointed in the court of Delhi. He built a city called "Mubarakbad" on the banks of the river Jamuna. He was murdered in 1434 A.D.

Mubarak's nephew, **Muhammad Shah** (1434-1445 A.D.) succeeded him. He put down the ruler of Malwa with the help of Bahlol Lodi the Governor of Lahore. For the help rendered by Bahlol Lodi he was conferred with the title Khan-i-Khanan. Muhammad Shah died in 1445AD.

Muhammad Shah was succeeded by **Ala-ud-din Shah** (1445-1457 A.D.). He was a very feeble ruler. Bahlol Lodi the Governor of Lahore occupied Delhi in 1457 A.D. and allowed Ala-ud-din Shah to retire to Badaun where he died in 1478 A.D. The Sayyid Dynasty came to an end in 1457.A.D.

LODI DYNASTY

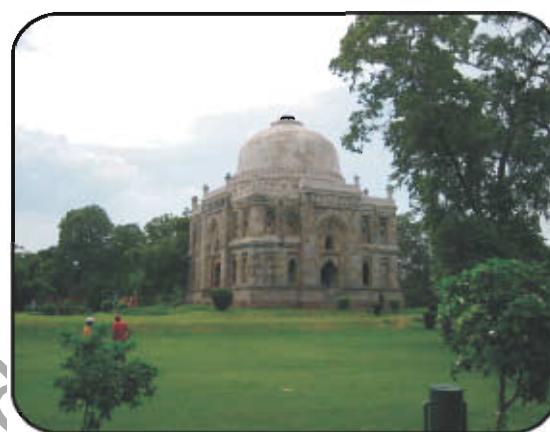
Bahlol Lodi (1451-1489 A.D.)

The Lodi Dynasty was founded by Bahlol Lodi. It was the last of the ruling dynasties of the Sultanate period. He was a shrewd politician who clearly realized his limitations. He always took steps to satisfy his nobles. He conquered Mewat, Samthal, Sakit, Etawa and Gwalior. He died in 1489 A.D.

Bahlol Lodi did not take his seat on the throne but sat on the carpet in front of the throne along with his nobles in order to get their recognition and support.

Bahlol's son **Sikandar Shahi** (1489-1517 A.D.) ascended the throne under the title of Sikandar Shah. He extended his empire from

Punjab to Bihar. He built the city of Agra which became an important administrative and cultural center of the Lodi's. He organized an efficient spy system. He improved agriculture and industry. During his period several Sanskrit books dealing with mathematics, medicine, astronomy and yoga were translated into Persian.



Ibrahim Lodi Tomb

He enjoyed "Shehnai" music. A reputed work on music titled "Lahjat-i-Sikandar Shahi was prepared during his reign. He was an orthodox Muslim and put serious restrictions on the Hindus. He was the greatest ruler of the Lodi Dynasty. He died in 1517 A.D.

End of Lodi Dynasty

Ibrahim Lodi (1517-1526 A.D.) succeeded Sikandhar Lodi. He was an uncompromising and intolerant ruler. Ibrahim Lodi humiliated many of his nobles and killed some of them cruelly. Dilwar khan Lodi the son of Daulat khan Lodi was treated cruelly by Ibrahim Lodi. In order to take revenge on him, Daulat khan Lodi invited Babur the ruler of Kabul to

invade India. Babur accepted his invitation, invaded India and defeated Ibrahim Lodi in the first battle of Panipat in 1526 A.D. The Lodi dynasty came to an end with the defeat of Ibrahim Lodi.

Administration under the Delhi Sultanate

The Sultanate of Delhi which extended from 1206 A.D. to 1526 A.D., for a period of about 320 years, was a Theocratic as well as a Military State. Administration was based on Islamic laws.

Ministers to Sultan Wazir

Prime Minister and Finance Minister.

Diwani-I-Risalt

Foreign Affairs Minister.

Sadr-us-Suddar

Minister of Islamic Law.

Diwan-I-Insha

Correspondence Minister.

Diwan-I-Ariz

Defence or War Minister.

Qazi-ul-quzar

Minister of Justice.

Central Administration

The Sultan was the head of the empire. He enjoyed vast powers. There were six ministers to assist him. Many officials were also appointed to take care of the administration.

Provincial Administration

The empire was divided into several Iqtas. Iqtas were administered by Iqtadars or

Governors. Iqtas were divided into smaller units called Shiqqs, Parganas and the Villages.

The head of the Shiqq was called Shiqqdar. Important officials of the Pargana were the Amil or Munsif, the treasurer and the quanungo.

Local Administration

The village was the smallest unit of administration. Local hereditary officers and the Panchayats in each village carried out the village administration. The Panchayat looked after education, sanitation, justice, revenue etc. The Central Government did not interfere in the village administration.

Revenue Administration

Land revenue was the main source of income. So, a lot of importance was given to agriculture and irrigation. Trade tax, House tax, Horse tax, Mines tax, etc. were some of the taxes collected during the Sultanate period.

Judicial Administration

The Sultan was the highest judicial authority. Qazi-ul-quzar was the Chief Judicial officer. There was a Quazi in every town. Usually severe punishments were given to the criminals.

Military Administration

The Sultan was the Commander of the army. The four divisions of the army were the Royal army, Provincial or Governor's army, Feudal army and War Time army.

Social life of the Sultanate period

The important characteristic of the society was the division of people on the basis of their nationality as foreign Muslims, Indian Muslims and Hindus.

Economic conditions of the people

The people were mainly involved in agriculture and industry. Textile industry was the primary industry. Sugar industry, paper industry, metal work, stone cutting, pearl diving, ivory and sandal works were the other industries of this period.

Textiles

Indian textiles was in great demand in foreign countries. Bengal and Gujarat were famous for their quality fabrics. Cotton, woollen and silk of different varieties were produced in large quantities. The clothes were studded with gold, diamonds, pearls, silver and stones.

CONTRIBUTIONS OF THE DELHI SULTANATE Art and Architecture

Delhi Sultans had a genius for architecture. There was a blend of Indian and Islamic styles. The three well developed styles were -Delhi or Imperial Style, Provincial Style and Hindu architectural style. Qutubminar, Quwat-ul-Islam mosque, the tombs of Nasir-ud-din Muhammad and Balban were built by the Mamaluk rulers.

Siri the new town in Delhi, Dargah of Hazrat Nizam – ud – din Aulia and the Alai Darwaza belonged to Khilji period.

The rulers of Tughluq period did not give importance to ornamentation. Their buildings were solid and strong. Some buildings bear mark of Hindu features. The palace and the tomb of Ghiyas – ud – din Tughluq, Adalabad Fort built by Muhammad–bin Tughluq and the cities of Tughluqabad and Jahanpanah stand testimony to the architectural skill of the Tughluq period.

The Lodi Garden and Moti Masjid in New Delhi and the tomb of Sikandar Lodi are some examples of Lodi architecture.

Literature

The Delhi Sultans were great patrons of learning. Great scholars namely **Alberuni, Amir Khusrau and Zia-ul-Barani** adorned their court. Many Sanskrit works were translated into Arabic. A lot of vernacular literature was also produced during this period. Urdu language originated during the Sultanate period.

SCHOLARS OF SULTANATE PERIOD

Alberuni an Arabic and Persian Scholar served under Mahmud of Ghazni. He learnt and translated two Sanskrit works into Arabic. He was impressed by the Upanishads and Bhagavat Gita. In his work Tarikh-ul-Hind, he

referred to the socio-economic conditions of India.

Amir Khusrau was a great Persian poet. He is said to have written four lakh couplets. He was a great singer and was given the title 'Parrot of India'. He used a lot of Hindi words in his works.

Impact of Turkish Conquest

The Turkish conquest of India had its impact on various fields.

- 1) It paved the way for a centralized political organization.
- 2) It restored contacts with the rest of Asia and parts of Africa.
- 3) A permanent army was established.
- 4) Trade developed due to the uniform legal system, tariff regulations and currency.
- 5) Persian became the court language and brought uniformity in administration.

Disintegration of the Delhi Sultanate

The disintegration of the Delhi Sultanate had begun during the Tughluq period. The invasion of Timur and the incompetent and intolerant nature of some of the Sayyid and Lodi rulers led to the crumbling of the Delhi Sultanate. The first to break free from Delhi in the South were the rulers of the Vijayanagar and Bahmani Kingdom.

Khandesh, Bengal, Sind, Multan, Gujarat, Malwa, Jaunpur, Kashmir, Assam and Orissa also asserted their independence.

Further the defeat of Ibrahim Lodi in the first Battle of Panipat in 1526 A.D. by Babur ended the Lodi dynasty and brought the downfall of the Delhi Sultanate in India. The Delhi Sultanate which began in 1206 A.D. and lasted for about 300 years came to an end with the establishment of Mughal rule in India in 1526 A.D.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Mamaluk rule was founded by _____.
a) Balban b) Iltutmish c) Qutb-ud-din Aibak
2. The first Turkish ruler to introduce Arabic coinage was _____.
a) Iltutmish b) AmirKhusrau c) Amir Hasan
3. The poet known as the "Parrot of India" was _____.
a) AlBeruni b) Kaiqubad c) Amir Khusrau
4. The founder of the Sayyid Dynasty was _____.
a) Khizr Khan b) Muhamad Shah c) Daulat khan Lodi

5. Babur the ruler of Kabul was invited by _____ to invade India.
 a) Bahlul Lodi b) Ibrahim Lodi c) Daulat Khan Lodi

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. Quwat-ul-Islam mosque at Ajmer was built by _____.
2. The first woman ruler of the Sultanate period was _____.
3. The founder of the Tughluq dynasty was _____.
4. Bahlol Lodi occupied the throne of Delhi in _____.
5. Sikhandar Shah Lodi enjoyed _____ music.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Qutb-ud-din Aibak | Divine Right Theory |
| 2. Balban | Muhammad-bin-Tughluq |
| 3. Jalal-ud-din Firoz Khilji | Ruler of Samarkand |
| 4. Prince Juna Khan | Lakh Bak or Giver of Lakhs |
| 5. Timur | Policy of Peace |

IV) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. How did Qutb-ud-din Aibak save his infant Turkish Empire?
2. How was Balban able to destroy the "Corps of Forty"?
3. Write a short note on Ala-ud-din Khilji's army.
4. What were the public works introduced by Firoz Tughluq?
5. Give a short account of Timur's invasion.

V) Answer in detail.

1. How did Iltutmish put down his enemies and strengthen his position?
2. Describe in detail the conquests of Ala-ud-din Khilji in North and South India.
3. Give an account of the domestic policies of Mohammed-bin-Tughluq.
4. Write in detail about the administration of the Delhi Sultanate.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Narrate in class:

The class should be divided into groups. A representative from each group should pose as Qutb-ud-din Aibak and narrate how the Turkish rule was established by him/her in India.

2. Find out:

Find more on the Divine Right Theory of Kingship – the countries and the kings who followed it.

3. Enact:

- The achievements of Ala-ud-din Khilji, a man of determination who made his dynasty strong. (Or)
- The benevolent reforms and greatness of Firoz Tughlaq.

4. Prepare:

Prepare an album (or) a power point presentation on the Art and architecture of the Delhi Sultanate.

5. Learn Urdu words:

Persons	Things
Father	Pencil
Mother	Pen
Brother	Notebook
Sister	Paper
Teacher	Ink

6. Things to do:

Mark the following on the outline map of India .

- Extent of Muhammad – bin – Tughluq's Empire.
- Places: Multan, Mathura, Kanauj, Gwalior, Delhi, Banaras.

HISTORY**1. THE VIJAYANAGAR AND BAHMANI KINGDOMS****Rise of the Vijayanagar and Bahmani Kingdoms**

A large number of provincial governors and feudatories, both in North and South India declared their independence with the disintegration of the Delhi Sultanate after the reign of Muhammed-bin-Tughluq. Bengal and Multan were the first to break away from Delhi. Gujarat, Malwa, Mewar, Marwar and Kashmir also became independent.

Further to this, Vijayanagar and the Bahmani kingdoms rose to prominence in the Deccan and South India.

**The Vijayanagar Empire
(1336-1672 A.D.)**

Harihara and Bukka serve under the Hoysalaking ViraBallala III. After Hoysala's were put down by Muhammad-bin-Tughluq Harihara become the ruler. They founded the city of Vijayanagar on the Southern banks of Tungabhadra in 1336 A.D with the help of Saint vidaranya and his brother Sayana. Their capital was Hampi. Vijayanagar empire was ruled by four important dynasties namely the **Sangama**, **Saluva**, **Tuluva** and **Aravidu**.

Harihara I became the ruler in 1336 A.D. He captured Mysore and Madurai. He was succeeded by **Bukka-I** in 1356 A.D. His empire extended from the region south of the river Tungabhadra upto Rameswaram. The important rulers

of Vijayanagar Empire were **Harihara-II**, **Devaraya-I**, **Devaraya-II** and **Krishnadeva Raya**.

**KRISHNADEVA RAYA
(1509-1529 A.D.)**

Krishnadeva Raya of the Tuluva dynasty was the most famous king of the Vijayanagar Empire.



Krishnadeva Raya

According to Domingo Paes, a Portuguese traveller, "Krishnadeva Raya was the most feared and perfect king there could possibly be".

CONQUESTS

Krishnadeva Raya was a great warrior. He conquered Sivasamudram in 1510 A.D., Raichur in 1512 A.D., Orissa and Warangal in 1523 A.D. and a large part of the Deccan. His empire extended from the river Krishna in the north to the river Cauvery in the south and the

Arabian Sea in the west to the Bay of Bengal in the east.

Contributions

Krishnadevaraya was an able administrator. He constructed large tanks and canals for irrigation purposes. He improved the naval power as he understood the importance of overseas trade. He maintained friendly relationship with the Portuguese and Arab traders and increased the revenue of his government.

Krishnadeva Raya was a great scholar. A group of eight scholars called **Ashtadiggajas** adorned his court. He was a patron of art and architecture. He built beautiful temples and palaces. The Vijayanagar Empire reached its zenith of glory during Krishnadeva Raya's period.

The Ashtadiggajas

Allasani Peddanna, Nandi Thimmana, Tenali Rama, Bhattu Murthy, Puna Vira Bhadra, Dhurjathy, Mallana and Panaji Surana.

BATTLE OF TALIKOTA (1565 A.D.)

The successors of Krishnadeva Raya were weak. During the rule of Ramaraya, the combined forces of Ahmednagar, Bijapur, Golconda and Bidar declared war on Vijayanagar. In the battle of Talikota in 1565 A.D. Ramaraya was defeated. He and his people were mercilessly killed. Vijayanagar was plundered and left in ruins.

The Glories of the Vijayanagar Empire

Administration

The Vijayanagar rulers had a well organized administrative system. The king was the fountain head of all powers in the state. There was a Council of Ministers to assist the King in the work of administration.

The Empire was divided into six Provinces. Each Province was under a Governor called Naik. The Provinces were divided into districts which were further divided into smaller units namely Villages. The Village Assembly carried on the administration of the villages through its hereditary officers like accountants, the weightsmen, watchmen and officers in charge of forced labour. The Central administration maintained contact with the villages through an officer called Mahanayakacharya.

The Army

The army consisted of the infantry, cavalry and elephantry. The commander-in-chief was in charge of the army.

Revenue Administration

Land revenue was the main source of income. The land was carefully surveyed and taxes were collected based on the fertility of the soil. Great attention was paid to agriculture and the construction of dams and canals.

Judicial Administration

The king was the supreme judge. The civil cases were decided

on the basis of Hindu Law. Severe punishments were inflicted on the guilty. Fines were collected from those who violated the law.

Position of Women

Women occupied a high position and took an active part in political, social and literary life of the empire. They were educated and trained in wrestling, in the use of various weapons of offence and defence, in music and fine arts. Some of them received education of high order. Nuniz writes that the kings had women astrologers, clerks, accountants, guards and wrestlers.

Social life

We get a clear picture of the life of the Vijayanagar people from the writings of the foreign travellers. The society was well organized. Child marriage, dowry system polygamy and sati were prevalent. The kings allowed freedom of religion.

Economic conditions

The empire of Vijayanagar was very rich and prosperous. The agricultural production was increased by their irrigational policies. Numerous industries such as Textiles, mining, metallurgy and perfumery existed. They had commercial relations with the islands in the Indian Ocean, the Malay Archipelago, Burma, China, Arabia, Persia, South Africa, Abyssinia and Portugal.

The chief articles exported were spices, cereals, cotton, silk, opium, indigo, sea pearls, saffron, ginger, sugar, coconuts, etc. The articles

imported were horses, elephants, copper, coal, mercury, China silk and velvets. Goa, Diu, Cochin and Quilon were the important ports through which active trade was carried on the Western sea coast of India.

Contribution to Architecture and Literature

The rulers of Vijayanagar were great patrons of art and learning. The **Hazara Ramasami temple** and **Vittalaswamy temple** are fine examples of this period. The bronze image of Krishnadeva Raya is a masterpiece. Many scholars were patronized by the Vijayanagar rulers. Sanskrit, Tamil, Telugu and Kannada literature were developed. **Sayana** wrote **commentaries on Vedas**. **Krishnadevaraya** wrote **Amuktamalyada** in telugu. His Sanskrit works were **Usha Parinayam** and **Jambavathi Kalyanam**.



VITTALASWAMI TEMPLE

Vittalaswami Temple was constructed during the reign of Krishna Deva Raya. In the front of the temple is a famous stone chariot of ratha, carved out of a Single rock. Another notable feature is the musical pillars. when tapped, these pillars produce musical 'musical' or 'Sa Re Ga Ma' pillars.

Decline of the Empire

The rulers of the Aravidu dynasty were weak and incompetent. Taking advantage of their weakness the provincial governors became independent.

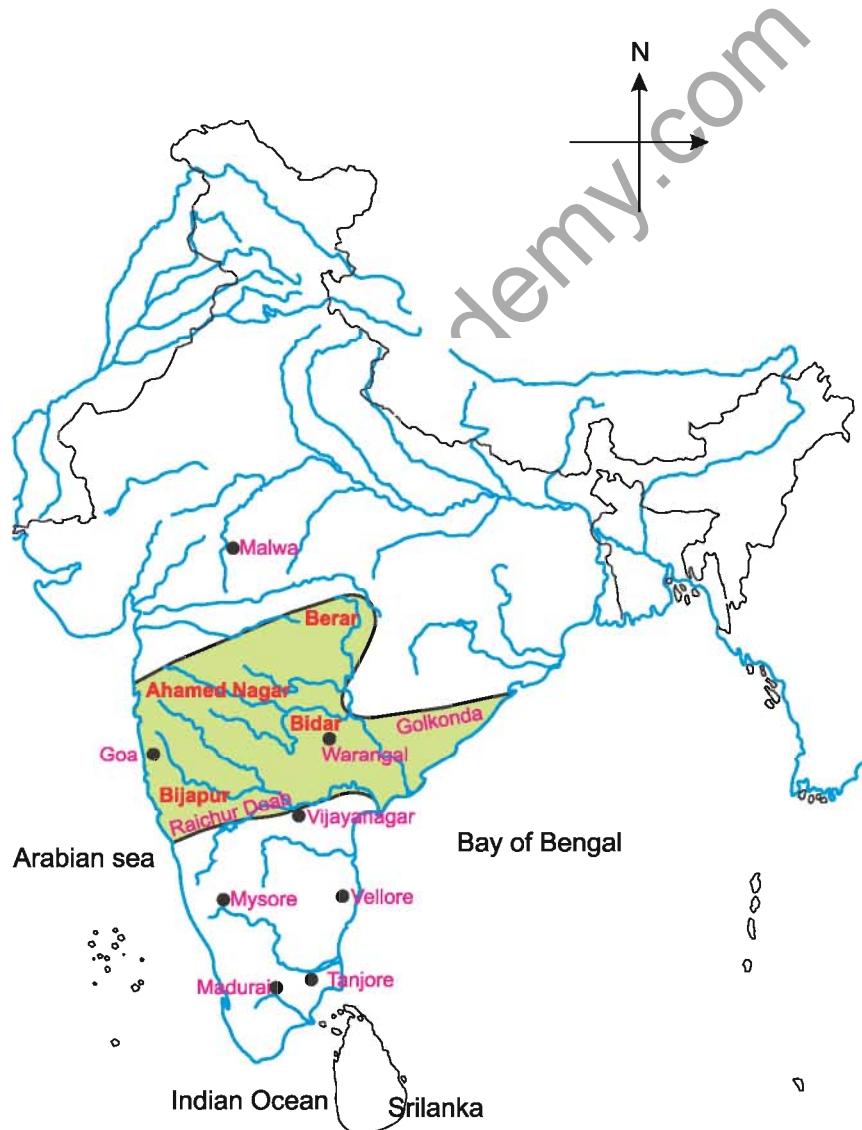
The rulers of Bijapur and Golconda annexed some areas of

Vijayanagar. The Nayaks became free in the south. Thus by 1614 A.D. Vijayanagar dynasty was declined.

THE BAHMANI KINGDOM (1347-1526 A.D.)

The Bahmani kingdom was the most powerful Muslim kingdom that

Bahmani and Vijayanagar Kingdoms



Bahmani and Vijayanagar Kingdoms

rose to prominence in the Deccan in 1347 A.D. and lasted till 1526 A.D.

Political History

The founder of this dynasty was **Hasan Gangu Bahmani**. He was a Turkish officer of Devagiri. He established the independent Bahmani kingdom in 1347 A.D. He captured the entire territories from Mahur in north-east to Telangana in the south. He defeated the Hindu ruler of Warangal and annexed Kolhapur, Goa, Mandu and Malwa. Thus his kingdom stretched from the Arabian sea to the Bay of Bengal and included the whole of Deccan upto the river Krishna with its capital at Gulbarga.

Muhammad Shah-I (1358-1377.A.D.), the next ruler was an able general and administrator. He defeated Bukka-I the ruler of Vijayanagar and Kapaya Nayaks of Warangal.

Muhammad Shah-II (1378-1397.A.D.) ascended the throne in 1378 A.D. He was peace loving and hence he developed friendly relations with his neighbours. He built many mosques, madarasas(a place of learning) and hospitals.

On the death of Muhammad Shah-II, **Feroz Shah Bahmani** (1397-1422 A.D.) became the ruler. He was a great general. He defeated Deva Raya I, the Vijayanagar ruler. He recruited a number of Hindus in his services. He Transferred his capital from Gulburga to Bidar.

Towards the end of his rule, he lost the northern and southern

provinces of his kingdom to Vijayanagar.

Ahmad Shah (1422-1435 A.D.) succeeded Feroz Shah Bahmani. He was a cruel and merciless ruler. He conquered the kingdom of Warangal and changed his capital from Gulbarga to Bidar. He died in 1435A.D.

Muhammad Shah-III (1463-1482 A.D.) was another notable Bahmani ruler. He became the Sultan at the age of nine in 1463 A.D. Muhammad Gawan became the regent of the infant ruler. Under his able guidance the Bahmani kingdom became very powerful. Muhammad Gawan defeated the rulers of Konkan, Sangameshwar, Orissa and Vijayanagar. During this period the Bahmani kingdom stretched from one sea shore to the other and from the river Tapti to the river Tungabhadra.

Muhammad Gawan

He was a very wise scholar and able administrator. He improved the administration, organized finances, encouraged public education, reformed the revenue system, disciplined the army and eliminated corruption.

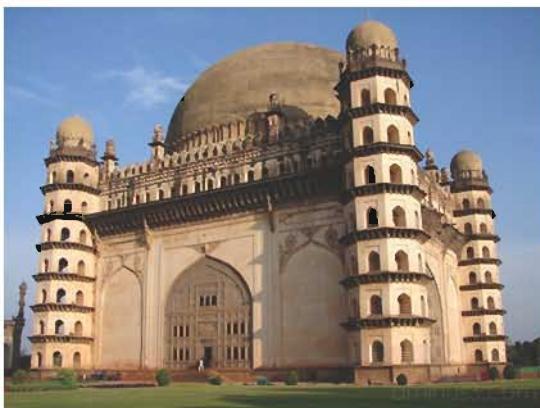
Muhammad Gawan fell a victim to the jealousy of Deccan muslims. He was falsely accused by them and so was persecuted and sentenced to death in 1481 by Muhammad Shah III, And he also died of guilt within a year.

The Five Muslim Dynasties

Muhammad Shah-III died in 1482. His successors were weak and the Bahmani Kingdom disintegrated into five kingdoms namely Bijapur, Ahmednagar, Berar, Golconda and Bidar.

Administration

The Sultans followed a Feudal type of administration. The kingdom was divided into many provinces called Tarafs. Each Taraf was under a Governor called Tarafdar or Amir. The Governors were powerful and supplied the king with men and equipments during times of war.

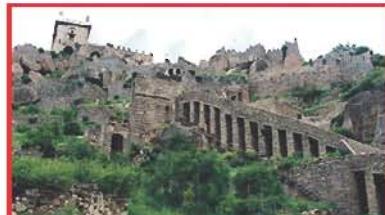


Golgumbaz

Golgumbaz in Bijapur is called the whispering gallery. This is so, because when one whispers in one corner, a lingering echo is heard in the opposite corner.

Contribution to Education, Art and Architecture

The Bahmani Sultans gave great attention to education. They encouraged Arabic and Persian learning. Urdu also flourished during this period. Numerous mosques, madarasas and libraries were built. The most famous monuments of the Sultans were the Juma masjid at Gulbarga, the Golconda fort, the Golgumbaz at Bijapur and the Madarasas of Muhammad Gawan.



GOLCONDA FORT

Golconda fort is one of the most magnificent fortresses. One of the most important features of this fort is that the sounds of hands clapped at the entry gate, can be heard quite clearly at the top of the hill.

Decline of Bahmani Kingdom

There were many causes for the downfall of the Bahmani kingdom. The constant wars between the Bahmani and Vijayanagar rulers, inefficient and weak successors of Muhammad Shah III and rivalry between the Bahmani rulers and foreign nobles were a few causes for the downfall of the Bahmani kingdom.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Vijayanagar Empire was founded in the year _____.
 a) 1337 A.D. b) 1336 A.D. c) 1338 A.D.

2. The brothers Harihara and Bukka served under the Hoysala King _____.
- a) Vira Ballala-III b) Narasimhan-II c) Billiama-VI
3. The most famous king of the Vijayanagar empire was _____.
- a) Harihara b) Bukka c) Krishnadeva Raya
4. The Muslim kingdom that rose to prominence in the Deccan in 1347 A.D. was the _____ kingdom.
- a) Slave b) Vijayanagar c) Bahmani
5. Muhammed Gawan was the Regent of _____.
- a) Muhammad Shah-III b) Hasan Gangu c) Ahmad Shah

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. A group of eight scholars called _____ adorned the court of Krishnadeva Raya.
2. The Vijayanagar Empire reached its zenith of glory during the period of _____.
3. Ramaraya was defeated and killed in the Battle of _____.
4. The Bahmani Kingdom was founded by _____.
5. The Bahmani Sultans encouraged Arabic and _____ learning.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Vijayanagar | - Bijapur |
| 2. Battle of Talikota | - Ushaparinayam |
| 3. Krishnadeva Raya | - Gulbarga |
| 4. Juma Masjid | - Southern bank of Tungabhadra |
| 5. Golgumbaz | - 1565 A.D. |

IV) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. What were the causes for the decline of the Vijayanagar Empire?
2. Who were the important rulers of the Vijayanagar Empire?
3. Write a short note on the Battle of Talikota.
4. When and by whom was the Bahmani kingdom founded?
5. Name the five Muslim kingdoms that arose in Deccan at the end of Bahmani rule.

V) Answer in detail.

1. Discuss in detail about the glories of the Vijayanagar Empire.
2. Give an account of the political history of the Bahmani Kingdom.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Make a comparison:

Compare the village administration of the Vijayanagar Empire with the present day village administration system of Tamilnadu.

2. Best Talent Show:

Narrate a story to prove the intelligence of Tenali Rama, one of the Ashtadiggajas.

3. Discuss:

Domingo Paes says “ Krishnadeva Raya was the most feared and perfect king”. Discuss why he said so.

4. Justify:

The best place to go on a study tour is – The Vijayanagar Empire or Bahmani Kingdom – Have a group discussion. Let the students judge which group was more concerning and why?

5. Focus:

Women occupied a high position in the Vijayanagar Empire. Name a few women of today who are in a very high position.

- 1. Political 2. Social 3. Sports

6. Things to do:

i. Collect pictures and prepare an album on the various contributions of the Vijayanagar and Bahmani kingdom to art and architecture.

ii. On the outline map of India mark the following places.

- 1. Berar
- 2. Bidar
- 3. Golkonda
- 4. Ahmednagar
- 5. Vijayanagar

2. BHAKTI AND SUFI MOVEMENTS

The Bhakti Movement of medieval India was a wide spread movement that embraced the whole of India for several centuries. The saints of the Bhakti movement advocated Bhakti or devotion to God as a means of attaining salvation. Its main objectives were to reform the Hindu religion and foster friendly relations between the Hindu and Muslim communities. The preachers of this movement belonged to different places and different times.

Bhakti Cult in South India

Saivism and Vaishnavism revived and gained great impetus through the Bhakti Cult during the Pallava, Chola and Pandya period by the Nayanmars and the Alwars.

There is a popular verse which says

“Bhakti arose first in South India, Ramananda spread it to the north and Kabir made it popular among the masses”.

Nayanmars

There were 63 Nayanmars who popularized the fame of Siva and Sakti. The most famous among them were Appar, Sundarar, Thirugnana Sambandar and Manikavasagar.

Appar was born around 600 A.D. in South Arcot district. Initially he was a follower of Jainism. Due to the

influence of his sister Thilagavathiyan, he became a devotee of Lord Shiva.

He composed 49,000 pathigames and only 311 pathigames are available.

Manikavasagar was firm in his faith of worship of one supreme God and declared that the way to reach God was love and not rituals. His work is called Tiruvatasagam.

Sambandhar is said to have sung about 16000 devotional pathigams of which only 384 pathigams are available.

Sundaramoorthy Nayyar was born during the last decades of the 8th century A.D. in South Arcot district. He composed 38000 pathigams, of which only 100 pathigams are available.

The most popular works of this period are **Sekhizar's “Periyapuram”** (Biographies of Nayanmars), **Devaram** (a collection of hymns and **Thiruvatasagam**). These hymns are great devotional, philosophical and literary works.

Alwars

The glory of Lord Vishnu were sung by 12 Alwars. The most famous among the Alwars were **Nammalwar**, **Perialwar** and **Andal**. **Nadamuni** compiled the 4000 hymns sung by the Alwars and named it as **Nalayira Divya Prabhandam**.

Early history of the Bhakti Movement

One of the earlier exponents of the Bhakti movement was Sankaracharya. He was born at Kaladi in Kerala. He preached Advaita philosophy or the worship of one God (Monotheism). He said Brahma or the Supreme spirit is alone real. Sankaracharya taught his followers to love truth, respect reason and realize the purpose of life.

Exponents of the Movement

Ramanuja, a great exponent of the Bhakti movement, was born at Sriperumbudur.



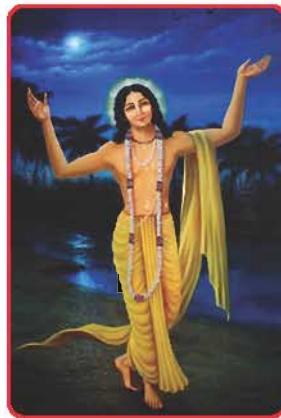
Ramanuja

He was a great Vaishnavite leader of the 12th century A.D. He taught that salvation lies only in devotion to God. He invited the downtrodden to embrace Vaishnavism.

Ramananda was the follower of Ramanuja. He believed in the existence of God. He saw humanity as one large family and all men as brothers. His disciples came from all religions and castes. He started preaching in the language of the people.

Vallabhacharya (1479-1531 A.D.) was a devotee of Krishna who taught that an individual could attain salvation through Bhakti.

Basava was the founder of Virasaivism. His followers were known as Virasaivas or Lingayats. They challenged the idea of caste and theory of rebirth.



Chaitanya

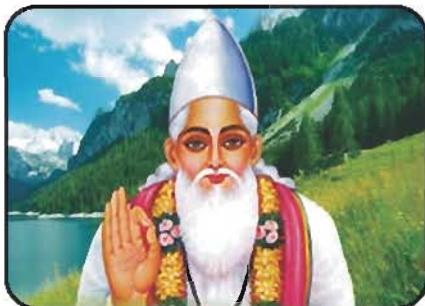
Chaitanya was born in Bengal in 1485 A.D. He propagated Krishna cult. He believed that one can realize the presence of God only through love and devotion.

Kabir (1425-1518 A.D.), a follower of Ramananda was the first to preach Hindu-Muslim unity. Kabir is regarded as the greatest of the mystic saints. His followers are called Kabirpanthis. His teachings have been collected in a book called Bijaka. His poems particularly Dohas had a great appeal to the common man. He said that Ram and Rahim were the same. He preached against idol worship and caste system.

Kabir - A typical poem of him.

O servant where dost thou seek me? Lo! I am beside thee

I am neither in temple nor in mosque,
 I am neither in Kaabha or Kailash
 Neither am I in rites and ceremonies
 nor in yoga and remuneration
 If thou art a true seeker, thou shall
 at once see me;
 thou shall meet me in a moment of
 time
**Kabir says;O Sadhu!God is breath
 of all breath.**



Kabir

Guru Nanak (1469-1538 A.D.)

Guru Nanak another well-known Saint of the Bhakti Movement was the founder of Sikhism. He was a disciple of Kabir.



Guru Nanak

He was born in 1469 A.D. at Talwandi near Lahore. He preached unity of God, goodwill and co-operation among Hindus and Muslims. He advocated truth,

honesty, kindness and condemned orthodox beliefs and idolatry or idol worship.

Mirabai

Mirabai a saint of this movement was born in 1498 A.D. She was the



Mirabai

daughter of Rathor Ratan Singh of Mewar and wife of the ruler of Udaipur. She was a devotee of Krishna. She was very popular in Rajasthan for her bhajans. There is a big temple dedicated to Mirabai in chittor, the capital of Mewar.

Maharashtra saints

The Maratha region produced a number of Bhakti Saints namely Gnanadeva, Namdeva, Eknath, Tukaram, Tulsidas and Ramdas. Gnanadeva wrote a commentary on Bhagavat Gita called Ganeswari. Chokamela was the first dalit writer of India. Eknath opposed caste distinction.

Guru Ramdas's work was Dasabodha. Tulsidas was the author of Ramcharit manas.

The Sufi Movement

Sufism was a reform movement which originated in Persia and became popular in India in the 12th century A.D. The followers of this movement were called as Sufis. The

Sufis protested against materialism of the Caliphate as a religious and political institution and turned towards asceticism and mysticism. They regarded Prophet Muhammad as a perfect human being. Sufism insisted that God could be reached only through meditation, love and devotion. They opposed rituals and were tolerant towards other religions. The Sufis organized themselves into communities and were controlled by a master known as Shaikh (in Arabic) Pir or Murshid (in Persian). The Sufis belonged to 12 orders called as Silsilas. The word Silsila means a "chain" signifying a continuous link between master and disciple. The Chisti Silsila is the most important Sufi order in India as they adapted successfully to the local environment and the features of Indian devotional tradition.

Important Sufi Saints of India

Some of the most important Sufi Saints of India were Khwaja Muin-ud-din Chisti, Baba Farid and Nizam-ud-din Auliya.

Khwaja Muin-ud-din Chisti came to India around 1192 A.D. and stayed at Ajmer. According to him the greatest form of devotion to God was through service to humanity. He dedicated his entire life to the service of mankind. He was popularly known as 'Gharib Nawaz' or protector of the poor. He encouraged singing of devotional songs and qawalis at gatherings. He died in 1235 A.D. The place where he was buried in Ajmer is an

important place of pilgrimage.

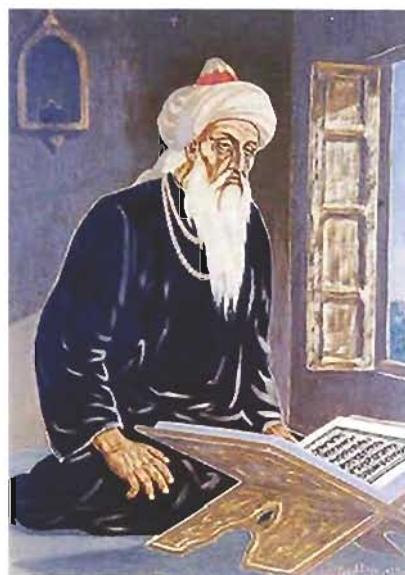
The Hindu customs of breaking coconuts and lighting of lamp are followed here.

Sufism –Name Derivation

Suf means wool. The coarse woolen clothes worn by the Sufis is an emblem of simplicity. It was a silent way of protest against the growing luxuries of the world.

Safa meaning purity.

Suffa was the platform outside the Prophets mosque where a group of close followers assembled to learn about the faith.



Baba Farid

Baba Farid, the disciple of Khwaja Muin-ud-din Chisti preached the unity of God and brotherhood. He encouraged people to live a simple life. He composed many verses in Punjabi which are recited by both the Hindus and the Muslims. Sultan Balban was a devotee of Baba Farid.

Nizam-ud-din Auliya was a popular saint who came from Badayeen and settled in Delhi. He became the disciple of Baba Farid. He was against class and caste distinctions.

He was popularly referred to as Mehboob-i-illahi (Beloved of God) by his devotees. His dargah is at Delhi. It is visited by both the Hindus and Muslims.

Saint Nagore Andavar

Saint Nagore Andavar belonged to the 16th Century A.D. He was popularly called as Meeran Sahib or QadirWali. The shrine at Nagore is dedicated to him. The Kandhuri Urs festival celebrated at Nagore is attended by people of all religions. Although the Nagore Dargah is dedicated to a Muslim saint, Hindu influence is seen in the architectural style of the Dargah and the rituals performed, e.g. applying sandalwood paste, giving prasadam, tonsuring the head etc.

The Dargah or a tomb

The Dargah or a tomb of a Shaikh became a centre of devotion for his followers as they believed that the Shaikh was united with God and become closer to Him in death. So the followers visited the Dargah seeking material and spiritual benefits.

Impact of the Bhakti and Sufi Movements

The Bhakti and Sufi Movements tried to end the exploitation of the masses by the priestly class. They created awareness about the evils of superstitious beliefs. It paved the way for equality and brotherhood. The Bhakti saints preached against ritualism, idol worship, caste-system, priestly domination and difference of religions. They believed that through love and devotion one can realize the personal presence of God. They encouraged good will and co-operation among the Hindus and Muslims.

The Sufi Saints taught that there is one God and all human beings are his children. They emphasized on leading a pure life and serving the poor and needy. They condemned rituals and sacrifices.

Hindi, Punjabi, Bengali, Telugu, Kannada and Tamil literature were enriched by the Bhakti and Sufi saints.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Bhakti movement spread during the _____ period in India.
 a) Medieval b) Ancient c) Modern

2. Shankaracharya was born at _____ in Kerala.
 a) Kaladi b) Talwandi c) Mewar
3. Gurunanak was the founder of _____.
 a) Sikhism b) Virasaivism c) Vaishnavism
4. Sufism originated in _____.
 a) Iraq b) Turkey c) Persia

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. Shankaracharya preached _____ philosophy.
2. Ramanuja, an exponent of the Bhakti movement was born at _____ near Chennai.
3. Basava was the founder of _____.
4. Gnanadeva wrote a commentary on Bhagavat Gita called _____.
5. _____ festival is celebrated at Nagore Dargah.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Nayanmars | - Dalit Writer |
| 2. Manikavasagar | - Vaishnavites |
| 3. Alwars | - Tiruvatasagam |
| 4. Mirabai | - Saivites |
| 5. Chokamela | - Devotee of Krishna |

IV) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. What were the main objectives of the Bhakti movement?
2. What was the impact of the Bhakti cult in south India?
3. Write a short note on Kabir?
4. Name the Maratha Saints of the Bhakti movement.
5. What did the Sufists insist?

V) Answer in detail.

1. Give a detailed account of the exponents of the Bhakti movement in India.
2. Write in detail about the Sufi movement in India.
3. What was the impact of the Bhakti and Sufi movement in India.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Group Discussion:

Discuss if the social evils condemned by the Bhakti saints are still prevalent? If so suggest some ways to prevent it.

2. Act:

With the help of your Tamil language teacher find out a few incidents which happened in the life of Bhakti / Sufi saints of Tamilnadu and act out it in the class room.

3. Sing:

Memorise a few poems / dohas of the Bhakti and sufi saints and sing it in class.

4. Collect:

Collect stories of Bhakti / Sufi saints published in the Newspapers / Magazines and read it in class.

5. Things to do:

1. Collect pictures of the Bhakti and sufi saints and prepare an album.
2. Prepare a chart on the twelve Alwars along with their literary works.

SHAKTHII ACADEMY

SOCIAL STUDIES - HISTORY

STANDARD - EIGHT



1. THE GREAT MUGHALS

India on the eve of Babur's Invasion

On the eve of Babur's invasion, India was divided into numerous mutually warring states. In the North, there was no political unity. The Delhi Sultanate was not strong. **Ibrahim Lodi**, the last Sultan of Delhi had lost control over his nobles. Rana Sanga, the head of the Rajputs was not only powerful but also ambitious to capture the throne of Delhi. Meanwhile Babur received invitations from **Alam Khan**, the uncle of Ibrahim Lodi and **Daulat Khan Lodi**, the Governor of Punjab, to invade India. In South India, there were two major independent kingdoms namely the Vijayanagar Empire and the Bahmini Kingdom Who were constantly quarreling amongst themselves. It was under these circumstances, Babur invaded India.



BABUR

BABUR (A.D1526-A.D1530)

Zahir-ud-Din Muhammad, Babur was born in A.D.1483 at

Farghana in Central Asia. He was the eldest son of Umar Shaikh Mirza. Babur was a descendant from his father's side of **Timur**, the Turk, and mother's side of **Chengizkhan**, the Mongol. After the death of his father in A.D.1494 , Babur became the king of Farghana at the early age of 11.

CONQUESTS

FIRST BATTLE OF PANIPAT (A.D. 1526)

Accepting the invitation from Daulat Khan Lodi, Babur made an elaborate preparations for the conquest of India. He met Ibrahim Lodi in the historic plains of Panipat on 21st April 1526. His artillery worked wonders, inspite of the superior numerical strength, Ibrahim Lodi was defeated and killed in the battlefield. It brought the rule of Delhi Sultanate to an end. Babur laid the foundation for the Mughal Empire in India.

Activity - Find out more details about Babur's military tactics at the first Battle of Panipat.

The victory at Panipat did not make Babur the ruler of India. He had to deal with a formidable foe, **Rana Sanga of Mewar**. Rana Sanga was defeated in the battle of Kanwah in A.D 1527. Medini Rai of Malwa was defeated in the battle of Chanderi in A.D 1528. Muhammed Lodi was also defeated in the battle

of Gaghra in A.D 1529. Thus Babur founded the Mughal Empire in India. His Empire extended from Bihar in the East to Punjab, Kabul, Kandahar and Badakshan in the West. However, he did not live long to enjoy the fruits of his success. In A.D 1530 at the age of 47, Babur died of ill-health, after nominating Humayun as the successor.

HIS PLACE IN HISTORY

Babur is one of the most interesting figures in the history of Medieval India. He was a great warrior, scholar and poet. He wrote his Autobiography, “*Tuzuk-i-Babri*”, popularly known as “*Memoirs of Babur*” in Turkish language. Babur was the most brilliant Asian Prince of his age. There is no doubt that Babur laid the foundation for the mighty Mughal Empire that ruled India for ever 200 years.

HUMAYUN (A.D.1530-A.D.1540 and A.D 1555-A.D 1556)

Humayun, the eldest son of Babur, ascended to the throne in A.D 1530 after the death of his father. He was born in Kabul in A.D.1508. He had three brothers namely **Kamran**, **Askari** and **Hindal**. At the age of 20, he was appointed as the Governor of Badakshan.

The throne inherited by Humayun was not a bed of roses. He had faced many difficulties. Babur had no time to consolidate his empire. As there was no law of primogeniture, (eldest son succeeding the throne) a war of succession arose after the death of Babur.

Humayun's brothers were ambitious to occupy the throne of Delhi. The Rajputs wanted to drive the Mughals out of India. Bahadur Shah of Gujarat also threatened Humayun. Sher Khan of Bengal and Bihar was a great challenge to Humayun. Thus Humayun was surrounded by enemies on all sides.

Sher Khan defeated Humayun in the battle of Chausa in A.D 1539 and again in the **battle of Kanauj** in A.D.1540. Humayun managed to escape and became a homeless wanderer for 15 years. He married Hamida Banu Begum and Akbar was born at Amarkot in A.D 1542. With the support of the Shah of Persia, Humayun recovered Kabul and Kandahar from his brother Kamran. He recaptured Delhi and Agra in A.D 1555, and became the king after 15 years of his exile.

“Humayun” means “**fortunate**”, but he was an unfortunate son of Babur. As a king, he failed. “If there was any possibility of falling, Humayun was not a man to miss it”. According to Lanepoole, “He tumbled through life and tumbled out of it”. Finally, he met his tragic end in A.D 1556. Before his death, he nominated his son Akbar as his successor and Bairam Khan as the guardian.

SHER SHAH SUR (A.D.1540-1545)

The original name of Shershah Sur was Farid. He was the son of Hussain. Farid Khan was born in A.D 1472. He entered into the services of the Afghan Governor of Jaunpur, who conferred on him the title

"Sherkhan" the "Lion King" for killing a tiger in a single hand (Sher) on a hunting expedition. He took up the services under the Governor of Bengal. Later, he became the ruler of Bihar and called himself 'Shershah'. The dynasty founded by him was known as "**Sur Dynasty**".

CONQUESTS

In the battle of Chausa in A.D 1539, Sherkhan defeated Humayun. After this victory, he began to dream of capturing the throne of Delhi. He declared himself the king of Bengal and Bihar. In the battle of **Kanauj in A.D. 1540**, he once again defeated Humayun and occupied Delhi and Agra and called himself Sher Shah. Then he conquered Sindh and Multan. Later on, Malwa, Raisin and Marwar were brought under his control. His last expedition was against the fort of Kalinjar in Bundelkhand. He was injured by the explosion of gun powder and died in A.D 1545.

Shershah's Administration

Central Administration

Shershah was the architect of a brilliant administrative system. He was not only an autocratic but also enlightened and vigorous. He did not listen the advise of Ulemas. He even looked into small details of administration. He was assisted by a council of ministers. There were four important ministers. **Diwan-i-Wizarat** in charge of income and expenditure, **Diwa-i-Ariz** in charge of recruitments, organization of army, **Diwan-i-Rasalat** in charge of ambassadors and envoys, **Diwan-i-**

Insha in charge of royal proclamations and despatches.

Provincial Administration

For the administrative convenience, he divided his empire into number of Sarkars. It was further divided into number of parganas. Each pargana comprised of a number of villages. The village was the lowest unit of provincial administration.

Revenue Administration

The land revenue system of Shershah was noteworthy. Land was measured and the tax was fixed according to the fertility of the soil. Land Tax was an important source of income. The share of the state was fixed as one-third of the average produce of the land. He issued "**Patta**" to the cultivators. He introduced the "**Ryotwari System**". Many of the reforms of Shershah were followed later by Akbar. Hence Shershah has been called as the **Fore-runner of Akbar**.

Military Administration

Shershah was a great warrior and military genius. He followed the main principles of Ala-ud-din Khilji's military system. He had a well organized army. His army consisted of infantry, cavalry, artillery and elephantry, but great emphasis was laid on cavalry. He appointed Afghan soldiers in the higher posts. He introduced the "**Dagh**" system (or) "**branding the horses**" to avoid false musters. He also maintained a descriptive roll for the soldiers.

Judicial Administration

Shershah was a fountain-head of justice. He had a strong sense of justice. Everyone was treated equally before the law. No one was above the law. He was the highest court of appeal. He was assisted by the Chief Qazi. No one could escape punishment on account of his status.

OTHER REFORMS

Intelligence Department

Shershah revived the Dak-chauki, the espionage system. This system worked efficiently and Shershah was able to get information from all parts of his dominion.

Roads

Shershah improved the means of communication and paid great attention towards restoring old roads and building new ones. Four major roads were laid by him to connect all the four corners of his kingdom. He built caravan sarais all along the roads for the benefit of the people.

Currency Reforms

Shershah abolished old and mixed currency. He fixed the ratio between copper and silver coins. He issued silver and gold coins. These coins bore his name in Devanagiri script. This currency was useful to improve the general economic condition of the nation. Hence Shershah has been called as "the father of modern currency".

Estimate

Shershah was a great empire-builder. He was an administrative genius. He also contributed to the field of architecture. His mausoleum built at Sasaram in Bihar is a marvel of Indo-Islamic architecture. He also built the Purana Qila at Delhi. He was one of the greatest rulers of India. It is said that if Shershah had been spared, the mighty Mughals would not have appeared in the history of India.

AKBAR THE GREAT (A.D.1556-A.D.1605)

Akbar, the Great was one of the greatest rulers of India. Jalaluddin



AKBAR

Muhammad Akbar was born at Amarkot on 23rd November 1542. Humayun made Bairam Khan Akbar's guardian as he was only 13 years old when he was crowned Emperor

CONQUESTS SECOND BATTLE OF PANIPAT (A.D. 1556)

The throne inherited by Akbar was not a bed of roses. The

immediate problem facing Akbar was to deal with the rising power of **Hemu**, the Prime Minister of Muhammad Shah of Bengal. Hemu tried to capture Delhi. The armies of Akbar and Hemu met at the historic plains of **Panipat in A.D. 1556**. Hemu was defeated and killed. Akbar consolidated the Mughal rule strongly in Delhi and Agra.

Akbar was under the control of **Bairam Khan** for 4 years. After four years Akbar wanted to become the real ruler of India. Hence he wanted to get rid of Bairam Khan. In A.D. 1560 he sent Bairam Khan on a pilgrimage to Mecca and he was killed by his commanders. Later Akbar's foster mother Maham Anaga controlled the affairs for two years. The period of her rule was also known as "**Petticoat Government**". As Maham Anaga proved to be unscrupulous, Akbar wanted to do away with her. So, he killed her son Adam Khan. Maham Anaga also died of grief. Later Akbar became the real ruler.

Other conquests

Akbar extended his empire by many conquests. He annexed Chunar and Malwa. Bihari Mal of Amber (Jaipur) accepted his overlordship. He gave his daughter in marriage to Akbar. Jahangir was born to them. Akbar annexed the Rajput state of Gondwana, **Rani Durgavathi**, offered a stiff resistance, but she was defeated.

After that he conquered some territories like Bikaner, Jaisalmer and

Jodhpur. His empire extended from Bengal in the East to Afghanistan in the West, from Himalayas in the North to Golkonda in the South.

RAJPUT POLICY

Akbar followed cordial relations towards the Rajputs who were honest and brave. He married Jodhbai, the princess of Jaipur. The rulers of Bikaner and Jaisalmar also gave their daughters in marriage to Akbar. Akbar appointed the Rajputs in higher positions. Raja Mansingh, Raja Bhagawan Das, Raja Todar Mal and Birbal were the notable ones. Akbar abolished '**Jizya**' and '**Pilgrimage taxes**' which were collected from non-Muslims.

DECCAN POLICY

To extend his kingdom and to check the rising power of the Portuguese, Akbar turned his attention towards Deccan. Ahmed Nagar was being ruled by Chand Bibi. Akbar defeated her and annexed it. Berar and Khandesh were also captured by him.

LITERARY WORKS

Though an illiterate, Akbar patronized scholars. Raja Todar Mal translated Bhagavata Purana into Persian. **Abul Fazal** and his brother **Abul Faizi** translated several Sanskrit works into Persian. Abul Fazl wrote **Ain-i-Akbari** and **Akbar Nama**. Abul Faizi translated **Ramayana** and **Mahabaratha** into Persian from Sanskrit. **Tansen** was a great musician who adorned Akbar's Court.

RELIGIOUS POLICY (DIN-I-ILAHI)

Akbar was not an orthodox Muslim. He was very tolerant. Akbar's father was a Sunni Muslim while his mother was a Shia. His guardian Bairam Khan was a Shia, Sheikh Mubarak, his tutor was also a Shia. All these made Akbar tolerant towards all religions. In 1575, he constructed a building known as **Ibadat Khana**. He invited religious leaders of various faiths and had discussions. He issued the famous "**Infallibility Decree**" which made Akbar as the religious head as well as the King. Finally in 1582, Akbar promulgated a new religion called "**Din-i-llahi**" (**Divine Faith**). Its object was to establish a National Religion based on universal toleration. It comprised of the good principles of all religions. Akbar never compelled anyone to follow his new religion. After Akbar's death, Din-i-llahi began to disappear.

Din-i-llahi was the Brain-Child of tolerant Akbar.

Land-Revenue Reforms of Akbar

Shershah was the forerunner of Akbar in the field of land revenue system. With the help of Raja Todarmal, Akbar improved land revenue system. Survey of land was made and the state revenue was fixed as 1/3 of the actual produce. The ryots could pay their tax either in cash or in kind. Loans were provided to them which could be repaid easily by annual instalments. Every cultivator was given a '**patta**' (Title Deed) and

was also required to sign a **qubuliyat** (Deed of Agreement).

MANSABDARI SYSTEM

The Mansabdari system of the Mughals was the basis of civil and military administration of the country. It was introduced by Akbar which he borrowed from Persia. The word '**Mansab**' means '**Grade**' or '**Rank**'. The Mansabdars were to recruit their troops and help the emperor when required. Each Mansabdar was given a piece of land according to his rank. The Mansabdars drew their salaries from the revenue of the land. This system worked well under Akbar but later on it deteriorated.

Contribution in the field of art and architecture

Akbar's period witnessed a remarkable growth in the field of art and architecture. He built the **Buland Darwaza**, an imposing gateway at Fatehpur Sikri to commemorate his Gujarat conquest. He constructed a new palace at **Fatehpursikri**. The **Akbari Mahal**, **Jahangiri Mahal**, the **Lahore Fort**, **Panch Mahal**, **Jodh Bai Palace** etc., were built in Red sand stone.

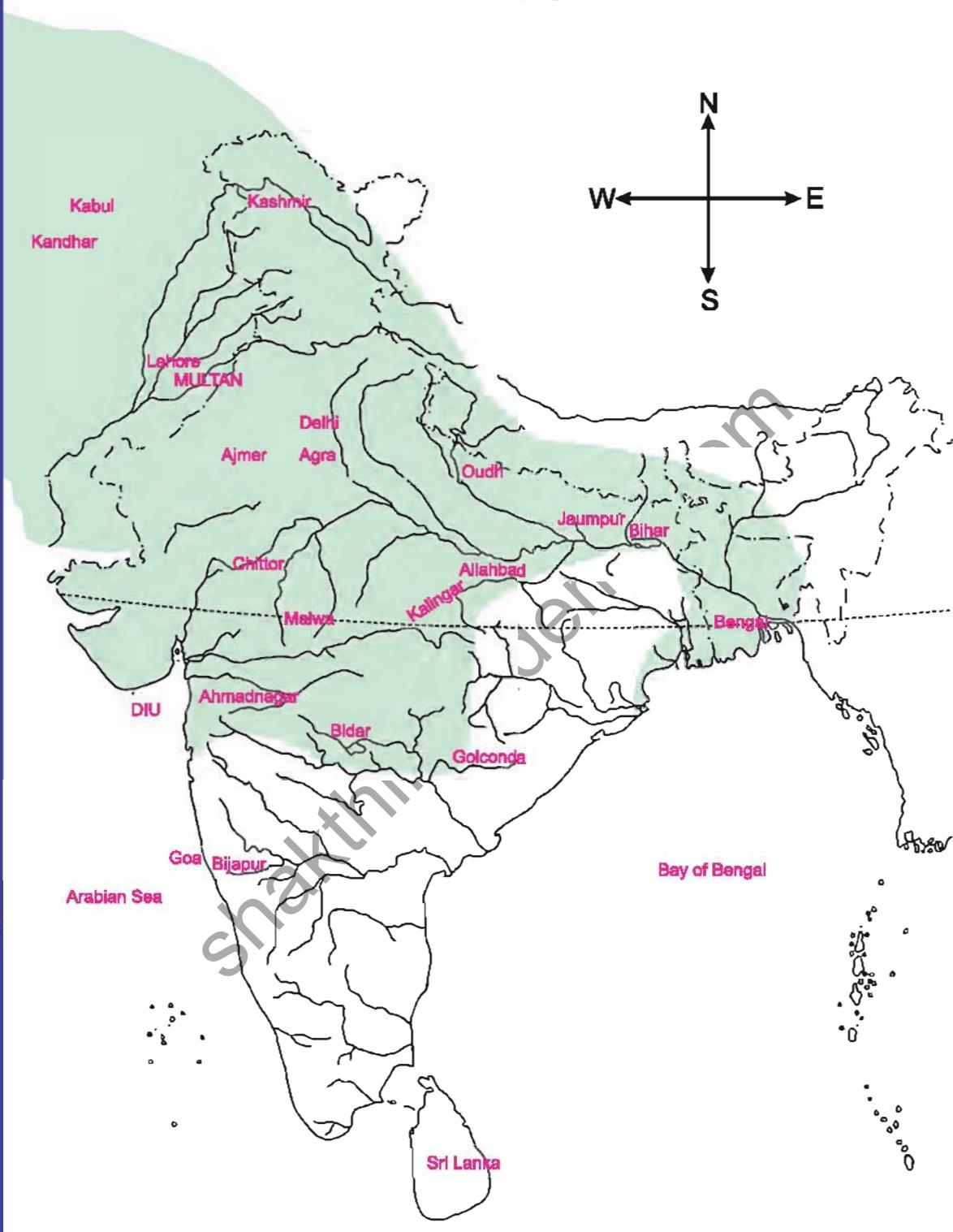
AKBAR'S PLACE IN HISTORY

Akbar died in 1605 A.D., after a glorious rule of 50 years. He occupies a unique position in the history of India. He has been regarded as the real founder of the Mughal Empire in India.

JAHANGIR (A.D. 1605 -A.D. 1627)

After the death of Akbar, his eldest son '**Salim**' assumed the title

Akbar's Empire



Nuruddin Muhammad Jahangir (or) "conqueror of the World" and became the emperor of India in A.D 1605. After a few months of his accession, his eldest son, Prince Khusru revolted against him. Khusru received the blessings of Guru Arjun Dev the 5th Sikh Guru. But Khusru was defeated, arrested and blinded. Later on he was put to death. Guru Arjun Dev was also not spared. He was also put to death and his property was confiscated. This incident strained the relationship between the Sikhs and the Mughals.

BRITISH TRAVELLERS

During Jahangir's reign, captain William Hawkins and Sir Thomas Roe from England visited his court. Sir Thomas Roe obtained permission from Jahangir in A.D.1615 to trade at Surat.

Activity:-

Recall some other travellers who visited India at various times.

LITERARY WORKS

Jahangir was a great scholar and a good writer. He wrote his autobiography. "Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri", which gives us an account of his reign. He was a lover of poetry and art.

JUSTICE

Jahangir was famous in the field of justice. He ordered for the setting up of a "Chain of Justice" between Shah Burji palace in the fort of Agra and a stone pillar fixed on the banks of the river Yamuna for enabling the aggrieved persons to pull the chain and ask for justice.

Activity:-

Which ruler in Ancient Tamil country introduced the chain of justice during his reign?

ROLE OF NURJAHAN

The story of NurJahan occupies an important place in the history of the Mughals. She was the daughter of Mirza Ghias Beg. Her original name was Mehr-un-Nisa. She was extremely beautiful. She was married to Sher Afghan who was killed by Jahangir. In A.D 1611, Jahangir married her and gave her the title "Nur Mahal" or "Light of the Palace". Later on she was called as Nur Jahan or "Light of the World". She was an intelligent, educated and cultured woman. During Jahangir's reign, she exercised the real power. The period between 1611-1626 may easily be called as "the Age of NurJahan". However, after the death of Jahangir in A.D.1627, she lost her importance and died in A.D. 1645.

Activity:-

Name the first woman ruler of Medieval India.

ESTIMATE

Jahangir was a kind and generous ruler. He laid out beautiful gardens. At Srinagar he laid out the Shalimar and Nishat Gardens. He had a great interest in the field of architecture. Some of his remarkable buildings are Akbar's Tomb at Sikhandara, Itmad-ud-daula's Tomb near Agra and the Great mosque at Lahore.

SHAH JAHAN (A.D.1628-A.D 1658)

Shah Jahan was the son of Jahangir. His original name was **Khurram**. He was born in A.D. 1592 at Lahore of a Hindu mother. When Jahangir died in A.D.1627, Nur Jahan summoned her son-in-law Shahriyar with a view to put him on the throne. At that time, Khurram was in Deccan. Nur Jahan proclaimed Shahriyar as the Emperor. Asaf Khan, the father-in-law of Khurram (Shah Jahan) sent forces against Nur Jahan and Shahriyar, defeated them and placed Shah Jahan "**King of the World**" on the throne of Delhi.

CONQUEST

ShahJahan fought with the Portuguese. He sent Mahabat Khan towards Deccan to conquer Ahmed Nagar. It was annexed with the Mughal empire in A.D.1636. He tried to recapture Khandhar and made three attempts but failed. It exposed the weakness of the Mughal army. He defeated the rulers of Bijapur and Golkonda. He made Aurangazeb, the Governor of Deccan.

Golden Age of the Mughals

The reign of ShahJahan has been considered as the "**Golden Age of the Mughals**". The power and prestige of the Mughal empire reached its height during his time. There was both prosperity and poverty during his period. His architectural wonders tell about prosperity while poverty is known through the accounts of foreigners.

Whose period was known as "The Golden Age" in Ancient India?

Prince of Builders

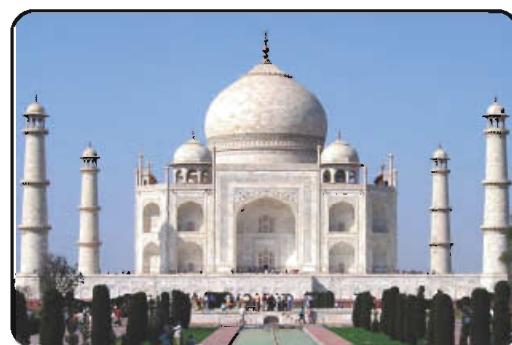
Shah Jahan has been called as the "**Prince of Builders**", and "**Engineer King**". Shah Jahan was the founder of the Mughal cities in Red sandstone and left them in white marble. He built a new capital "**Shahjahanabad**". He built the Red fort in Delhi which consisted of **Rang Mahal, Moti Mahal, Diwan-i-Kham** and **Diwan-i-khas, "Paradise on Earth"**.

Jama Masjid

It was built by Shah Jahan at Delhi in white marble. It is considered to be one of largest mosques in the world.

The Taj Mahal

The Taj Mahal is the most famous building of Shah Jahan. It



Taj Mahal

was built at Agra on the banks of river Yamuna, in memory of his beloved wife **Mumtaz**. The Taj Mahal has been considered as one of the seven wonders of the world and a dream in marble. It was built by Ustad Isa, the chief architect of that time. The estimated cost was about ₹20 lakhs and took nearly 22 years to

complete it. He also built **Moti Masjid** or "Pearl Mosque" at Agra and the **Tomb of Jahangir**. He had a grand collection of precious stones. It included the 'Peacock Throne' and the valuable **Kohinoor Diamond**.

The peacock throne is a crowning example of Mughal Jewellery. The Persian invader, Nadir Shah took it away in A.D.1739.

Activity:-

Do you know the place where the Peacock throne is now?

Fine arts like music, painting and literature reached high level of development during the reign of Shah Jahan. He was a great patron of arts and literature.

Shah Jahan fell ill in A.D. 1657. A war of succession broke out among his four sons. Shah Jahan was imprisoned in A.D.1658 and remained in prison till the last days of his life. He passed away in A.D.1666.

ESTIMATE

Undoubtedly, Shahjahan was one of the greatest rulers that India had ever produced. The travellers who had visited India during his period i.e., **Bernier** and **Travernier**, the Frenchmen and **Manucci**, an Italian adventurer had left behind good records about Shahjahan's reign.

AURANGAZEB (A.D.1658-A.D. 1707)

Aurangazeb was the last Great Mughal emperor. He was the third son of ShahJahan. When

ShahJahan fell ill in A.D. 1657, a war of succession started among the four sons of ShahJahan namely, Dara Shukro, Shah Shuja, Aurangazeb and Murad. On hearing about Shahjahan's illness, Aurangazeb who was in Deccan rushed to Delhi. He ascended the throne in A.D. 1658 after killing his three brothers and imprisoning his father. He assumed the title of "Alamgir".



Aurangzeb

Religious Policy

Aurangzeb was a pious, orthodox Sunni Muslim. He regularly read the "**Koran**". He hated not only the non-muslims but also Shia muslims. He reimposed Jizya, a tax on the non-muslims and pilgrimage tax. He took away all the Hindus from the state service. As a result he had to face the revolts of Rajputs, Jats, Satnamis, Sikhs and Marathas.

Activity:-

Compare Akbar and Aurangazeb as two extremes in their religious policy.

AURANGAZEB AND THE SIKHS

The Mughal-Sikh relationship became strained after Jahangir.

Guru Tegh Bahadur, the ninth Sikh Guru protested against the anti-Hindu policy of Aurangazeb. Aurangazeb was annoyed and the Guru was summoned to Delhi and compelled to embrace Islam. As the Guru refused to do so, he was tortured and beheaded. This infuriated the Sikhs. **Guru Gobind Singh** who succeeded his father as the tenth Guru, determined to avenge the mughals. He organized the Sikhs into a military brotherhood against the Mughals. The military organization of the Sikhs was called the "Khalsa".

Activity:-

Who was the founder of Sikhism? Identify "5 'K's in "Khalsa"?

AURANGAZEB AND THE MARATHAS

Aurangazeb sent **Shaista Khan**, the Governor of Deccan to suppress Shivaji, the great Maratha leader. Shivaji attacked Shaista Khan with a band of 400 soldiers in his residence at Poona. In this attempt, Shaista Khan escaped but lost one of his fingers. Later Aurangazeb sent Jai Singh against Shivaji and peace was made. Shivaji accepted an invitation to visit the Mughal court but he was not received properly by Aurangazeb. Later on Sivaji was imprisoned. But he escaped from the prison and continued to be a constant enemy to the Mughals.

DECCAN POLICY

Aurangazeb spent about 25 years in the Deccan. On account of

his continued stay in the Deccan, the administration went out of gear. He could see his own empire declining. His endless wars emptied the treasury. Enemies arose on all sides. It was the "**Deccan ulcer**" that ruined Aurangazeb. He died in A.D.1707.

ESTIMATE

Aurangazeb was chiefly responsible for the disintegration of the Mughal empire. His strict religious policy, long stay in the Deccan, vastness of his empire and his suspicious nature not only ruined himself but also paved the way for the downfall of the mighty Mughal empire. Aurangazeb was a successful Musalman, but as a king, he thoroughly failed.

MUGHAL ADMINISTRATION

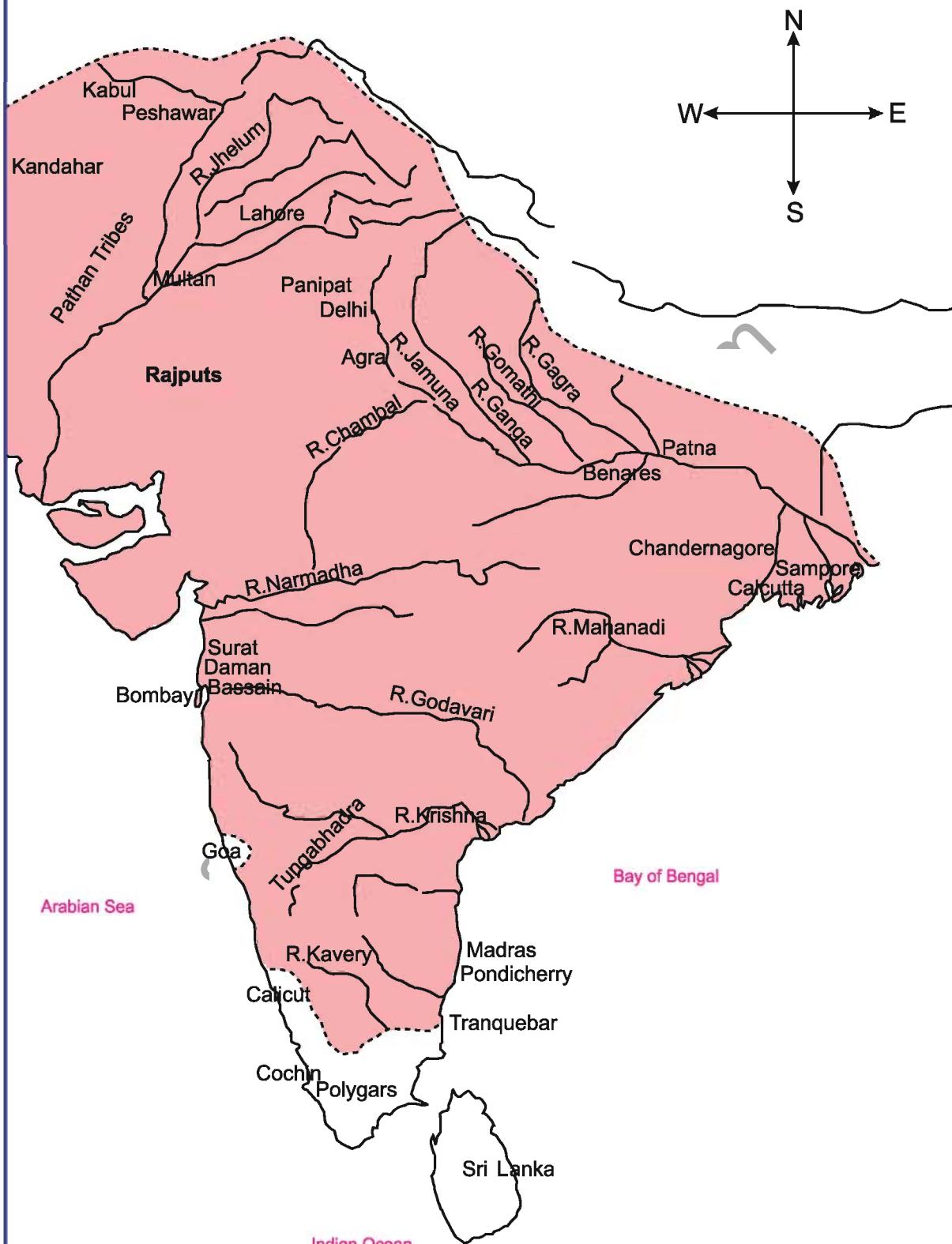
Central Administration

The Mughal administrative system was in the nature of a military rule and was a centralized despotism. The Emperor (or) Badshah had all the powers in his hands. He was an absolute ruler. He was regarded as the "**shadow of God on Earth**". He was assisted by a council of ministers. The most important among them was the Wazir (or) the Prime Minister.

Provincial Administration

For the administrative convenience the empire was divided into a number provinces known as "**Subas**". Each Suba was under a Subedar (or) Governor. During the Akbar's time, there were 15 Subas. The Subedar was incharge of the

Empire of Aurangzeb



Subas. The Subas were further divided into Sarkars and Sarkar into "Parganas. Village was the lowest unit of provincial administration.

Revenue Administration

The main source of income of the state was land revenue. Raja Todar Mal, the famous Revenue Minister helped Akbar in this field. He had already worked under Shershah. Akbar made improvements on Shershah's land revenue system. Mainly due to this Shershah had been called as the "Forerunner of Akbar. Akbar introduced "Zabti" system. All the lands were measured with an uniform standard of measurement. On the basis of the fertility of the soil and the yield of the crops, lands were classified into three categories. One third of the average yield was fixed as the land tax. It could be paid either in cash or in kind. In times of famine or floods, tax remissions were given. The officers were instructed to be kind with the peasants.

Military Administration

The Mughal army was consisted of infantry, artillery, cavalry and elephantry. Cavalry was an important branch of the army. Akbar introduced a new system called "Mansabdari system" "Mansab" means "rank" or "place". Each mansab was valued on the basis of the number of horsemen they had. There was a grade of Mansabdars. It ranged from 10 to 10,000 mansab. Besides horses, they were to maintain foot soldiers also. The

mansabdars were to help the emperor in times of war. In return for their help they were given fixed salary.

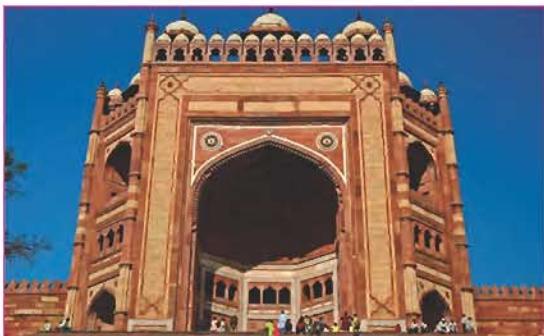
Judicial Administation

The king was the fountainhead of justice. He was assisted by the Chief Qazi. Cases were tried according to Quranic Law. Punishments were severe. Mutilation was an ordinary punishment.

Causes for the downfall of the Mughal Empire

Aurangazeb's religious policy was the most important cause for the downfall of the Mughal Empire. His ill-treatment of the Hindus, the Rajputs and the Sikhs made them deadly enemies of the Mughals. As the Mughal Empire became vast, it was very difficult for the Mughal rulers to control the distant parts of the empire. So revolts broke out in many parts. The successors of Aurangazeb were very weak. They could not check the disintegration of the empire. The absence of the law of primogeniture was another cause for the downfall of the empire. After the death of each mughal emperor, there was a war of succession among his sons and it paved the way for their own downfall. There was deterioration and demoralization in the Mughal army.

The soldiers cared more about their personal benefits than winning the battles. The Marathas emerged powerful under the dynamic

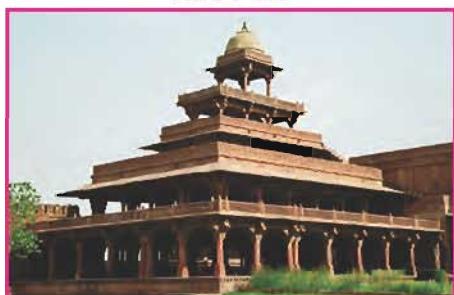


Fatehpur sikri - Buland Darwaza

leadership of Shivaji and proved to be deadly enemies of the Mughals. The coming of the Europeans also paved the way for the deterioration of the Mughal empire. Last, but not the least, the invasions of Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali gave a serious blow to the already tottering Mughal Empire.



Red Fort



Fatehpur sikri - Panch mahal

The mighty Mughal dynasty founded by Babur, consolidated by Akbar began to disintegrate even during the reign of Aurangazeb. Thus the Mughal Dynasty came to an end.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The first Battle of Panipat was fought in A.D _____.
a) 1536 b) 1526 c) 1506
2. Sher Shah has been called the Forerunner of _____.
a) Akbar b) Humayun c) Shah Jahan
3. _____ set up a "Chain of Justice"
a) Aurangazeb b) Jahangir c) Babur
4. Guru Arjun Dev was the _____ Sikh guru
a) Fifth b) ninth c) tenth

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. Humayun means _____.
2. In the Second Battle of Panipat, Akbar defeated _____.
3. The reign of _____ has been called an the "Golden Age of the Mughals"
4. Tansen lived in the court of _____.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------|
| 1. Rana Sanga | 1582 |
| 2. Din-I-Ilahi | Revenue system |
| 3. Second Battle of Panipat | Ruler of Mewar |
| 4. Raja Todarmal | 1556 |

IV) Answer in one word.

1. When was the Battle of Kanwah fought?
2. What is Jahangir's autobiography known as?
3. Who was Akbar's guardian?
4. Who was known as the "light of the world"?

V) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. How did Babur establish the Mughal empire in India?
2. Sketch the role of NurJahan in Mughal history.
3. Write a note on the currency reforms of Shershah
4. List any four causes for the downfall of the Mughal Empire in India.

VI) Answer in detail.

1. Whose period is known as the "Golden Age of the Mughals" – why?
2. Give a brief account of the administration of the Mughals.

VII) Activity.

1. Make an album by collecting pictures of art and architecture of the Mughals.

VIII) Map work.

1. On the outline map of India draw the extent of Akbar's Empire and mark the places conquered by him.
2. On the outline map of India, draw the extent of Aurangazeb's empire and mark the places conquered by him.

Formative Assessment

1. Prepare an Album by collecting pictures of Babur to Aurangazeb.
2. Draw a Timeline chart showing Important events of the Mughal period.
3. The Taj Mahal, one of the wonders of the world – discuss.
4. Prepare a rotating disk depicting literary contributions of the Mughals.
5. Anti-reactionary religious policy of Aurangazeb resulted in the downfall of Mughal Empire – Discuss in the class room.

2. RISE OF THE MARATHAS

The Marathas were people who lived in the hilly region of Deccan in and around Maharashtra. The physical features of the Maratha region developed certain special qualities among the people. They worked under the Shia kings of the Deccan. The hill forts and the hillocks provided them excellent protection against their enemies. They developed a peculiar type of Warfare called "**Guerilla Warfare**".

"Guerilla Warfare" means "**Irregular Warfare**", whereby the Marathas used to hide amidst the mountains and suddenly make an attack on enemies.

The Marathas had developed hatred against the Muslims for their atrocities. The spread of the Bhakti Movement created a spirit of oneness among the Marathas. The important leaders of the Bhakti Cult like Tukaram, Ramdass, Eknath and Vaman Pandit taught them about devotion to God and the need to create a strong nation. Under such circumstances, there emerged a strong leader called "**Shivaji**". Under his leadership, the Marathas became strong and resisted the Mughal authority.

SHIVAJI (A.D. 1627-A.D. 1680)

Shivaji was born in A.D.1627 at **Shivneri** hill fort near Poona. His father was Shahji Bhonsle who worked under the Sultan of Bijapur.

His mother was Jija Bai. Later on, Shahji Bhonsle married Tukabai and neglected his first wife Jijabai and Shivaji. Hence he was brought up by his tutor and **Guru Dadaji Khonda Dev**. During his childhood he learned about Puranic legends and stories from the Ramayana and the Mahabharatha through his mother. As a pious lady, his mother did a lot to mould the character of her son. His Guru trained him in horse-riding, warfare and also taught him the art of administration.



Shivaji

Conquests

Shivaji wanted to establish an independent kingdom of his own. He conquered the forts of Purandhar, Raigarh, Torna and Kalyan from the Sultan of Bijapur in A.D.1646.

Shivaji and Bijapur Sultan

To subdue Shivaji, the Sultan of Bijapur deputed **Afzal Khan** to bring

Shivaji, ("Mountain-Rat") dead or alive in A.D.1659. When Shivaji came to know about Afzal Khan's treacherous plan he made his own preparations to meet him. At the appointed place, Afzal Khan met and embraced Shivaji and tightened his grip. With his right hand, he tried to kill Shivaji but the Maratha chief tore Afzal Khan's bowels open with the help of the "Tiger Claws" (Baghnakh). Afzal Khan cried out in agony and fell down. This event led to an increase in the power and prestige of Shivaji.

Shivaji and Mughals

In A.D.1660 Aurangazeb sent Sayistakhan, the Governor of Deccan to check the activities of Shivaji. Sayistakhan camped at Poona. At night, Shivaji entered the house in the guise of a marriage party and attacked Sayistakhan, who was asleep. Sayistakhan lost his thumb.

Aurangazeb again sent Raja Jai Singh to deal with Shivaji. Shivaji was surrounded on all sides. Finding himself helpless, Shivaji agreed to come to terms with Jai Singh. In A.D.1665, **Treaty of Purandhar** was signed between them. Jai Singh persuaded Shivaji to meet Aurangazeb in his court. When Shivaji and his son Sambaji reached Agra in A.D.1666, they were not treated properly. Shivaji was upset and when he opposed it, he was imprisoned by Aurangzeb. But Shivaji pretended to be ill and escaped from prison by hiding in a large basket filled with apples. Aurangazeb called

Shivaji a "Mountain-Rat". After the great escape Shivaji became the bitter enemy of Aurangzeb.

In A.D.1674, Shivaji got himself coronated at Raigarh and assumed the title of "Chatrapati". A new Maratha Empire came into existence. The coronation ceremony cost the Royal treasury dearly. Due to the financial crisis, he was compelled to invade the Carnatic region. He captured Jinji, Vellore and many other important forts. His kingdom included a large part of Mysore, Konkan and Maharashtra. Unfortunately, he did not live long. His reign lasted only for six years. He died in A.D.1680 at Raigarh.

Administration of Shivaji

Shivaji was a great administrator. He always had the welfare of his people in his mind. He had a council of eight ministers called "Ashtapradhan" to assist him in administration.

In whose court were the "Ashtadiggajas"? "Navarathnas"?

1. Peshwa : Prime Minister
2. Mantri : Chronicler
3. Sachiv : Home Secretary
4. Sumant : Foreign Secretary
5. Senapathi : Commander-in-chief
6. Amatya : Finance Minister
7. Pandit Rao : Ecclesiastical Head
8. Nyayadhish : Chief Justice

Each minister was in charge of a department. The kingdom was divided into several provinces. They were further divided into Parganas

and villages. The territory under Shivaji was known as "Swarajya".

Revenue Administration

Shivaji abolished the Zamindari system. He had direct contact with the ryots (cultivators). The land was assessed after a careful survey. 2/5 of the produce was fixed as the share of the state. It would be paid either in cash or in kind. Loans were provided to the farmers in times of famine. His land revenue system resembled the system followed by Raja Todar Mal under Akbar. The state also collected custom duties and professional taxes. The two other important taxes collected during his time were **Chauth** and **Sardeshmuki**.

Activity:-

List some taxes that we pay to our Government.

Judicial Administration

Justice was administered according to Hindu Laws. Panchayats settled the disputes in the villages. Patel, an officer equal to the present day Tahsildar, enquired the criminal cases. All civil and criminal appeal cases were enquired by **'Nyayadhish**, who was a member of Ashtapradhan.

Military Administration

Shivaji was a great warrior and a military genius. He maintained a standing army with great discipline. His army consisted of infantry, cavalry, artillery, elephantry, camel corps and even a navy. The cavalry was the most important force. Forts

played a very important role and they were considered as "**Mother**". Soldiers were paid regularly in cash and even after their death, their families were taken care of. Women were not permitted in the military camps. Standing corps were not destroyed. Soldiers were given strict orders not to kill or torture women, children and the aged.

Estimate

Shivaji was a born leader. Though an illiterate, he understood the complicated problems of the state and tackled them diplomatically. His greatness lies in creating a strong nation for the Marathas. He continued to be a formidable foe to the Mughals who were scared of his diplomatic moves. Shivaji took the glory of the Maratha kingdom to its zenith with his firm determination.

Successors of Shivaji

After the death of Shivaji, his eldest son Sambhaji ascended the throne. He was not as efficient as his father. Aurangazeb arrested Sambhaji and his son Sahu after capturing Bijapur and Golconda. Sambhaji was put to death. **Rajaram**, another son of Shivaji became the Chatrapathi. When he died in A.D.1700, his wife **Tara Bai** began to rule the empire on behalf of her minor son **Shivaji-II**. After Aurangazeb's death, Bahadur Shah I became the emperor. He released Sahu. A civil war broke out between Sahu and TaraBai. Tara Bai was defeated and Sahu became the Maratha king in A.D.1708. His

success was mainly due to Balaji Viswanath, whom he appointed as the "Peshwa" or "Prime Minister". As the successors of Shivaji were weak, the Peshwas became the actual rulers of the Maratha Empire, and proved to be efficient administrators.

Peshwas

The Prime Minister of the Maratha Empire was called the "Peshwa". Their rule started from A.D.1713.

Peshwa Balaji Viswanath (1713 A.D-1720 A.D.)

He became the first Peshwa under the Maratha emperor Sahu. He was called as the founder of the Peshwa rule. He made Peshwaship hereditary. He appointed the feudal chiefs to collect the taxes like Chauth and Sardeshmuki. He revived the greatness of the Marathas. He died in 1720 A.D.

Peshwa Baji Rao (1720 A.D-1740 A.D)

After the death of Balaji Viswanath, his son Baji Rao became the Peshwa. On account of his great ability, he was generally regarded as the "greatest of the Peshwas". He wanted to expand the Maratha power in the north and followed a "Forward Policy". He compelled the Nizam of Hyderabad to sign a peace treaty. He captured Bassein from the Portuguese and captured Thana and Salsette. He died in 1740 A.D. The Maratha empire became powerful in India during his period.

Peshwa Balaji Baji Rao (1740 A.D-1761 A.D.)

He was the 3rd Peshwa. He had the able guidance of his cousin Sadasiva Rao and the Maratha power attained its zenith in 1758 A.D. The Marathas occupied Punjab and the Maratha flag was unfurled over the fort of Attock. In 1761 A.D. the Maratha power reached its climax but they received a severe blow at the hands of Ahmad Shah Abdali.

The Third Battle of Panipat (A.D. 1761)

The conquest and occupation of Punjab by the Marathas had brought them into conflict with Ahmad Shah Abdali, the king of Afghanistan. He made huge preparations to invade India with the help of Nazib-ud-daulah of Rohilkhand and Shuja-ud-daulah of Oudh. He met the Maratha forces led by Sadasiva Rao at the historic plains of Panipat in 1761 A.D. It was called third battle of panipat. sadasiva Rao over estimated his artillery strength. Abdali was able to cut off the line of communication of the Marathas. Initially, the Marathas had an upper hand but ultimately they were defeated at the end. This battle decided the fate of Marathas. It lowered their prestige and paved the way for the rise of the British.

Causes for the defeat of the Marathas

Maratha's policy of aggression and plunder brought their downfall. The Marathas lost the sympathies of their own religionists, Rajputs, Jats

and Sikhs. Ahmad Shah Abdali's army was more trained and disciplined than the Maratha army. The Marathas failed to get their regular supplies. The Maratha leaders after Baji Rao were no match to Ahmad Shah Abdali.

After the third battle of Panipat, the Maratha empire continued to be ruled by inefficient Peshwas. This led to the disintegration of the Maratha empire and paved the way for their downfall in the history of India.

Invasion of Nadir Shah (A.D.1739)

Nadir Shah was one of the greatest warriors of Persia. He was a mere shepherd who rose into prominence because of his abilities. In A.D.1739, he invaded India for many reasons.

He wanted to plunder the immense wealth of India. He also wanted to earn name and fame by conquering the distant territories. He came to know that India was ruled by a weak and incompetent ruler, Muhammad Shah.

Events

He had sent an envoy to Muhammad Shah requesting him not to provide shelter to the Afghans fleeing from Khandhar and Ghazni. As Muhammad Shah did not reply, Nadir Shah invaded India in A.D.1739. After capturing Peshawar, he faced the Mughal army at Karnal. The Mughal emperor was defeated and Nadir Shah marched towards Delhi to receive the huge war indemnity of

20 crore of rupees as promised by the Mughal emperor. He stayed for 15 days at Delhi and plundered it. Thousands of residents of Delhi were killed. He did not spare the Mughal emperor and deprived him of the famous Kohi-noor Diamond and the Peacock Throne. After two months, Nadir Shah returned to his country with huge booty. However he was killed by his own soldiers in A.D.1747.

Results

The invasion of Nadir Shah gave a death blow to the Mughal empire and hastened its downfall. It exposed the weakness of the Mughal empire to the world. The weakness of Mughals lead to the rise of many powers like the Marathas, Jats, Sikhs, Rohillas etc. India was deprived of much of its wealth. In short, the invasion of Nadir Shah left the country quite "prostrate and bleeding".

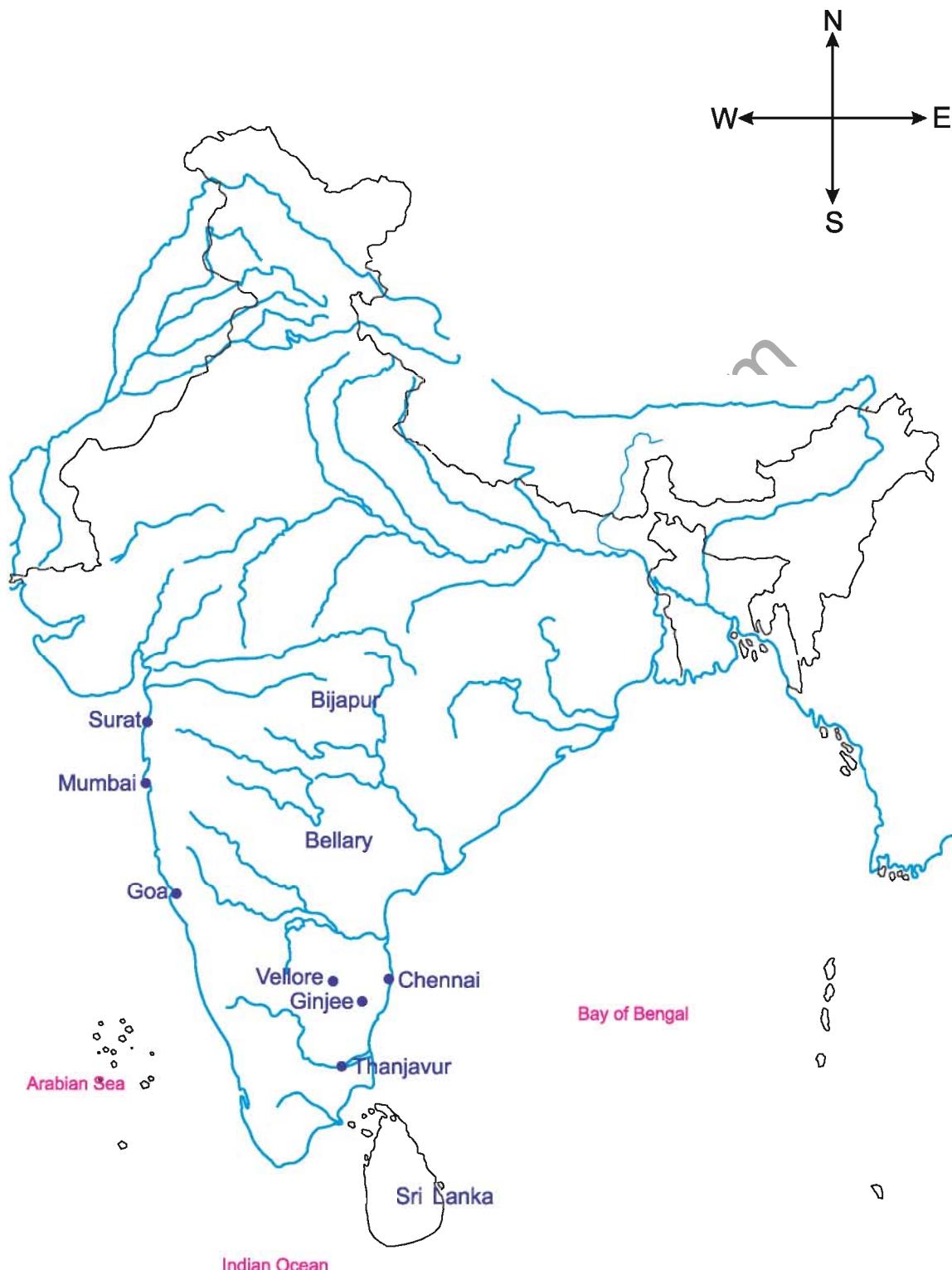
Invasion of Ahmad Shah Abdali (A.D.1761)

Ahmad Shah Abdali was the head of the Abdali tribe of the Afghans. He was made as the general by Nadirshah. On the demise of Nadirshah, Abdali became the ruler of Afghanistan. He invaded India many times from A.D. 1748 to A.D. 1767.

Causes

Like Nadirshah, Abdali too wanted to plunder the abundant wealth of India. He also wanted to earn a name and fame for himself through his invasions.

Maratha's Empire



Events

Before facing the Marathas in the Third Battle of Panipat in A.D.1761, Abdali had invaded India for four times. After conquering, Punjab, he reached Delhi and plundered the city.

He had looted Mathura, Agra and several other places. In the Third Battle of Panipat in A.D.1761, he came out successful against the Marathas and shattered their power. In 1767 he invaded Punjab, against the Sikhs. But he could not proceed too far and returned to Afghanistan.

Results

The invasion of Ahmad Shah Abdali gave a severe death blow to the Maratha empire. The wealth of India was plundered and thousands of people were killed. Due to Abdali's invasion, confusion prevailed in Punjab, which provided a golden opportunity to the Sikhs to establish their power. Ahmad Shah Abdali gave a crushing blow both to the Maratha and the Mughal emperors. It cleared the way for the British to establish their sovereignty in India.

EXERCISE**I) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Shivaji's tutor was _____.
a) Dadaji Khonda dev b) Shahji Bhonsle c) Baji Rao
2. Shivaji had a council of _____ ministers called "Ashtapradhan".
a) seven b) eight c) nine
3. The first Peshwa was _____.
a) Balaji Viswanath b) Balaji Baji Rao c) Baji Rao
4. Treaty of Purandhar was signed between _____ and Shivaji.
a) Raja Jaisingh b) Afzal khan c) Shaistakhan

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. The Marathas adopted _____ warfare.
2. The Sultan of Bijapur sent _____ to subdue Shivaji.
3. The Prime Minister of the Maratha Empire was called _____.
4. After Aurangazeb's death _____ became the Mughal Emperor.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Baji Rao | Persia |
| 2. Nadir Shah | Ashtapradhan |
| 3. Nyayadhish | king of Afghanistan |
| 4. Ahmad Shah Abdali | Forward policy |

IV) Answer in a word.

1. When was the third Battle of Panipat fought?
2. In which year did Nadir Shah invade India?
3. When was the treaty of Purandhar signed?
4. Who was known as "Mountain – Rat?"

V) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. Explain briefly the conflict between Shivaji and Afzal Khan.
2. How did Shivaji attack Shaista Khan?
3. What were the causes for the defeat of the Marathas in the third battle of Panipat?
4. Write a note on the invasion of Nadir Shah

VI) Answer in detail.

1. Explain why Shivaji was such a powerful ruler of the Marathas.
2. Describe the factors that led to the downfall of the Maratha Empire under the Peshwas.

Formative Assessment

1. Divide the class into groups and enact scenes from the life of Shivaji from his birth to his death.
2. Find out more about Guerilla warfare and discuss about other countries those have adopted these tactics.
3. Draw a time line to show the important events of the Maratha regime.

3. ADVENT OF THE EUROPEANS

India had commercial contact with European countries from time immemorial. With the arrival of Alexander the Great these relations became still more intimate. There was a great demand for Indian goods like silk, spices, muslin and handloom fabrics in Europe. India exported pepper, cloves, chillies, cinnamon, ginger, coconut, cane-sugar, indigo etc to western countries through three major trade routes.

The three important trade routes were,

1. Through Afghanistan, Central Asia and the Caspian Sea and terminating at the Black Sea Coast.
2. Through Persia and Syria leading to the port of Alexandria on the Mediterranean coast of Europe.
3. The Sea route passing through the Arabian sea, Persian Gulf and the Red Sea.

But in 1453 A.D. the Ottoman Turks captured Constantinople and troubled the European merchants by blocking the land route which passes through Afghanistan. The other two routes were also closed as a result of the Arab conquest in the 8th century A.D. So the Europeans were forced to discover a new sea route to India.

The Portuguese

The Portuguese were the first to discover a new sea route to India. Prince Henry of Portugal started a school for training seamen on

scientific navigation. Due to his interest and enthusiasm in the field of Navigation, he has been called "Henry, the Navigator".

Bartholomeu Diaz

He was the first sailor from Portugal who set out on his voyage in 1487 A.D. He came upto the southernmost tip of Africa. As there was a storm when he reached there he named it the **Cape of Storms**. Later on, the Portuguese King renamed it, **The Cape of Good Hope** with a definite hope of discovering a sea route.

Vascodagama

On 27th May 1498, a Portuguese sailor, **Vasco-da-Gama** crossed the Cape of Good Hope and reached Calicut in India. He was given a warm reception by the Hindu ruler king **Zamorin** of Calicut. In 1501 he came to India for the second time and set up a factory at Cannanore. Thus the Portuguese established their factories at Calicut, Cochin and Cannanore, on the West Coast of India.

Francisco-de-Almeida (1505- 1509 A.D.)

Francisco-De-Almeida was the first viceroy of the Portuguese possessions in India. During his period the Portuguese defeated the Arab traders. His policy was to increase the Portuguese naval power so that they might become the masters of the Indian Ocean. This policy of controlling the other countries settlement by naval

force was known as the "Blue Water Policy". In 1509 Almeida was defeated and killed by the Egyptians.

Alfonso-De-Albuquerque (1509-1515 A.D.)

Albuquerque was the second viceroy of the Portuguese in India. He was a great conqueror. He captured Goa from the Sultan of Bijapur in 1510 and made it the capital. He also strengthened his relationship with the Vijayanagar Empire. In 1511, he captured Malacca in the Far East and in 1515 he built the port of Ormuz in the Persian Gulf. He can be rightly called the Real Founder of Portuguese Power in India. He was a good administrator. He treated the Hindus well and opened schools for their education. The Muslims became an enemy of the Portuguese because of their religious policy. He encouraged marriages between the Portuguese and the Indian women. He died at Goa in 1515. After the death of Albuquerque, the Portuguese conquered Diu, Daman, Bombay, Ceylon, Salsette, Bassein and Hughli. After about a century the Portuguese power declined.

Causes for the decline of the Portuguese power in India.

Albuquerque's successors were weak. They could not strengthen the Portuguese hold over India. The Portuguese indulged in piracy against the Indian merchants. The Portuguese often forcibly converted the natives to Christianity. They also destroyed some temples in India.

Their religious policy created enmity of the Muslims. The Portuguese maintained a good relationship only with Vijayanagar kingdom. Therefore the fall of Vijayanagar kingdom in the battle of **Talikotta 1565 A.D.** was a great blow to the Portuguese. In 1580, Portugal came under the rule of Spain. The arrival of the Dutch and the English weakened the Portuguese power in India.

The Dutch

After the decline of the Portuguese power, the Dutch arrived India. The Dutch people of Holland founded the Dutch East India Company in 1602 and began to trade with Eastern countries. They concentrated on East Asia called "**Spice Islands**". The Dutch company established its trading centres at Chinsura, Nagapattinam, Surat and Masulipatnam. They founded Pulicat near Madras in 1610 and built a fort there. They also established trading centres at Surat, Broach, Cambay, Ahmedabad, Patna and Kazimbazaar.

Meanwhile the English also sent their merchants to do the spice trade but the Dutch did not like the British interference over there. They made a plan against the English merchants and killed many of the English merchants at Amboyna in 1623 A.D. which came to be known as **Amboyna Massacre**. This incident created enmity between the English and the Dutch. Then the English left the Spice Islands and

concentrated their trade in India.

In India, the English had grown very powerful and the Dutch were no match for them. In 1759 the English captured Chinsura from the Dutch and a little later they also captured Nagapattinam. Thus the Dutch power in India came to an end.

The British

In 1588, the English defeated the Spanish Armada and consequently became the most important naval power of Europe. Then they thought of establishing colonies in the Eastern countries. So the English East India Company was started by 100 London merchants who received permission from Queen Elizabeth-I on December 31st 1600 to carry on trade with the East. In 1608, King James I of England sent Captain William Hawkins to the court of the Mughal Emperor Jahangir to obtain permission to establish a factory at Surat. However permission was not given as the Emperor was influenced by the Portuguese. In 1615, Sir Thomas Roe arrived at the court of Jahangir and succeeded in getting permission to set up their trading centres at Agra, Broach and Ahmedabad. In 1639, Francis Day, bought a piece of land from the Raja of Chandragiri and laid foundation for modern Madras for a small rent. In 1640 the English built Fort St. George to protect their trade.

Charles II, the king of England married Catherine the daughter of the king of Portugal. He got Bombay, a small village as a part of dowry. In

1668 Charles II gave Bombay on lease to the English East India Company at a nominal rent of £ 10. In 1699 they got permission from Aurangazeb and set up a factory at Calcutta. Later they built a fort and named it Fort William after King William III.

Then they established factories at Hariharpur, Balasore, Hughli and Kazimbazaar. The British settlements soon developed into centres of commercial activities. Thus the English East India Company expanded its influence and control over India till 1858, when the administration of India was taken over by the British Crown from the East India Company.

The Danish

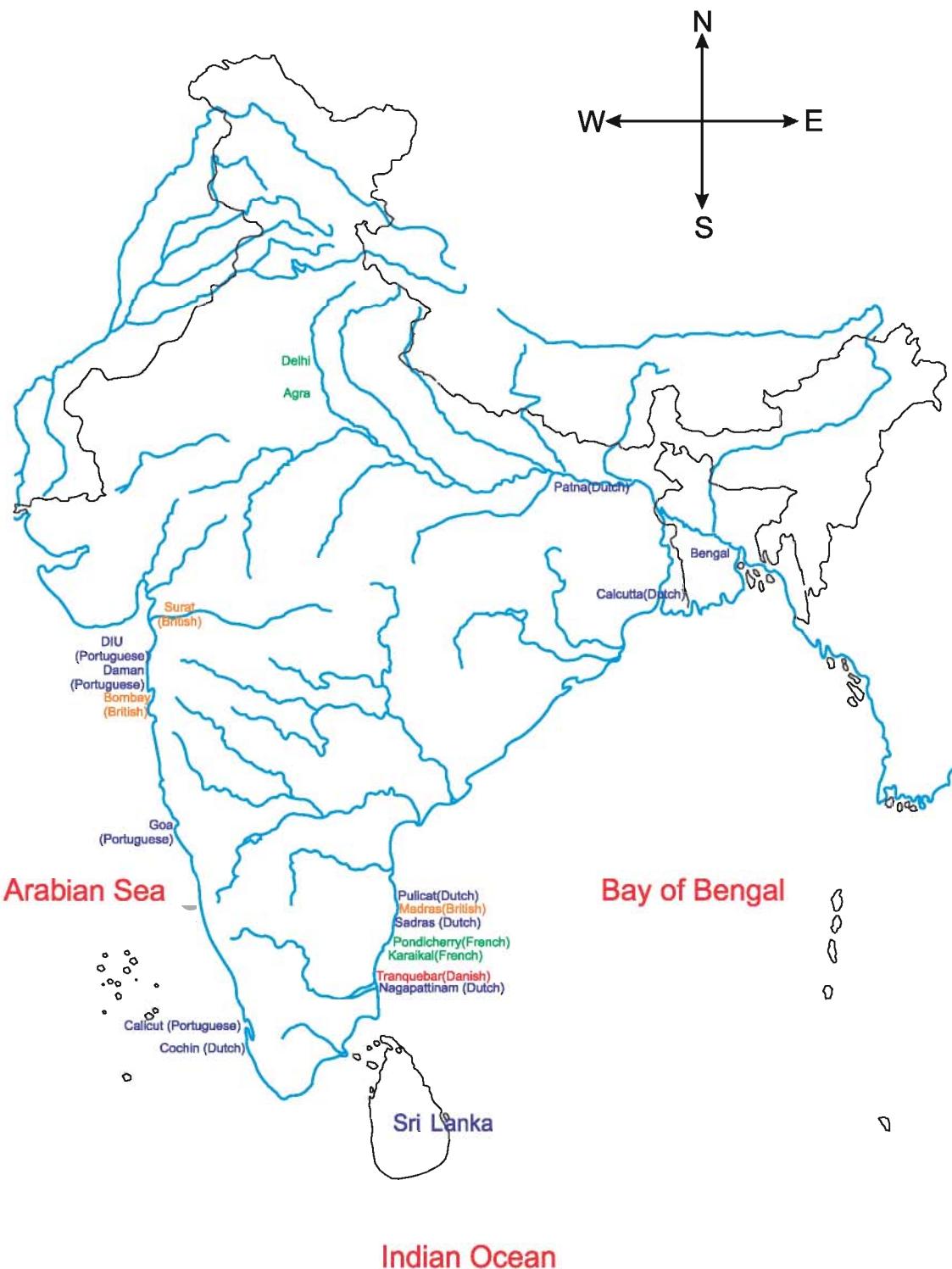
The people of Denmark were known as Danish. They began to trade with India. In 1620 they established their trading centre at Tranquebar and in 1676 at Serampore in Bengal. But they never concentrated on India and sold their trading centres to the British and left India.

The French

Like other European countries, France too realized the importance of trading with India. The French East India Company was established in 1664 by Colbert, a minister of Louis XIV, the king of France. They set up their factories at Surat in 1668 and Masulipatnam in 1669. In 1674 they got a place to the south of Madras from the ruler of Tanjore and laid the foundation of

European Settlements in India

The Portuguese, the Dutch, the British, the Danish and the French



Pondicherry, which became the headquarters of the French settlements in India. In 1690 they established their settlement at Chandranagore. They got Mahe in 1725 and Karaikal in 1739. Dupleix came to India 1742 as the Governor of the French possessions. Under him the French increased their influence all around.

Under such circumstances there was bound to be a conflict between the French and the English to establish supremacy in India. The clash of trade interests between the two ultimately led to a series of wars called the Carnatic Wars. Finally the English came out successful and established their power in India by sending the French out of India.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The great trading centre _____ was captured by Ottoman Turks in 1453 A.D.
a) Afghanistan b) Constantinople c) Baluchistan
2. _____ was the first Viceroy of Portuguese possessions in India
a) Francisco-de-Almedia b) Alfonso-de-Albuquerque
c) Barthalomeo Diaz
3. The English East India Company was started in _____.
a) 1600 A.D. b) 1644 A.D. c) 1664 A.D.
4. _____ became the headquarters of the French settlements in India.
a) Chandranagore b) Pondicherry c) Mahe

II) Fill in the Blanks.

1. The Portuguese captured Goa from the Sultan of _____.
2. Captain William Hawkins visited the court of the Mughal emperor _____.
3. Sir Thomas Roe arrived India in _____.
4. _____ came to India in 1742 as the Governor of the French possessions.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Vasco-da-Gama | England |
| 2. Mahe | French settlement |
| 3. Spice Islands | Portuguese Sailor |
| 4. King James I | East Indies |

IV) Answer the following in a word.

1. When was the French East India Company formed?
2. Who was Francis Day?
3. In which city is Fort St. George located?
4. In which continent is the Cape of Good Hope located?

V) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. Write any three causes for the decline of the Portuguese power in India.
2. How did the English East India Company acquire Bombay?
3. What were the trading centres of the French East India Company in India.
4. Write a note on Albuquerque.

VI) Answer in detail.

1. Give an account of the English East India Company in India.
2. Write about the establishment of trading centres by the Dutch and the French in India.

VII) Activity.

1. On the Rivers map of India mark the places occupied by the Portuguese, Dutch, the English, the Danish and the French
2. Make a visit to Fort St. George

Formative Assessment

1. On an outline map of the world
 - a) Mark the countries that established trade relations with India in the 17th and 18th centuries.
 - b) Trace the routes of the important European travellers.
2. Collect pictures and write notes on 5 important forts established by the British in India.

4. ANGLO - FRENCH STRUGGLE (CARNATIC WARS)

The English and the French East India companies were established with the motive of trading with India. In course of time their competition turned into rivalry and both the powers tried to remove the other from the Indian scene. Their trade interest was also diverted towards politics. Making use of the situation and the rivalry among the native rulers, the English and the French tried to capture power in India and to establish their supremacy.

Between 1740-1763 the rivalry between the English and French led to three wars in India. These wars were known as **Carnatic Wars** as they were fought in the Carnatic region. Carnatic was originally a Mughal Province under the Nawab. It was ruled by **Anwar-ud-din**, the Nawab of Carnatic. The Nawab ruled the territory as an independent ruler. Arcot was the capital of Carnatic.

The British and the French exploited the region to strengthen their power. In the end, the British drove the French out of India by 1763 and established their supremacy over the Carnatic region.

The First Carnatic War (AD.1746-AD.1748)

Causes

This war was an echo of the Austrian war of succession. In this First Carnatic war, the English and the French took opposite sides. They began to fight in India in 1746.

Dupleix, the French Governor of Pondicherry had an ambition to establish French power in India.

Course

Dupleix wanted to make the French Power supreme in South India. When the war started in Europe, Dupleix sent an appeal to **La Bourdonnais**, the Governor of Mauritius to capture Madras. He besieged Madras and captured it in 1746.

The Nawab of Carnatic, Anwaruddin did not like this. So he sent an army against the French. At **Santhome on the banks of the river Adayar**, Anwaruddin's army was defeated.

Then Dupleix tried to capture Fort St. David from the English but failed. Later the English attacked Pondicherry but the French successfully defended the city. In 1748 the war of Austrian Succession came to an end in Europe. So the Carnatic war also came to an end in India.

Results

The First Carnatic war came to an end by the treaty of **Aix-la-Chappelle** (1748) As a result the English got back Madras.

The Second Carnatic War (A.D.1748-A.D.1754)

Causes

The second Carnatic war was connected with the succession disputes between the Nizam of

Hyderabad and the Nawab of Carnatic.

The Nizam of Hyderabad, Asaf Shah died in 1748. There arose a competition between his son Nasir Jung and his grandson Muzzafar Jung. At the same time the Nawab of Carnatic, Dost Ali died. There was a dispute between Anwar-ud-din and his son-in-law Chanda Sahib for the throne of Arcot. The French supported Muzzafur Jung and Chanda Sahib. Hence Nasir Jung and Anwarud-din were forced to seek the assistance of the English. So a war broke out in 1748.

Course

With the help of the French, Muzaffar Jung and Chanda Sahib defeated and killed Anwar-ud-din at the battle of Ambut in 1749. But his son Mohammad Ali took refuge in the fort of Trichirappalli. Chanda Sahib became the Nawab of Carnatic. In Hyderabad, both Nasir Jung and Muzaffar Jung were killed. General Bussy, the French Governor made Salabat Jung the Nizam of Hyderabad. In return for the French help, he handed over the Northern Circars to the French.

The condition of the English became very critical. Robert Clive a clerk in the English East India Company changed the course of the war. He attacked Arcot, the Capital of Carnatic. He defeated Chanda Sahib and made Mohammed Ali, the Nawab of Arcot. Clive was called as the "Hero of Arcot". Dupleix was

recalled in 1754 and was succeeded by Godeheu.

Results

The Second Carnatic war came to an end with the Treaty of Pondicherry in 1755. By this treaty both the sides agreed not to interfere in the internal affairs of the Indian princely states and returned each others territories captured during the war. Mohammad Ali was acknowledged as the Nawab of Carnatic.

The Third Carnatic War

(AD 1756-AD 1763)

Causes

In 1756 the Seven Years war broke out in Europe and the same war echoed in India as the Third Carnatic war.

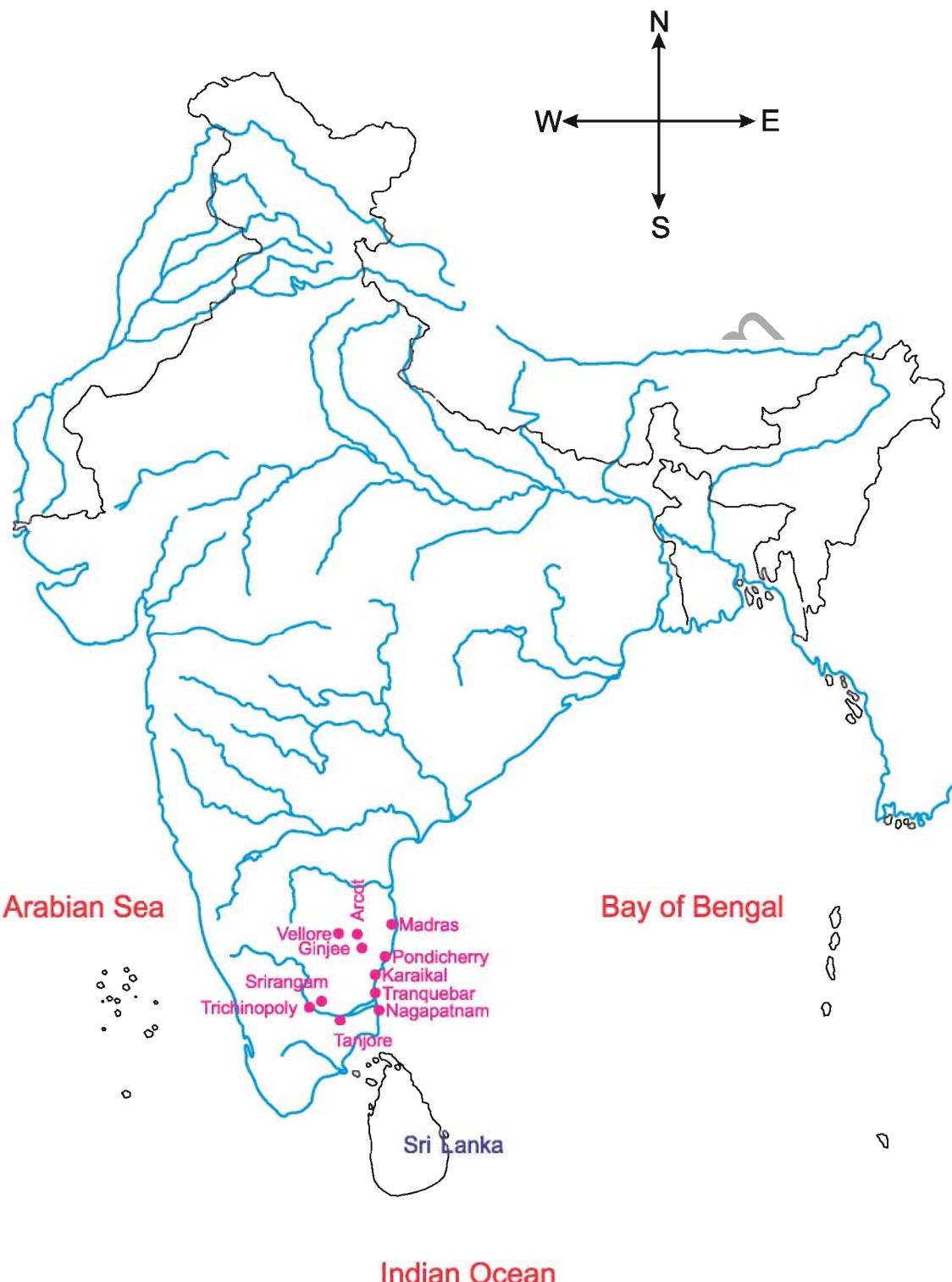
Course

The French General Count de Lally captured Fort St. David. Bussy the French General at Hyderabad was asked to attack Madras which was a great blunder committed by the French. When Bussy left Hyderabad the British captured Hyderabad. Count de Lally and Bussy together attacked Madras. But the British general, Sir Eyre Coote defeated both the French generals at the battle of Wandiwash in 1760. In the next year 1761 Count-de-Lally surrendered Pondicherry to the British.

Results

The war came to an end with the Treaty of Paris in 1763. Pondicherry, Karaikal, Chandranagore and Mahe were returned to the French but

Carnatic Wars



they were not allowed to fortify them. The French lost all their prestige and influence in India. British became more powerful in India.

Causes for the Success of the British

Britain was commercially superior and the British in India were supported by the Home Government. The naval power of the British was far superior to that of the French. There was full co-operation among the English Officers. The mistakes committed by Count-de-Lally enabled the British to capture Madras. The British could concentrate on wars as there was peace in England while the French were too busy fighting wars in Europe.

Establishment of British Supremacy over Bengal

Bengal a very rich province of the Mughal Empire developed into an independent kingdom under Alivardi Khan. After his death, his grandson Siraj-ud-daulah became the Nawab of Bengal. The Battle of Plassey was a result of a quarrel that arose between Siraj-ud-daulah and the British in 1757.

Battle of Plassey (AD 1757)

Causes

The English and the French were strengthening their fortification in Bengal. Siraj-ud-daulah, Nawab of Bengal asked them not to fortify their Forts. The French obeyed but the English refused to do so. More over the British were misusing

their trade privileges. It enraged the Nawab. Siraj-ud-daulah marched with his army and captured Calcutta.

One hundred and forty six British soldiers were taken as captives and they were locked up in a very small room. Most of them died due to suffocation. Only twenty three of them were survived. This incident in history is called as the **Black Hole Tragedy**. On hearing about this tragedy, Admiral Watson and Robert Clive were sent to Bengal. They recaptured Calcutta.

Course

On 23rd June 1757 Siraj-ud-daulah met Robert Clive in a village called Plassey near Calcutta. Within a few hours, the Nawab was defeated and killed. The British appointed Mir Jafar as the Nawab of Bengal.

Battle of Buxar

After few years Mir Jafar was removed and Mir Qasim was made the Nawab of Bengal. A misunderstanding developed between Mir Qasim and the British. Mir Qasim was also removed, so he entered into an alliance with Shuja-ud-daulah the Nawab of Oudh and Shah Alam II the Mughal Emperor against the British and invaded Bengal. A battle between the combined army of Indian rulers and the British took place at **Buxar on October 22, 1764**. In this battle, Mir Qasim and others were defeated. Mir Qasim fled from the battlefield while Shuja-II surrendered to the British.

Results

The **Treaty of Allahabad** was signed in 1765 between the English on one side and Shah Alam-II and Shuja-Ud-Daulah on the other side. Shuja-ud-Daulah was asked to pay a war indemnity of 50 lakhs to the British and also gave Kara and Allahabad to the British. The Mughal Emperor was given an annual pension of rupees 26 lakhs. Shah Alam II granted the Diwani rights of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa to the English. Bengal, Bihar, Orissa and Carnatic practically came under the control of the British. The Battle of Buxar made the English East India Company a sovereign power in India.

After the Battle of Buxar, Robert Clive became the Governor of Bengal in 1765 A.D.

Hyder Ali

Hyder Ali was born in 1722. He was the son of a Faujdar and he started his career as an ordinary soldier. He rose to the position as the chief of the Army due to his hard work. When a Civil War broke out in Mysore, Hyder was in



Hyder Ali

Dindigul. The king of Mysore asked for his help. After arriving at Mysore, he overthrew the king and ascended the throne of Mysore. Though he was illiterate, he was very intelligent. He treated both the Hindus and the Muslims alike. He was known for his impartial Justice.

The First Anglo-Mysore War (A.D.1767-A.D.1769)

Causes

Mysore under Hyder Ali emerged as one of the most powerful kingdoms. Hyder Ali's growing power and his friendly relations with the French became a matter of concern for the English East India Company. This led to the First Anglo-Mysore War.

Course

In 1766, the British, the Marathas and the Nizam formed a coalition against Hyder Ali. But Hyder Ali was very clever and he bribed the Marathas and the Nizam and won over their support. But in 1767 Hyder Ali and the Nizam were defeated at Changma by the British. Hyder Ali captured Ambur and Mangalore and established his rule. Then he captured Baramahal, Karur, Tanjore and Cuddalore. He then besieged Madras which forced the English to sign the Treaty of Madras in 1769.

Results

The **Treaty of Madras** was signed in 1769. Both the sides agreed to restore places. The first Mysore war ended in favour of Hyder Ali.

Robert Clive

Robert Clive became the Governor of Bengal in 1765. During his first tenure as a governor he was known for his conquests and during his second tenure for his administrative reforms.

Administrative Reforms

The servants of the company were forbidden to receive any gift from Indians. They were forbidden to indulge in private trade. He increased the salaries of the company's servants. Robert Clive gave double Bhatta (field allowances) to the officers in times of peace. He set up a Fund known as **Lord Clive's Fund** with a view to help poor servants of the company

and widows of those who died in service. After receiving the Diwani (Civil) and Nizamat (criminal) rights from the Mughal emperor Shah Alam II, Robert Clive introduced a new system called **Dyarchy** or **Dual** or **Double Government**. According to this system, the British enjoyed all powers but no responsibility. The Nawab was reduced to a position of all responsibility and no power.

In this system of Government, neither the Nawab, nor the English cared for the welfare of the people. The Dual Government was finally abolished in 1772. Bengal was brought under the direct rule of the company.

EXERCISE**I) Choose the Correct answer.**

1. The Carnatic Wars were fought in _____.
a) 1736-1744 b) 1740-1744 c) 1746-1763
2. The battle of Plassey was fought in _____.
a) 1764 b) 1757 c) 1765
3. The founder of the British Empire in India was _____.
a) Robert Clive b) Dupleix c) Mir Jafar
4. Count-de-Lally was defeated by Sir Eyre Coote at the battle of _____.
a) Madras b) St.Thomas c) Wandiwash

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. The capital of Carnatic was _____.
2. The Hero of Arcot was _____.
3. The Battle of _____ made the English East India company a sovereign power in India.

4. La Bourdonnais was the French Governor of _____.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. First Carnatic War | Treaty of Allahabad |
| 2. Third Carnatic War | Village near Calcutta |
| 3. Plassey | Aix – la – Chappelle |
| 4. Battle of Buxar | Treaty of Paris |

IV) Answer in one word.

1. Name the treaty which was signed at the end of the First Anglo-Mysore war.
2. Who was made the Nawab of Bengal after the battle of Plassey?
3. When did the battle of Buxar take place?

V) Answer the following questions.

1. What do you know about the Black Hole Tragedy?
2. Write any three causes for the success of the British in India.
3. What do you know about Robert Clive's Dual system of Government?
4. What were the causes for the First Anglo Mysore War?

VI) Answer in Detail.

1. Give an account of the causes, course and the results of the second and third Carnatic Wars.

Formative Assessment

1. On the outline map of India mark the important places of Carnatic wars.
2. Write an essay (about 15 lines) on why you think that The Battle of Plassey was a turning point in the History of India.
3. Prepare a time-line chart to show the establishment of British rule in India.

HISTORY

1. RULE OF THE ENGLISH EAST INDIA COMPANY FROM A.D.1773-A.D.1857

LORD WARREN HASTINGS (A.D1772-AD 1785)

Warren Hastings became the Governor of Bengal in 1772. Later he was raised to the position of Governor General of Bengal. As soon as he assumed office, he had to face many difficulties. In 1772 a terrible famine affected Bengal. The Dual Government had ruined the economy of Bengal. The farmers and artisans led a miserable life. The officials of the English East India Company were misusing their privileges and amassing great wealth. The administration was crippled. So the company had to ask the British Government for a huge amount as a loan. At this stage, the British Government decided to interfere in the affairs of the Company. To regulate the affairs of the East India Company in 1773 the British Parliament passed the **Regulating Act in 1773**. This was the first landmark Act in the Constitutional development of India.

The Regulating Act - 1773

Provisions

*Appointment of a Governor General in Calcutta who was superior to the Governors of Bombay and Madras.

*Provision was made to set up a Supreme Court in Calcutta with a chief justice and three judges. Sir Elijah Impey was the first Chief Justice.

*An Executive Council consisting of four members was set up to assist Governor General.

Defects of the Regulating Act

The Regulating Act did not clearly define the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court or the powers of the Governor General and the members of his executive Council. The members of the executive council of the Governor General often created problems. The Governors of Bombay and Madras did not obey the orders of the Governor General of Bengal. This Act made the position of the Governor General weak.

In order to remove the defects of the Regulating Act, the British Prime Minister William Pitt, the Younger, passed the Pitts India Act in 1784.

Provisions of the Pitts India Act

The Governor General was to be appointed with the approval of the British Crown.

The number of members in Governor General's Council was reduced from four to three.

For administrative purposes, a Board of Control consisting of six members was established in Britain to monitor the affairs in India.

The Governor General was made the Commander-in-Chief of the British troops in India and was given total control over the Presidencies of Bombay and Madras.

This Act helped the British

Government to have control over the company's affairs.

Reforms of Warren Hastings

Administrative Reforms

He put an end to the Dual Government introduced in Bengal by Robert Clive. The East India Company took over the administration of the provinces. The treasury was shifted from Murshidabad to Calcutta.

Judicial Reforms

Two courts of Appeal namely the **Sadar Diwani Adalat (Civil)** and the **Sadar Nizamat Adalat (Criminal)** were established at Calcutta. Civil and criminal courts were set up in each district. A digest of Hindu and Muslim law was compiled.

Commercial Reforms

A Board of Trade was set up to buy quality goods for the company. Company servants were not allowed to carry on private trade. In order to encourage Indian trade, he reduced the customs duty by 2.5% to merchants. Many of the customs houses were abolished and he set up only five customs houses at **Calcutta, Dacca, Hoogly, Patna and Murshidabad**.

Revenue Reforms

A Board of Revenue was set up at Calcutta to look into the revenue administration. English Collectors were appointed in every district. The land was given for 5 years to the highest bidder. The land owners got the right to collect land revenue and pay it to the Government

Educational Reforms

Warren Hastings was also a great patron of learning. In 1781 he founded the Calcutta Madarasa for the promotion of Islamic studies.

The Rohilla War (A.D. 1774)

The Rohillas were Afghans and were frequently attacked by the Marathas. They sought the help of the Nawab Oudh to subdue the Marathas. The Nawab demanded Rs.40 lakhs and the Rohillas accepted the demand. When the Marathas appeared in Rohilkhand in 1773, they saw the forces of Nawab of Oudh behind the Rohillas, so the Marathas retreated without fighting Shuja-ud-daulah. The Nawab of Oudh demanded the promised 40 lakhs from the Rohillas. The Rohilla Chief refused to pay the money. The Nawab of Oudh approached the English for help. He even agreed to pay 40 lakhs to the British. So warren Hastings send an army against the Rohillas. Rohillas were defeated and their territory was annexed to Oudh.

The Second Anglo-Mysore War (A.D.1780-A.D.1784)

The treaty of Madras was signed in 1769 between Hyder Ali and the British, both agreed to help each other against the common enemy-The Marathas. But in 1771, when the Marathas invaded Mysore, the English did not come forward to help Hyder Ali. The English also captured the French port Mahe which was of great importance to Hyder Ali so he protested and declared war against British. In 1781 the British army under Sir Eyre Coote defeated Hyder

Ali at Porto Novo and at Arni in 1782. Hyder Ali died of cancer during the course of the war. Hyder Ali's son Tipu Sultan continued the war. In 1784 Tipu Sultan and the English signed the **Treaty of Mangalore** by which the conquered territories were restored to both the parties.

The First Anglo-Maratha War (AD 1775-AD 1782)

Warren Hastings declared war against Marathas in A.D.1775. This war came to an end with the signing of the **Treaty of Salbai** in 1782. Madhava Rao Narayan became the Peshwa after the signing of the treaty.

Impeachment of Warren Hastings

The First Anglo-Maratha war put the English under a great financial strain. So Warren Hastings demanded additional revenue from

Raja Chait Singh of Benares. On his refusal to pay the revenue, Hastings deposed the ruler. Similarly, he took away the personal treasures of the Begums of Oudh. Warren Hastings is also believed to have been responsible for sentencing a person called **Nanda Kumar** to death on false charges of forgery. Warren Hastings was criticized and later on impeached by the British Parliament for his actions. Later he was acquitted from all charges because he had rendered great services to British power in India.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. Warren Hastings was appointed as the Governor of Bengal in _____.
a) 1772 b) 1773 c) 1774
2. The 1st Chief Justice of British India was _____.
a) Sir Thomas b) Sir Elijah Impey c) Sir Morse
3. Under the Regulating Act, the Supreme Court was set up at _____.
a) Calcutta b) Madras c) Bombay
4. _____ was the son of Hyder Ali
a) Dost Ali b) Mir Qasim c) Tipu Sultan

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. In 1772 a terrible famine affected _____.
2. The British Prime Minister _____ passed the Pitts India Act in 1784.
3. Warren Hastings put an end to the Dual Government introduced by _____.
4. The second Anglo – Mysore War came to an end by the treaty of _____.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Nawab of Oudh | Civil Court |
| 2. Hyder Ali | Ruler of Benares |
| 3. Sadar Diwani Adalat | Ruler of Mysore |
| 4. Raja Chait Singh | Shuja – ud – daulah |

IV) Answer in a word.

1. Name the Act passed by the British Parliament in 1773.
2. Name the Act that removed the defects of the Regulating Act?
3. What was set up to buy quality goods for the company?

V) Answer the following questions.

1. What were the defects of the Regulating Act?
2. Why did Hyder Ali declare war on the English in 1780?
3. What were the provisions of the Regulating Act?
4. Write a short note on the Rohilla War.

VI) Answer in detail.

1. Describe the reforms introduced by Warren Hastings.
2. What were the features of the regulating Act? How did the pitt's India Act overcome its defects?

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Debate:

The Regulating Act of 1773 was the first step towards development of the Indian constitution - conduct a debate in your class.

2. In your scrapbook write and stick pictures of Warren Hastings and the reforms he introduced.
3. Write about the famine of Bengal of 1770-1772.

2. LORD CORNWALLIS (A.D. 1786 - A.D. 1793)



Lord Cornwallis

Lord Cornwallis became the Governor General of India in 1786. He tried to follow the policy of non-intervention.

In 1793, Cornwallis introduced the Permanent Settlement of Bengal. The Zamindars were required to pay a fixed amount in cash on a fixed date as land revenue to the treasury, irrespective of what they could collect. Slowly the Zamindars brought more areas under cultivation and made more money while they paid the same fixed amount to the company. Many Zamindars benefited more than either the company or the peasants.

Merits

This system was beneficial to the Zamindars. They were the owners of the lands and they became very loyal to the company. This system secured a fixed and stable income for the company. This settlement avoided the evils of periodical settlements.

Demerits

- 1) Zamindars became the masters of the land and were benefited.
- 2) The worst affected people were the cultivators who were left at the mercy of the zamindars.
- 3) To meet the increasing expenses the government had to increase the tax in other provinces.
- 4) The government had no direct contact with the people.

Administrative Reforms

Cornwallis introduced a new administrative civil service system. The civil servants were appointed to administer the British territories effectively in India. He introduced strict regulations, raised their salaries and gave promotions on the basis of merit. The employees were not permitted to carry on private trade. All high posts were reserved only for the English. Indians could only be selected for subordinate posts.

Police Reforms

Lord Cornwallis created a permanent police force in India. In 1791 a **Commissioner of Police** was appointed in Calcutta. The districts were divided into Thanas. Each

Thana was headed by a Daroga. As in the civil services in the police department too, the Indians were excluded from the higher posts.

Judicial Reforms

Lord Cornwallis improved the judiciary. The collector was relieved of his judicial duties. He was responsible for revenue collection. Civil and Criminal Courts were set up at the district level. Provincial courts of appeal were set up at Dacca, Calcutta, Murshidabad and Patna. Cornwallis increased the salary of the judges to check bribery and corruption. He abolished the court fees. A new code of regulations known as "Cornwallis code" was compiled in 1793 by Sir George Barlow.

Revenue Reforms

He reorganized the Revenue Department. In 1787 the province of Bengal was divided into many areas and each area was placed under a collector. He established the Board of Revenue to supervise the work of the collectors.

Commercial Reforms

Cornwallis revived the old practice of making direct contact with the Indian merchants and improved trade and commerce.

Tipu Sultan

Tipu Sultan was born in 1753 near Mysore. He was an industrious ruler like his father. He was well

educated and a great soldier. He was against the presence of British in India. He built many strong forts like Dorrg to defend his kingdom. He was a lover of art and architecture.

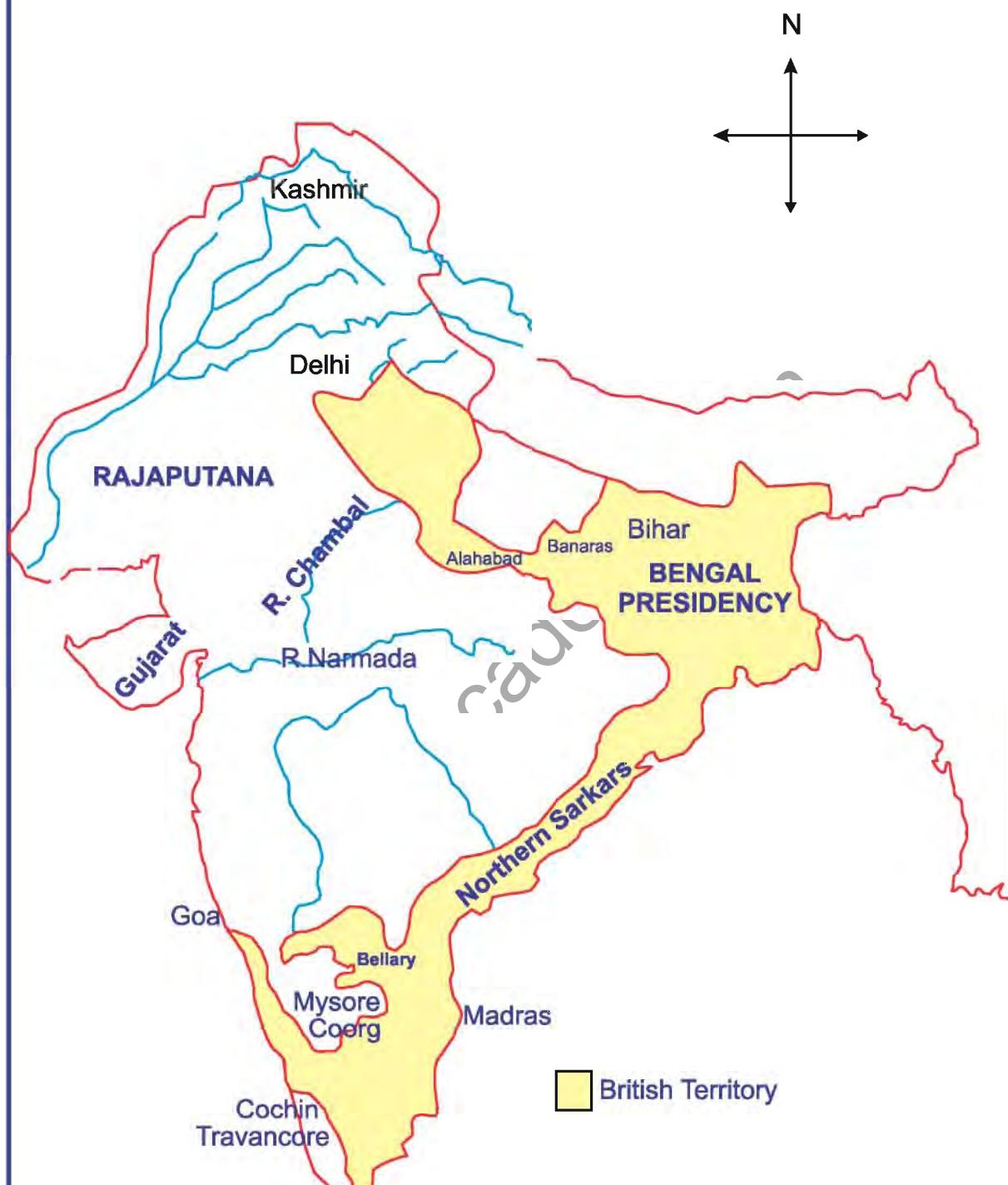


Tipu Sultan

The Third Anglo – Mysore War (AD 1790 – AD 1792)

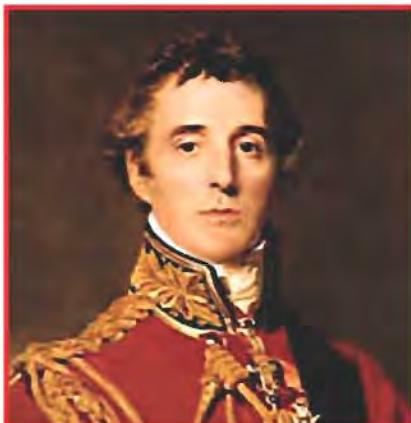
Tipu wanted to improve his position by driving the English out of India. Therefore he sought help from Turkey and France. Cornwallis believed that Tipu, having allied with the French, would strike against the English. To check Tipu Sultan the English formed alliances with the Nizam and the Marathas. Tipu attacked Travancore a friend of British. So the English declared war against Tipu Sultan in 1790. Tipu was defeated at Srirangapatnam and the third Mysore war ended with the treaty of Srirangapatnam signed by Cornwallis and Tipu Sultan in 1792.

British Position Under Lord Wellesley



Tipu Sultan was called the “**Tiger of Mysore**”. The Tiger emblem was sculpted on his throne and the military uniforms also bore the Tiger emblem. He was buried at Srirangapatnam.

Lord Wellesley (AD 1796–AD 1805)



Lord Wellesley

After Cornwallis, **Sir John Shore** became the Governor General of India. He followed the policy of non-intervention. He was succeeded by Lord Wellesley. He followed the policy of expansion and extended the British territories through **Subsidiary Alliance**.

Subsidiary Alliance

Lord Wellesley introduced the system of Subsidiary Alliance to bring the princely states under the control of the British.

Main features of the Subsidiary Alliance

In the subsidiary alliance system, an Indian ruler had to

maintain British troops in his state, either by giving some of his territory or by paying for the maintenance of the troops.

The Indian ruler could not fight or sign treaties with any other power. This system allowed the British to maintain a large army at the expense of the local rulers.

Merits

It helped the Company to maintain a large army at the expense of the Indian rulers. The English became the supreme power in India. They began to control the foreign policy of the native states.

The French influence was excluded from the Indian States. The extent of British Empire in India increased.

Demerits

The native rulers lost their prestige and dignity. Both the British and the native rulers neglected the welfare of the people.

States which entered into the subsidiary Alliance

The Nizam of Hyderabad was the first to enter into the subsidiary Alliance with the English. He gave Bellary, Cuddapah, Ananthapur and Karnool to the British. The Nawab of Oudh was forced by Wellesley to enter into the Subsidiary Alliance. He ceded half of his territories, Rohilkhand, Gorakpur and the territories between the Ganges and

the Yamuna to the British. Peshwa Baji Rao-II also entered into the subsidiary Alliance with British.

The Fourth Anglo - Mysore War (1799)

Causes

The fourth Anglo-Mysore war was fought in 1799 between the British and Tipu Sultan. Tipu Sultan wanted to recover his territories which he lost in the Third Mysore War and he did not accept the Subsidiary Alliance. He wanted to take revenge on the English. Tipu Sultan sent emissaries to Kabul, Constantinople, Arabia and France to get their support against British. So war became inevitable between Tipu and the British.

Tipu was defeated at Malavalli. He died on 4th May 1799 while defending his capital Srirangapatnam. With his death, the war came to an end in 1799.

The important territories of Kanara, Coimbatore and Srirangapatnam were annexed by the British. A small part of the Mysore Kingdom was restored to Krishna III, a

member of the old Hindu royal family from whom Hyder Ali had captured the throne of Mysore. Tipu's family was sent to Vellore fort. This war put an end to Muslim rule in Mysore and made the British the strongest power in South India.

The Second Anglo-Maratha War (1803)

Peshwa Baji Rao-II accepted the Subsidiary Alliance with the British and signed the **Treaty of Bassein in 1802**. The Maratha leaders Scindia and Bhonsle refused to acknowledge this treaty. So they joined together and attacked the British.

In 1803 Arthur Wellesley defeated the Marathas. As a result Maratha Power was weakened and the English expanded their power and authority.

Estimate

Wellesley was one of the greatest governor generals of the English East India Company. He defeated Tipu Sultan and humbled the Marathas. He transformed the trading English East India Company into a strong political power in India.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. Lord Cornwallis became the Governor General of Bengal in _____.
 a) 1786 b) 1787 c) 1788
2. During the Third Anglo-Mysore War, Tipu attacked _____ a Hindu State in South India.
 a) Oudh b) Travancore c) Carnatic
3. _____ is called the Father of Indian Civil Service.
 a) John Shore b) Cornwallis c) Wellesley
4. The Fourth Anglo - Mysore war was fought in _____.
 a) 1789 b) 1799 c) 1779

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Permanent Revenue Settlement | Lord Wellesley |
| 2. Subsidiary Alliance | Treaty of Seringapatnam |
| 3. Sir John Shore | Lord Cornwallis |
| 4. Third Anglo - Mysore War | Non-intervention |

III) Fill in the blanks.

1. The permanent land revenue settlement was introduced in _____.
2. _____ created a permanent police force in India.
3. A new code of regulations known as Cornwallis code was compiled by _____.
4. Lord Wellesley became the Governor General in _____.

IV) Answer in a word.

1. Who were the worst affected by the 'permanent settlement'?
2. What policy did Wellesley follow?
3. Who was the first Indian ruler to join the subsidiary alliance?

V) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. How did Lord Cornwallis improve the judiciary?
2. What were the causes for the fourth Anglo – Mysore war?
3. Write a short note on Tipu Sultan.

VI) Answer in detail.

1. Describe the reforms introduced by Lord Cornwallis.
2. Give an account of Permanent Revenue Settlement of Lord Cornwallis.
3. Write a note on the Subsidiary alliance system of Lord Wellesley and mention its merits and demerits

Activity.

1. The Indian Civil Service was called the backbone of the British Rule of India. Prepare a report on the Indian Civil Service tracing its growth from its inception to its current form as the Indian Administrative Service.
2. On the river map of India, mark the extent of British Empire under Wellesley.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Prepare a scroll:

Prepare an information scroll about the reforms of Lord Cornwallis.

2. Report:

Prepare a report on why Tipu Sultan was called as “Tiger of Mysore”.

3. Complete the given table:

Prepare a chart on the four Mysore wars.

War	Year	Causes	Events	Treaty signed	Results

4. Debate:

The subsidiary system of Lord Wellesley curbed the independent nature of native rulers – Debate in your class.

5. Trace the growth of the British Rule in India from the 17th to 20th centuries.

- Entry into India trade
- Acquisition of a few trade areas and warehouses.
- Acquisition of trading stations and settlements.
- Control of Indian states
- Complete subjugation of India.

Use the above hints and write a few sentences on each.

3. MARQUESS OF HASTINGS (A.D. 1813 - A.D. 1823)

Marquess of Hastings better known as Lord Hastings became Governor General in 1813. He completed the work begin by Lord Wellesley. When he became the Governor General, the Gurkhas of Nepal, the Pindaris and the Maratha chiefs wanted to overthrow the British power. But Hastings boldly faced all these problems and made the English the paramount power in India.

During his tenure the Charter Act of 1813 was passed by the British Government.

Provisions of the Charter Act of 1813

The Charter Act of 1813 renewed the trading rights of the East India company for another twenty years. The company was deprived of its monopoly to trade with India. The British Government allotted one lakh rupees every year for the development of education in India. The Act made provisions for the appointment of a Bishop and three Arch Deacons [Priests] to look after the welfare of the Europeans in India. The British merchants and missionaries were allowed to settle in India after getting licence from the Board of Control.

Importance of the Charter Act of 1813

The monopoly of the company's trade came to an end. The missionaries preached Christianity.

Western education was provided to the Indians.

The Gurkha War (AD 1814–AD 1816)

The Gurkhas of Nepal were a great challenge to British. They captured Sheoraj and Butwal in 1814. The British regarded it as a challenge and declared war on them. The English defeated the Gurkha leader Amarsingh. The Gurkhas were compelled to sign the treaty of Sagauli in 1816 with English. Thus the war came to an end.

The Pindari War (AD 1816–AD 1818)

The Pindaris were the gang of robbers in Central India. The important leaders of the Pindaris were Amirkhan, Wasil Muhammad, Karim Khan and Chettu. Hastings sent a huge army to subdue the Pindaris. Thus Hastings exterminated the Pindaris and relieved the people of Central India from their suffering.

The Fourth Anglo-Maratha War (AD 1817-AD 1818)

The Marathas were jealous of the growing power of the English. Peshwa Baji Rao II tried to form a confederacy of all the Maratha Chiefs against the English. In 1817 the Peshwa attacked the British residency at Pune. It resulted in Fourth Anglo-Maratha war. The Marathas were completely defeated after this war.

Results

The office of the Peshwa was abolished. Baji Rao II was paid an annual pension of 8 lakh rupees. The small kingdom of Satara was created and one of the descendants of Chatrapathi Shivaji, Pratab Singh was placed on the throne. Thus the mighty Maratha power lost its power. The British became the paramount power in India.

Reforms of Lord Hastings

Hastings passed the **Bengal Tenancy Act in 1822** to protect the interests of the tenants. He took efforts to promote education among

the people. In 1817 a college was opened in Calcutta for the development of the English Language. He removed the restrictions on the press. The first vernacular (Regional) newspaper '**'Samachar Patrika'**' was published. He appointed Indians to higher posts in administration. During his period the Ryotwari system of revenue collection was introduced in the Madras Presidency. It was a settlement between the ryots and the British. This system made ryot the owner of the land as long as he paid the revenue without default.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. Lord Hastings completed the work started by Lord _____.
a) Warren Hastings b) Wellesley c) Minto I
2. The Charter Act was passed in _____.
a) 1813 b) 1814 c) 1815
3. The fourth Anglo – Maratha war began in _____.
a) 1817 b) 1718 c) 1870
4. The _____ system of revenue was introduced during the period of Lord Hastings.
a) Mahalwari b) Ryotwari c) Permanent

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. The Bengal tenancy Act was passed by _____.
2. The war between the Gurkhas and the English came to an end by the treaty of _____.
3. Charter Act of 1813 allowed the missionaries to popularize _____ in India.
4. The Gurkhas were the inhabitants of _____.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Amar Singh | Pindari leader |
| 2. Marquess of Hastings | capital of Nepal |
| 3. Amir Khan | Gurkha leader |
| 4. Kathmandu | Governor General |

IV) Answer the following in a word.

1. To whom was the state of Satara given?
2. Name the first vernacular newspaper published during the time of Lord Hastings.
3. Which Act allowed the British missionaries to settle in India?

V) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. Mention the causes for the Gurkha war?
2. What was the result of the fourth Anglo-Maratha war?
3. Write a note on the reforms of Marquess of Hastings.

VI) Answer in detail.

1. Give an account of the Charter Act of 1813.
2. Describe the wars fought by Marquess of Hastings.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Discuss:

Discuss in your class about the provisions of the Charter Act of 1813.

2. Make a table:

Form a tabular column on the Permanent Land Revenue System and the Ryotwari System – Bring out the difference between the two.

3. Project:

Prepare a project how the Charter Act of 1813 was the first step towards the development of Indian Education System.

1. Lord William Bentinck (A.D.1828-A.D.1835)

Lord Hastings was succeeded by Lord Amherst. During his period, the Burmese tried to capture Assam. So, in 1824, Lord Amherst declared war on Burma. This war was called the First Burmese war. The English defeated the Burmese. The war came to an end with the **Treaty of Yandaboo in 1826**. The English got Arakan and Tenasserim.

Lord Amherst was succeeded by Lord William Bentinck. He followed a policy of non-interference with regard to the dependent Indian states. He is famous for his reforms. He is considered to be one of the greatest Governors General of India. His reforms can be classified as follows.

Financial reforms

In order to improve the finance of the East India Company, he reduced the salaries of the civil servants. He appointed several Indians on low salaries. He regulated the opium trade and increased the income of the company. He reduced the bhatta or allowance of the military officers of the company.

Judicial reforms

He abolished the provincial courts of appeal and he set up a **Sadar Diwani Adalat** [civil court] and a **Sadar Nizamat Adalat** [criminal court] in Allahabad.

Administrative reforms

He combined the office of the Collector with that of the Magistrate. He took charge of the

commander-in-chief of the army and introduced several reforms. He abolished **Persian** as the court language and introduced vernacular languages. A new post of law member in the executive council of the Governor-General was created by the Charter Act of 1833. Lord Macaulay was made the first law member.

Social Reforms

Abolition of Sati

Sati was a Social evil that prevailed in Indian society especially among the Rajputs. As per the norms the wife was burnt alive on the funeral pyre of her deceased husband. At just it was a voluntary act but as time went by the relatives forced the widow to sit on the funeral pyre.

Lord Bentinck could not tolerate such an inhuman act. So **Sati Prohibition Act** was passed in 1829 with the help of Raja Ram Mohan Roy, a social reformer. Lord Bentinck declared sati as a criminal and illegal offence. As per the Act, anyone who forced a woman to perform sati would be given capital punishment.

Abolition of female infanticide

Another evil practice that existed among the tribes of Rajaputana and Kathiawar was female infanticide. It was the practice of killing the female children at the time of their birth, mainly to avoid economic burden.

So Bentinck abolished this evil practice and declared it as a crime.

The wild tribes of Odisha followed the practice of human sacrifice, to please their Gods. Lord Bentinck declared that any person who practised this barbarous act would be treated as a murderer.

Suppression of Thugs

The Thugs were gang of robbers who lived in central India. They used to loot and plunder. They robbed the innocent travellers and put them to death. Lord William Bentinck decided to stop this evil practice. Under Major Sleeman, a new department was set up to suppress the Thugs. The thugs were caught in large numbers; They were either put to death or punished severely.

Educational reforms

Bentinck decided to use the money sanctioned by the Charter Act of 1813 to promote western education through the medium of English. As a result English became

a medium of instruction in India. He opened a medical college at Calcutta and established Elphinstone college at Bombay.

The Charter Act of 1833

The Charter Act of 1833 was passed during the time of Lord William Bentinck. Accordingly monopoly of the company was abolished. The Governor General in Bengal became the Governor General of India. This Act added a law member to the executive council of the Governor General. The Bishops of Bombay, Madras and Calcutta were to be appointed for the benefit of the Christians in India.

Estimate

He carried out many useful reforms in the social, administrative, financial and judicial fields. For his sympathetic attitude towards the Indians, he can be compared to Lord Ripon. He promoted English education in India and did a lot for the welfare of the people.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. Lord Amherst was succeeded by _____ as the Governor General of India.
a) William Bentinck b) Lord Hastings c) Lord Curzon
2. Lord William Bentinck is famous for his _____.
a) appearance b) wars c) reforms.
3. The use of _____ as court language was abolished.
a) English b) Persian c) Sanskrit

4. Human Sacrifice was practiced by _____.

- a) Wild tribes of Odesa b) Rajputs c) people of Central India

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. The first Burmese war came to an end by the Treaty of _____ in 1826.
2. _____ is considered to be one of the greatest Governor Generals of India.
3. _____ was made as the first law member in the executive council of the Governor General.
4. The evil practices that prevailed in the Indian society were and _____.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Abolition of Sati | - English Education |
| 2. Major Sleeman | - 1829 |
| 3. Raja Ram Mohan Roy | - Suppression of Thugs |
| 4. Macaulay | - Social reformer |

IV) Answer in a word.

1. When did Bentinck become the Governor General of India?
2. Where was the Elphinstone College established?
3. Who reduced the Batta of Military officer?

V) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. What do you know about the First Burmese War?
2. Mention the educational reforms of Lord William Bentinck?
3. What do you know about the administrative reforms of Lord William Bentinck?

VI) Answer in detail.

1. Write a paragraph on the social reforms of Lord William Bentinck.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Discuss

"Welfare of the state is based on the welfare of the people under the rule" this statement is proved by Lord William Bentinck - Discuss.

2. Imagine you in a place where a sati is going to be committed. Write down your feelings and draw a picture of what you witnessed.
3. Female infanticide is still rampant in India. Prepare a report on this social evil.
4. How did the educational reforms introduced by the British help India?

2. Lord Dalhousie (A.D.1848-A.D.1855)

Lord Dalhousie became the Governor General of India in A.D.1848. To expand the British Empire in every possible way, he adopted three methods. They were:-

- a) By Doctrine of Lapse
- b) Through wars
- c) on the grounds of mis-governance.

Annexation by Doctrine of Lapse

Lord Dalhousie adopted a new policy known as Doctrine of Lapse to extend British Empire. According to **Doctrine of Lapse** "if the ruler of a dependent state in India died without male issue, his adopted son would not succeed him but the state would pass back to the British and the adopted son would inherit only the personal property of the deceased".

On the basis of the Doctrine of Lapse, Dalhousie annexed the states of Satara, Jaipur, Sambhalpur Udaipur, Jhansi and Nagpur. This policy of Doctrine of Lapse was bitterly opposed by the Indians and it was one of the root causes for the sepoy mutiny. (Great revolt of 1857).

Annexation by war

The second Anglo-Sikh war (A.D.1848-A.D.1849)

The second Anglo-Sikh war was fought during the time of Lord Dalhousie. Though the Sikhs were defeated in the First Anglo-Sikh war, they were not completely crushed.

Multan was a part of Sikh kingdom. The Sikhs under the leadership of Mulraj revolted against the British. So Lord Dalhousie declared a war against the Sikhs in 1848. The Sikhs were defeated. Punjab was annexed by Lord Dalhousie in 1849.

The second Burmese war (A.D.1852)

After the first Burmese war the British merchants were allowed to carry on trade and settle down in Burma. But they were ill-treated. They appealed to Dalhousie for help. So Dalhousie sent an army to attack Burma. Thus the second Burmese war broke out in 1852. The Burmese were defeated. By this war the whole of lower Burma came under the control of British.

Annexation on grounds of misgovernance

The Nawab of Oudh, Wajid Ali Shah was deposed from the throne in A.D.1852 on the pretext of mis-governance. Oudh was annexed to the British Empire. Tanjore was also annexed to the British Empire.

Reforms of Lord Dalhousie

Dalhousie was not only a great conqueror but also a great administrator. He introduced many reforms in India.

Administrative reforms

The Governor-General of India also acted as the Governor of Bengal. But during the time of

Dalhousie a Lieutenant Governor was appointed to look after the affairs of Bengal. Provinces were divided into districts and each district was put under a Deputy Commissioner. Simla was made the summer capital while Calcutta remained as the winter capital. He introduced a uniform system of administration in the provinces of Calcutta, Bombay and Madras.

Introduction of Railways

Dalhousie is credited with the introduction of railways in India. The first railway line was laid in 1853 between **Bombay** and **Thane**. In 1854 a railway line was laid from Howrah to Ranikunj. In 1856, a railway line was laid from **Madras** to **Arakonam**. The railways increased the volume of trade. It was easy for the British government to send the troops, goods and raw materials easily from one place to another.

Lord Dalhousie was known as the 'Father of Indian Railways'

Post and Telegraph

Post and telegraph offices were set up throughout the country. He appointed a Director General to supervise the work of the post offices in all the presidencies. Dalhousie also introduced a uniform postage system. For the first time, the postal stamps were used in India. He introduced $\frac{1}{2}$ Anna (3 paise) postal system. Telegraph lines were also laid down. Thus communication system received an impetus under Dalhousie.

Commercial reforms

Lord Dalhousie introduced free trade. Madras, Bombay and Calcutta ports were improved. He improved several harbours and equipped them with modern facilities. He encouraged the trade between India and England.

Social reforms

He tried to abolish sati which was practiced in some parts of the country. He also suppressed the Thugs. In 1856 the **Hindu widow re-marriage Act** was passed. He encouraged the widow remARRIAGES. He allowed a person to inherit his ancestral property even if he changed his religion.

Public works department

Lord Dalhousie set up a Public Works Department. Many canals, roads and bridges were built and several other welfare work was undertaken. **The Grand Trunk road** (pucca) connecting Calcutta to Peshwar was refurbished. The Ganga canal was also dug.

Educational reforms

During the period of Dalhousie, **Sir Charles Wood's Despatch** in 1854 introduced several educational reforms in India. The department of public instruction was set up in every province. A number of educational institutions from primary to university level were established. Training institutions were also established to provide training to the teachers. **The universities of Calcutta, Bombay and Madras** were established to provide higher

Education to the people. An engineering college was also established in Rurkee. The system of grants – in aid to affiliated schools and colleges was also introduced.

Military reforms

Gurkhas were encouraged to join the Indian army.

Army headquarters were shifted from Calcutta to Simla.

The headquarters of Bengal artillery was shifted from Calcutta to Meerut.

Estimate

Lord Dalhousie was the youngest Governor-General of India. His period is ever remembered for the introduction of railways, posts and telegraphs. Hence he is known as the 'Maker of Modern India'.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The doctrine of Lapse was introduced by _____.
a) Lord Dalhousie b) Lord Amherst c) Lord Hastings.
2. _____ was annexed by Lord Dalhousie due to misgovernment
a) Satara b) Jhansi c) Oudh
3. The Hindu Widow Re-Marriage Act was passed in _____.
a) 1853 b) 1855 c) 1856
4. The first railway line was laid between Bombay and _____.
a) Madras b) Thane c) Pune

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. Lord Dalhousie became the Governor General of India in _____.
2. _____ was the first kingdom to be annexed by the British under the Doctrine of Lapse.
3. Ganga canal was constructed during the reign of _____.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. First railway line | - adopted son of Baji Rao ii |
| 2. Woods Despatch | - Nawab of Oudh |
| 3. Nana Sahib | - 1853 |
| 4. Wajid Ali Shah | - 1854 |

IV) Answer the following in one word.

1. When was the second Anglo-Sikh war fought?
2. Who set up public works department?
3. Name the universities set up during the period of Dalhousie.

V) Answer the following question briefly.

1. What was the Doctrine of Lapse?
2. What principles were adopted by Dalhousie to expand the British empire in India?
3. Name the states annexed through the Doctrine of Lapse.
4. Dalhousie was called the ‘Father of Indian Railways’—Justify.

VI) Answer in detail.

1. Describe the reforms introduced by Lord Dalhousie.

Activity

1. On the outline map of India, mark the extent of British empire during the period of Lord Dalhousie.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Oratorical competition
Topic suggested: "If you were an adopted child of Navab, how would you be affected by the Doctrine of Lapse introduced by the British".
2. Make a Presentation either on a chart or on Power Point on why Lord Dalhousie is known as "the Maker of Modern India".
3. How did the British help in uniting India? Have a panel discussion on the improvements in transport and communication.

3. The Great Revolt of 1857

The biggest challenge to British authority came in 1857. The revolt of 1857 began with a mutiny of the soldiers but soon people from all sections of the society joined with them. It was not a sudden occurrence. It was a culmination of the accumulated grievances of the Indian people against the British rule. The revolt occurred during the Governor Generalship of Lord Canning. There are differences of opinion among the historians regarding the nature of the Great Revolt of 1857. The English historian regard it as a mere sepoy mutiny, with selfish interest. The Indian historians called it as "The First War of Indian Independence".

Causes of the Revolt of 1857

Political causes

The British policies of annexation and expansion created suspicion in the minds of the Indians. Lord Wellesley's **Subsidiary Alliance** and Lord Dalhousie's **"Doctrine of Lapse"** made the Indian rulers as the dead enemies of the English.

Economic causes

Under the British rule, the economic condition of the people had deteriorated. All trade and commerce of the country went into the hands of the English. The introduction of machine made goods by the British destroyed the indigenous industries. Hundreds of

people lost their employment. All high posts were reserved only for the English. It created ill feeling against the English.

Social and religious causes

The introduction of railways, telegraphs and western education created suspicion in the minds of the people, who thought that the British would convert them to Christianity. The Christian missionaries began to effect the wholesale conversion of the Indians. The English has begun to interfere in the religious affairs by abolishing sati and child marriage and encouraging widow remarriage. The Hindu law of property was changed with a view to facilitate the conversion of the Hindus to Christianity.

Military causes

The Indian Sepoys had numerous grievances against the British. They asked for better pay and good treatment by British officers. The **General Service Enlistment Act** passed in 1856 during the time of Lord Canning created great bitterness among Indian soldiers as they were reluctant to go overseas. Moreover in order to make the sepoys look smarter, the sepoys were asked to trim their moustaches and beards. They were also ordered to remove their caste marks on their forehead and to replace the turban with leather hat. The Hindus and the

Muslims felt that it was against their religion. The Sikhs never trim their hair or beard. This hurt them deeply.

Immediate cause

The immediate cause of the revolt of 1857 was the introduction of greased cartridges in the new **Enfield Rifle**. These cartridges had to be bitten by the sepoys in order to fit them in the New Rifles. A rumour spread that these cartridges were greased with the fat of the cow and pig. Both the Hindus and the Muslims refused to use these greased cartridges. The sepoys got infuriated and refused to use them as the cow was considered sacred by the Hindus and the pig was detested by the Muslims.

The first soldier to protest against the greased cartridge was **Mangal Pandey**, the Brahmin Sepoy, at **Barrackpore in Bengal**. He refused to use the cartridges and shot his officer dead on April 18th 1857. He was arrested and hanged to death.

Main events of the Revolt

The main event started from Meerut on 9th May 1857. On the very next day of 10th May the sepoys broke into open revolt, shot down their officers, released the prisoners and set English bungalows on fire. Then they marched to Delhi.

Delhi

When they reached Delhi, the sepoys of Delhi also joined them and they soon occupied Delhi after killing a large number of Europeans.

Then **Bahadur Shah-II**, the old Mughal Emperor was declared the Emperor of India.

The English troops under Sir John Nicholson laid siege and occupied Delhi. A large number of people were killed mercilessly. Bahadur Shah II, the Mughal emperor was caught and charged of rebellion and sent to Rangoon for life imprisonment where he died in 1862. With his death the mighty Mughal dynasty came to an end.

Kanpur

At Kanpur the leader of the revolt was **Nana Sahib**, the adopted son of the last Peshwa Baji Rao II. With the help of Tantia Tope, Nana Sahib captured the fort of Kanpur and declared himself as the Peshwa. Colonel Havelock and Colonel O'Neil entered Kanpur and defeated the rebels and recaptured Kanpur on 17th July, 1857. Nana Sahib however managed to escape to Nepal where he died after some years.

Lucknow

Begum Hazarat Mahal of Oudh, wife of Nawab Wajid Ali Shah led the revolt at Lucknow. She declared her son Birjis Kadar as the Nawab of Oudh. The Mutineers killed Sir Henry Lawrence. Later General Outram and Havelock recaptured Lucknow in March 1858. A large number of its inhabitants were mercilessly massacred.

Central India

In central India, the revolt was led by **Rani Lakshmi Bai of Jhansi**

and Tantia Tope. She encouraged even women to fight against the British.

These two great freedom fighters offered a tough resistance to the English. When the English forces under Sir Hugh Rose laid a siege to the fort of Jhansi, Lakshmi Bai fought bravely but could not defend the fort. She escaped to Kalpi. At Kalpi she was helped by Tantia Tope and both of them captured Gwalior. When the British attacked it, she fought bravely till her death. Tantia Tope however managed to escape but he was captured and put to death. With his death the revolt came to an end. Even though the revolt ended in failure, it sowed the seed for India's Independence.



Lakshmi Bai

Causes for the failure of the revolt of 1857

There was no unity among the Indians. The ideals of nationalism and unity were not developed among the Indian masses. The revolt was not widespread all over the country.

The lack of resources both in men and money proved to be disastrous to the freedom fighters. The telegraphic network and postal systems helped the British in communications. The railways could transport the soldiers quickly. A great part of the English army including the Sikh, Rajput and the Gurkha battalions remained faithful to the British Government. The British troops were led by good generals. But the Indian Generals were no match for them. The British had mastery over the seas and so they could get men and materials from England into India. South Indian remained calm.

Results of the revolt of 1857

The revolt of 1857 put an end to the rule of the English East India Company. The administration of India was taken over by the British Crown. **Queen Victoria's Proclamation** was issued on November 1, 1858. The Board of Control and the Court of Directors were abolished and the office of the Secretary of the State for India and Indian Council was created. The Governor General of India now came to be called as **Viceroy of India**. The Indian army was thoroughly reorganized. Complete religious freedom was guaranteed to the Indian people. The policy of annexations was given up and the Indian Princes were given an assurance that their states would not be annexed with the British Empire.

Centres of Revolt in 1857



Queen's Proclamation of 1858

A Royal Durbar was held at Allahabad on November 1st 1858, where the Queen's Proclamation was declared. It was read at the Durbar by Lord Canning who was the last Governor General and the first Viceroy of India.

Features

The Act laid down that India shall be governed by and in the name of the Queen. It abolished the Board of Control and the Court of Directors.

The office of a Secretary of State was created. He was assisted by a Council consisting of fifteen members. The Doctrine of Lapse was cancelled. A general amnesty (or) pardon was granted to the rebels except those who were directly involved in killing the British subjects.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Great Revolt of 1857 took place during the period of Lord _____.
 a) Bentinck b) Canning c) Dalhousie
2. The sepoy mutiny first broke out in _____.
 a) Barrackpore b) Delhi c) Kanpur
3. _____ was the first soldier who refused to use the greased cartridge.
 a) Mangal Pandey b) Nana Sahib c) Bahadur Shah
4. The main political cause for the great Revolt of 1857 was _____.
 a) Heavy Taxes b) Dual government c) Doctrine of Lapse.

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. _____ was a culmination of the accumulated grievances of the Indian people against the British rule.
2. The Great Revolt of 1857 is also known as _____.
3. The immediate cause of the revolt of 1857 was the introduction of _____.

4. The English troops under Sir John Nicholson captured _____.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Mangal Pandey | - central India |
| 2. Tatia Tope | - Barrackpore |
| 3. Lord Canning | - commander of Nana Saheb's forces |
| 4. Rani Lakshmi Bai | - The first viceroy of India. |

IV) Answer in one word.

1. Who started the revolt of 1857?
2. Which state was annexed on the pretext of misgovernment?
3. Who joined with Rani Lakshmi Bai during the revolt of 1857?
4. Who undertook the administration of British India after the Great Revolt of 1857?

V) Give short answers.

1. Why was Mangal Pandey hanged by the British?
2. Write a short note on the nature of the Great Revolt of 1857
3. Write a short note on Rani Lakshmi Bai of Jhansi.

VI) Answer in detail.

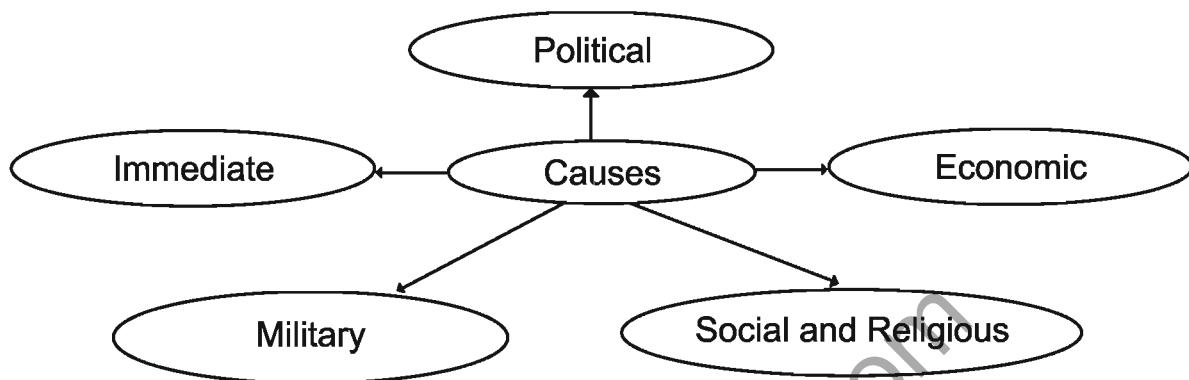
1. Analyse the various causes for the Great Revolt of 1857.
2. What were the causes for the failure of the Great Revolt of 1857.
3. Discuss the results of the Great Revolt of 1857 and Queen Victoria's Proclamation.

Activity

Use the outline map of India and mark the important centres of sepoy mutiny.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Prepare an idea map on the causes of the revolt of 1857.



2. Watch the movie " Mangal Pandey" and write a review on it.
3. Discuss why the Revolt of 1857 is referred to as the First war of Independence.

4. The Nayak Rule in Tamil Country

The expansion of Vijayanagar Empire finally brought the Nayak rule in Tamil country. The word Nayak means Leader, Chief or General. The Nayaks were the agents of the Vijayanagar rulers, who ruled over the territories granted to them. They considered themselves the imperial successors. They ruled from Madurai, Tanjore and Senji.

The Nayaks of Madurai

Madurai formed the part of the southern mandalam of Vijayanagar Empire. Viswanatha Nayak was appointed as the viceroy of Madurai by Krishnadeva Raya in 1529. This date was taken as the date of Nayakship of Madurai.

Vishwanatha Nayak

Vishwanatha Nayak was the close friend of Krishnadeva Raya. He was sent to Madurai to suppress the rebellion. He came out successful and became the master of Madurai.

Viswanatha Nayak is known for his peaceful effective administration. He introduced new administrative arrangements with the assistance of his minister Ariyanatha, known as "palayakar system". He appointed poligars to maintain peace and security in his empire. They were incharge of military, police and revenue administration. Kaval was the most important work and the people paid

a tax called kaval pitchai as remuneration.

Viswanatha Nayak was succeeded by several rulers. Among them Thirumalai Nayak was the most important ruler.

Thirumalai Nayak

Immediately after the accession of Thirumalai Nayak, the forces of Mysore marched across Madurai. But they were defeated at Dindigul by Thirumalai Nayak. Unni Keralavarman of Travancore refused to pay the tribute. Thirumalai Nayak sent an army, defeated and made him to pay the tribute regularly. Thirumalai Nayak was mainly responsible for the Muslim attack in Tamil country. When Sri Ranga III, the ruler of Vijayanagar marched against Madurai, Thirumalai Nayak made an alliance with Nayaks of Senji and Tanjore. But he was betrayed by the Nayaks of Tanjore. Thirumalai Nayak sought the help of ruler of Golconda and induced him to invade Vellore. The Muslims captured Vellore and threatened Madurai. So Thirumalai Nayak sought the help of ruler of Mysore. The ruler of Mysore sent his army. They were victory at Sathyamangalam and reached Dindigul. The Mysore army cut off the noses and the upper lips of their enemies. This barbarous practice alarmed the Madurai people. Thirumalai Nayak attacked Mysore

army and practised the same method of cutting the noses of the enemies. This strange event was termed as "war of noses".



Other works of Thirumalai Nayak

Thirumalai Nayak established an efficient system of administration. He maintained peace and security. He gave a free hand to the Portuguese and the Dutch. He shifted his capital from Trichy to Madurai. He repaired many temples. The temple administration came under his direct control. He gifted a number of villages for the maintenance of the temples. The Pudhu mandapam, Mariamman Theppakkulam and Thirumalai Nayak Mahal were constructed during his period. He patronized the renowned Sanskrit scholar Neelakanda Dikshidar.

The Regency of Queen Mangammal

Mangammal was the wife of Chokkanadhar and grandmother of Vijayaranga Chokkanadhar. She became a regent of 3 years old child Vijayaranga Chokkanadhar. The regency of Queen Mangammal was remarkable in the history of Nayaks.

of Madurai. Diplomatically she saved the kingdom. She encouraged Christian missionaries. She provided more facilities to pilgrim centres. Roads were made safe. She planted shady trees, built choultries and made journey easy and comfortable. She made rich endowments to temples. She paid more interest on irrigational projects. 'Uyyakkondan Canal' speaks about her contribution to irrigation.

Meenakshi

Vijayaranga died without a male issue. His wife Meenakshi became the successor. She adopted Vijaya Kumara and started her rule as a regent. Bangaru, father of Vijayakumara conspired against Meenakshi to occupy the throne. So, Meenakshi sought the help of Chanda Sahib, the Nawab of Carnatic and promised to offer a crore of rupees. Chanda Sahib defeated Bangaru and saved Meenakshi. Later Chanda Sahib showed his true colour and threw off the promises and imprisoned Meenakshi in her own palace at Trichy. The heart-broken Queen took poison and died. Chanda Sahib became the master of the Nayak State of Madurai and thus the Nayak rule came to an end in A.D 1736.

The Nayaks of Tanjore

Tanjore formed a part of the Vijayanagar Empire. Thimmappa Nayak was in charge of Tanjore. He was succeeded by his son Sevappa Nayak.

Sevappa Nayak

Sevappa Nayak was the founder of the independent Nayak kingdom at Tanjore. He paid attention to the maintenance of Hindu temples. He gave permission to the Portuguese to settle at Nagapattinam and gave 10 veli of land to the Mulavur Temple. He repaired Shivaganga Lake. Later it was called "Sevappaneri". He gave grants to Thiruvannamalai and Virudhachalam temples.

Achutappa Nayak

Sevappa was succeeded by his son Achutappa Nayak. He maintained cordial relations with Vijayanagar and helped the Vijayanagara King in the battle of Talikota. He gave a diamond throne to Lord Ranganatha and made endowments to the Rameswaram temple. He completed the tower of Arunachaleswara temple at Thiruvannamalai. He repaired the banks of river Kaveri and improved agriculture.

Ragunatha Nayak

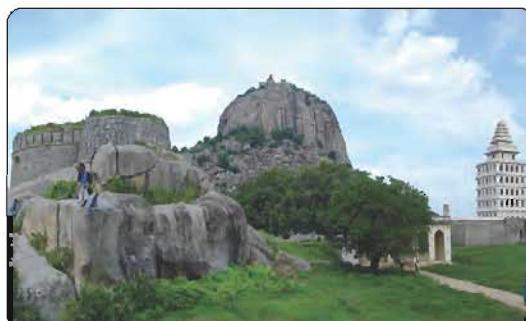
Achutappa was succeeded by his younger son Ragunatha Nayak. He was the most popular among the Nayaks of Tanjore. He won victories over the Nayaks of Senji and Madurai and the Portuguese of Jaffna. He was a great patron of art and letters. He was also a great poet, and wrote the Rukmani Parinayam, Parijata, Pushpakaranam and Ramayanam in Telugu.

Vijayaragava Nayak

Ragunatha was succeeded by his son Vijayaragava Nayak. He was a weak and incompetent ruler and was unable to defend the country. He was the last Nayak ruler of Tanjore. Chokkanatha Nayak of Madurai invaded and killed Vijayaragava Nayak and captured Tanjore. Thus, the Nayak rule of Tanjore came to an end in A.D.1673.

The Nayaks of Senji (Gingee)

The region between Palar and Coleroon formed the Nayak kingdom of Senji. The Nayaks of Senji were related to the royal house



of Vijayanagar. Their original home was Maninagapuram in North India and they migrated to the south and settled there. Krishnadevaraya appointed Vyappa Nayak in charge of Senji. He was succeeded by Krishnappa Nayak II. He was the real founder of the Nayak rule in Senji.

Krishnappa Nayak II

Krishnappa Nayak-II was the most important ruler of Senji. He divided his Kingdom into various divisions. Each division was ruled by his officers. He built towns for the settlement of the people. He

promoted cultivation. He maintained a powerful army. He erected a town called "Krishnapattinam" on the banks of the river Vellar. He was tolerant towards all religions. He gave grants to Jesuits for building churches. He permitted Jains to erect a shrine at Sithamur and saivites to build a temple at Tindivanam. He rebuilt the Govindaraja shrine at Chidambaram. His general Venkata, dug out a large tank called Chennasagaram for promoting irrigation.

The successors of Krishnappa Nayak-II were weak and inefficient. Bijapur Sultan (Ali Adil Shah) sent Mir Jumla to capture Senji in 1648. He captured Senji and appointed Nasir khan as its governor. In 1648, Shivaji captured Senji.

After Shivaji, it came under the Rajput general Swaroop Singh, who acted as a mughal vassal and paid annual tribute. He was succeeded by his son Raja Desingh. Sadat ullah khan, the ruler of Arcot invaded, defeated and killed Raja Desingh and annexed Senji. Raja Desingh's wife committed sati. As a mark of her remembrance, (Rani) the town of Ranipet was created. Thus the nayak's rule of Senji came to an end.

Tamil country under the Nayak rule Administration

The Nayaks ruled over Madurai, Tanjore and Senji. The Nayaks established an efficient administration. The king was the

head of the State. He was assisted by a council of ministers. The empire was divided into provinces, mandalams, simai or makana and villages. Paligar system was followed. Land tax was the main source of income to the state.

Social and Economic Conditions

The Nayaks upheld varnasrama system in society. Caste system remained rigid. Brahmins occupied the high position, valankai and idankai struggle continued. Villagers lived in ignorance and poverty. The Nayaks occupied mostly the dry areas except Kaveri, Vaigai and Thamiraparani areas. Agrarian economy continued. Agriculturists depended on rains. Tanks, wells, canals and rivers were the main source for irrigation.

Art and Architecture

The Nayaks were the great patrons of art and architecture. The Krishnapuram temple and Nellaiappar temples at Thirunelveli, Kasi Viswanatha Temple at Tenkasi, Ramanathapuram temple at Rameswaram and the Big Gopura of Srivilliputhur received the patronage of the Nayaks of Madurai. Krishnappa Nayak rebuilt and renovated Velliambalam, Northern Gopuram, Thousand Pillared Mandapam, Murthiamman Mandapam, Suriya Mandapam and Virappa Mandapam at Madurai. He also provided golden roof to the Mandapa of the Meenakshi Temple. Thirumalai Nayak built the Pudhumandapam and Nayak's Mahal. Nayak Mahal was built with

the help of Italian architect. It is a classical fusion of Dravidian, Islamic and European style. It is considered as one of the wonders in south India. Queen Mangammal built the Mangammal Palace at Madurai.

Sevappa Nayak of Tanjore repaired many temples and built the Sivaganga fort at Tanjore. The Big Mandapam at Thiruvannamalai, Virudachalam etc, were built by him.

Achutappa gave grants to Sri Ranganatha at Srirangam and Siva Temple at Rameswaram. He completed the tower of Arunachaleswara at Thiruvannamalai.

Achyuta Ramabhadra Nayak of Senji built the enclosing walls as well as the majestic gopuram for

Thiruvannamalai Temple. He also built a Vishnu Temple at Tindivanam. He permitted the Jains to construct a Jain Temple(palis) at Sittamur.

Literature

Nayaks made great contribution for the growth of literature. Thirumalai Nayak's Chidambarapuram, Paranjothiar's Chidambarapattial, Haridasa's Irusamaya Vilakkam, Umarupulavar's Seerapuram, Kumaraguruparar's Kandar Kali Venba and Meyngnana Vilakkam by Thiruvenkatam were the most important literary works during the Nayak's period. Thus the Nayak rule occupied an important place in the history of Tamil country.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. Paligar system was introduced by _____.
a) Vishwanatha Nayak b) Rani Mangammal c) Ragunatha Nayak
2. The tower of Arunachalaeswara temple was completed by _____.
a) Thirumalai Nayak b) Achutappa c) Vijaya Ragava
3. "War of the Noses" took place during the reign of _____.
a) Krishnappa Nayak b) Rani Meenakshi c) Thirumalai Nayak
4. Umarupulavar wrote _____.
a) Kandar Kalivenbah b) Irrusamaya vizhakam c) Seerapuram

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. Viswanatha Nayak introduced a tax called _____.
2. _____ acted as the regent of three year old child Vijayaranga Chokkanadhar.

3. Rani Meenakshi was imprisoned by _____ at the palace at Trichy.
4. _____ helped Vijayanagar ruler in the battle of Talikotta.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Thirumalai Nayak | - Meygnanavilakkam |
| 2. Paranjothiar | - Seerapuram |
| 3. Thiruvenkatam | - Chidambarapuram |
| 4. Umarupulavar | - Chidambarapatial |

IV) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. Write a short note on Rani Mangammal.
2. Write few lines on the conflict between Queen Meenakshi and Chanda Sahib.
3. How was "Ranipet" created?

V) Answer in detail.

1. Give an account of Tirumalai Nayak's rule.
2. Explain the contributions of the Nayaks in the field of art architecture and literature.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Drama
Dramatise the life history of “Rani Mangammal”.
2. Picture Collection
Collect Pictures of the architecture followed by the Nayaks.
3. Make a chart to show the contributions of Nayaks in the fields of:
 - a) Social and Economic conditions.
 - b) Administration.
 - c) Art and Architecture.
 - d) Literature.
5. Why do historians say that Krishnappa Nayak II was the most important ruler of Senji.

5. THE RULE OF THE MARATHAS OF THANJAVUR (A.D.1676-A.D.1856)

Chokkanatha Nayak of Madurai invaded and captured Thanjavur and appointed his half-brother Alagiri as Governor of Thanjavur. But he quarrelled with Chokkanatha and sought the help of Bijapur Sultan to appoint Sengamaladass as the Nayak of Thanjavur. So the sultan sent Venkaji (Ekoji) to capture Thanjavur. He succeeded and captured Thanjavur and established Maratha rule. They ruled over Thanjavur from 1676 to 1856 A.D.

Ekoji alias Venkoji

Ekoji was the son of Shaji Bhonsle and Tuka Bai. In order to plunder the wealth and to spread Hindu faith in the South, Shivaji led an expedition against the Carnatic region. He captured Golkonda and Senji. He marched towards Thanjavur and demanded his share from Venkoji which ended in failure. So Shivaji captured Coleroon and put Shantaji as his Viceroy and returned. After his return, Venkoji recaptured all the territories and ruled Thanjavur.

Shaji-II

Shaji-II was son of Venkoji. He was a brilliant and able ruler. He annexed Madurai. He was a great patron of scholars. He opened hospitals and invited physicians from Hyderabad and Arabia. He was harsh towards the Christians. He was succeeded by his brother Serfoji-I and he was succeeded by Tukaji. Tukaji had no son. After the

death of Tukaji a war of succession arose. In the war of succession, Pratap Singh ascended the throne of Thanjavur with the help of Nawab of Arcot and maintained unity and stability in Thanjavur.

Tuljaji ascended the throne of Thanjavur in 1763. During his rule, boundary disputes started between Ramnad and Thanjavur. Ramnad sought the help of the Nawab of Arcot. So the Nawab invaded Thanjavur and in 1773 Thanjavur came under the control of the Nawab of Carnatic. When it was brought to the notice of English East India Company, the Company Directors, directed the governor of Madras to restore Tuljaji as the king of Thanjavur. Tuljaji was crowned as the ruler of Thanjavur and became a nominee of company and kept an English army to maintain peace at Thanjavur.

Amar Singh and Serfoji-II

Tuljaji's adopted son Serfoji-II became the ruler in 1787 A.D. Amar Singh became the regent. He claimed the throne as Serfoji-II was an adopted son which was unlawful. English were in favour of Amar Singh. As a result Amar Singh became the ruler. He ruled in an arbitrary manner. So the Governor-General Cornwallis removed Amar Singh and Serfoji-II was made as the king. But during the time of Wellesley, Serfoji-II was reduced as a pensioner. The British controlled

the affairs of Thanjavur and Serfoji-II and Amar Singh received pension from the British.

Shivaji-II

Shivaji II was the son of Serfoji-II. His rule lasted till 1855. He had no son. According to the Doctrine of Lapse of Dalhousie, the tributary state without a male successor would lapse to the British. So in 1856 Thanjavur was annexed with the British Empire. Thus the Maratha rule in Thanjavur came to an end.

Tamil country under the Marathas

The Marathas ruled Thanjavur from A.D.1676 to 1856 A.D. Thanjavur was the fertile land of Tamil country. Agriculture was their main occupation. Purehits occupied a high position in the administration. They patronized great scholars. Rambhadra Dikshit and Baskara Dikshit were great Sanskrit poets. Aluri Kuppanna who was called as Andhara kalidasa was a great Telugu poet patronised by Tuljaji. Tuljaji was very interested in painting, music, philosophy, astronomy and dancing. Thanjavur Saraswathy Mahal was established by Serfoji-II, which serves as a centre of higher learning and research. It is one of the biggest libraries in South India consisting of books in English, French, German, Marathi(Mod), Greek, Sanskrit and many palm-leaf manuscripts.

The Poligars Revolt (A.D.1799)

After the decline of the Vijayanagar Empire, the Mughals

established their supremacy in the south. The Nawab of Arcot acted as their representative in the Carnatic. He acquired the right to collect taxes from the poligars. He could not collect taxes properly. Moreover he borrowed money from the East India company. In 1792 the company made a treaty with Nawab and acquired the right to collect taxes from the poligars and appointed English collectors for tax collection. They followed rough and ruthless methods to collect taxes. The poligars opposed the British. Kattabomman was the first man who raised his voice against the British.

Vira Pandya Kattabomman

The ancestors of Kattabomman belonged to Andhra. They migrated to Tamil country during the 11th century A.D. As a feudatory under Pandiyas, Jagavira Pandya Kattabomman ruled Virapandya puram. Panchalamkuruchi was its capital. He became a poligar under the Nayaks. He was succeeded by his son Virapandya kattabomman.



Kattabomman

Virapandy Kattabomman was born in A.D.1761 and came to power in A.D.1790. His wife was Jakkammal and his brother was Umathurai. Virapandy Kattabomman did not pay the tribute regularly and it fell arrears. Jackson, the Collector of Ramnad wrote a letter asking him to meet him and to pay the arrears in full. But Kattabomman disobeyed and said "it rains, the land yields, why should we pay tax to the English"? It enraged the Collector. Later, Kattabomman decided to meet the Collector and settle the issue amicably. Jackson was on tour in Thirunelveli district. Kattabomman went to Tirukutralam but Jackson refused to meet him. After 23 days, Kattabomman and his ministers met Jackson. But Kattabomman was insulted. Jackson tried to arrest Kattabomman but he escaped with the help of his brother Umathurai.

After this, Kattabomman decided to overthrow the overlordship of the British and made an alliance with Marudhu Pandyar of Sivagangai. Many poligars joined with Kattabomman. The activities of Kattabomman greatly alarmed the British. So they decided to wage war against Kattabomman. Major Bannerman was sent to defeat Kattabomman. He reached Thirunelveli and directed Kattabomman to meet him. But Kattabomman refused. Enraged Bannerman fell upon Panchalamkurichi. At Kallarpatti, the poligar's army was defeated.

Kattabomman and his brother escaped to Pudukottai. But the Raja of Pudukkottai Vijaya Ragunatha Thondaiman captured Kattabomman and handed him over to Bannerman. An enquiry was made. Kattabomman was found guilty. On 16th Oct, 1799 Kattabomman was hanged at Kayatharu. Even at the last moment of his life, he demonstrated his courage and patriotism. His relatives were captured and severely punished, but the struggle was not totally crushed.

The South Indian Rebellion (1800-1801)

The South Indian Rebellion was the outburst of the accumulated hatred and anger against the company's rule.

Causes

The interference of the company in the matters of local principalities reduced the power and prestige of the local rulers. The princes and the poligars lost their dignity and respectable status in the society. The oppressive policy in administration, the rude means of collection of taxes and the superiority complex of the British severely affected the people. By following the mercantile policy of gain, they increased taxes and collected it in a high-handed manner. Kattabomman was humiliated and hanged. Their relatives were subjected to severe punishments. These factors made the revolt inevitable.

Marudhu Pandiar and the Southern League

Marudhu Pandiar was one of the heroes of south Indian rebellion. He served loyally under Muthu Vadukanath Deva of Sivaganga. When Kattabomman was hanged to death, he gave protection to Umairai and others. This was not liked by the merchants of Sivaganga. Anticipating a struggle with the British, Marudhu Pandiar prepared himself to face any attack from the British. This greatly alarmed the British. The British sent their force under Col. Agnew against Marudhu Pandiar. Realising the seriousness, Marudhu Pandiar issued a proclamation to call the Indians to unite against the British. A copy of it was pasted on the walls of the gate-way of the Nawab's

palace in the fort at Trichy. Another copy was pasted on the walls of the great Vaishnava Temple at Srirangam. He invited people of all castes and religions to join in the struggle against the British.

The conflict started on 29th May 1801. The rebels were defeated at various places. Dindigul, Ramanad and Madurai came under the control of the British. Marudhu Pandiar hid himself in the Singapuneri forest. But Thondaiman of Pudukottai captured Marudhu Pandiar and handed over to the British. Marudhu Pandiar and others were hanged to death on Oct 24, 1801 A.D. and Umairai was impaled at Panchalankuruchi on 16th November 1801 A.D. Thus the south Indian rebellion came to an end.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ekoji was the son of _____.
a) Shaji Bhonsle b) Shivaji c) Shambaji
2. Saraswathy Mahal was established by _____.
a) Viswanatha Nayak b) Thirumalai Nayak c) Serfoji-II
3. Panchalankuruchi was ruled by _____.
a) Serfoji-II b) Sethupathy c) Kattabomman
4. Vira Pandiya Kattabomman was hanged at _____.
a) Sivaganga b) Kayatharu c) Kalaiyar Koil

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. Dalhousie annexed Thanjavur by applying _____.
2. Tuljaji patronized the great Telugu poet _____.

3. Vira Pandiya Kattabomman was humiliated by the British collector _____.

4. In the year _____ Kattabomman was hanged.

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1. Baskara Dikshit | - British collector of Ramnad |
| 2. Jackson | - 1801 |
| 3. South Indian Rebellion | - British commander |
| 4. Bannerman | - Partonished by the Marathas of Thanjavur |

III) Write brief answers for the following questions.

1. Write a note on Shaji-II.
2. Give a brief account on Serfoji-II.
3. Explain the causes for Panchalankuruchi battle.

IV) Answer in detail.

1. Write briefly about Vira Pandiya Kattabomman.
2. Write an essay on South Indian Rebellion.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Collect pictures of examples of Tanjore Architecture and paste them in your scrap book.
2. Prepare a skit on kattabomman.

shakthiacademy.com

6. VELLORE MUTINY – 1806

The South Indian rebellion was over by A.D.1801. But the rude shock was not erased from the minds of the people. The English East India Company emerged as the unopposed ruler of Madras Presidency from 1801 A.D. Lord William Bentinck was the governor of Madras Presidency and John Cradock was commander-in-chief. His army reforms invited a mutiny at Vellore. The Vellore Mutiny of 1806 was the first instance of a mutiny by Indian sepoys against the East India Company. It is one of the significant events not only in the history of Tamil Country but also India. It took place in the south Indian town Vellore. As it was led by the sepoys of Vellore fort, it was called as the Vellore Mutiny. It was presumed as a prelude to the Great Revolt of 1857.

Causes for the Revolt

The mutineers were influenced by the family of Tipu Sultan who were confined to the Vellore fort after the death of Tipu Sultan.



Vellore Fort

The recruitment of a large number of Indians in the army created suspicion in the minds of the

Indian people. Most of the sepoys were from the Palayams. After the death of their great leaders like Pulithevan, Kattabomman, Marudhu brothers, it left deep scar in the hearts of the rebels. The sepoys were from both Tamil and Kanada speaking regions and they exchanged betel leaf in order to find themselves together for the attainment of a common goal.

The strict discipline, new weapons, new methods and changes in dress code introduced by the British created resentment among the sepoys. Hindus were prohibited from wearing ornaments like earings and caste marks on their forehead. Muslims were required to shave their beard and trim their moustache. This also created a strong resentment among the soldiers.

The immediate cause was the introduction of the Agnew Turban designed by General Agnew. It resembled the European hat bearing different colours affixed by a badge with the symbol of the cross on it. This annoyed both the Hindu and Muslim sepoys. Those sepoys who refused to wear the Turban were punished by 500 – 900 lashes and they were also terminated from the service.

Course of the Rebellion

The rebellion was instigated by the sons of Tipu Sultan and they secretly planned the revolt. On July

9th 1806, Tipu's daughter's wedding celebrations were going on inside the fort and the sepoys gathered to attend the function. Amidst the celebrations in the early hours of July 10th, the sepoys suddenly attacked the British officers and the British troops. By dawn, the mutineers took complete control of the fort and hoisted the flag of Tipu at the Vellore fort and proclaimed his son Fateh Hyder as the king.

Major Coots who was outside the fort rushed to Arcot to inform General Gillesby who in turn returned with a huge army and entered the unarmed fort and attacked the mutineers. More than 800 sepoys were shot dead and some of them were hanged to death. Thus the uprising was brought to an end by General Gillesby. Peace was restored at the fort and the English brought Vellore fort under their control.

Causes for the Failure of the Mutiny

There was no proper leadership. The revolt was not well organised. Tipu's sons did not have proper training in warfare as they spent most of their life time in prison. The sepoys could not get the support and supplies on time from the native rulers.

Results

Many Indian soldiers were arrested and imprisoned. Tipu's family was taken to Calcutta and kept in prison for more than six years. The Mutiny revealed the patriotic and the revengeful attitude of the Indians towards the British. Though the mutiny failed, it became a prelude to the First War of Indian Independence of 1857.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Vellore mutiny took place in the year _____.
a) 1806 b) 1807 c) 1808
2. The sepoys were influenced by _____.
a) English officers b) Tipu's family c) Native rulers
3. The Governor of madras presidency at the time of Vellore sepoy mutiny was _____.
a) Wiliam Bentinck b) Caronwallis c) Robert Clive

II) Fill in the blanks.

1. The Indian sepoys refused to wear the _____ which led to the mutiny.

2. _____ was outside the fort when the mutiny started.
3. The mutiny was suppressed by _____.

III) Match the following.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1. Tipu's son | - Turban |
| 2. Agnew | - Mutineers |
| 3. Sepoys | - Bentinck |
| 4. Governor of Madras | - Fateh Hyder |

IV) Answer the following questions briefly.

1. When and where did the mutiny start?
2. Why did the sepoys Vellore revolt?
3. What was the immediate cause for the revolt?
4. Mention the results of the revolt?

V) Answer in detail.

1. What were the causes for Vellore Mutiny?
2. Trace the course of the mutiny? Why did the mutiny fail?

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Place visit

Visit Vellore Fort and collect data.

2. Oratorical competition

“Vellore revolt is a forerunner for Indian Independence”.

3. Group Discussion

The British Military restriction is the main cause of Vellore revolt - Discuss in group.

SHAKTHII ACADEMY

SOCIAL STUDIES - HISTORY

STANDARD - NINE

COURSES OFFERED

- **BANK CLERK/PO/SO**
- **INSURANCE**
- **TANCET-MBA**
- **GRE, GMAT**
- **IELTS , TOEFL**
- **RRB, SSC**
- **TNPSC Group II, Group II- A, Group IV, VAO**

HISTORY

1. ANCIENT CIVILIZATIONS

The history of the human race covers the entire period since man first appeared on earth. By about 4000 BC the accumulated knowledge and skills of the preceding thousands of years, combined with new discoveries of metals enabled man to live in urban societies. The emergence of this stage was a revolution in human history known as the metal age revolution. It led to the emergence of the first civilizations which are known as **River Valley Civilizations**. Such river valley civilizations were noted for the effective use of metal for cultivation, weapons and domestic use.

The **Bronze Age civilizations** which flourished in different parts of the world between 5000 BC and 500 BC were

1. The **Indus Valley civilization** or the **Harappan culture** 3250 to 2750 BC.
2. The **Tigris – Euphrates civilization of Mesopotamia**, the modern Iraq (3500 BC to 1000 BC)
3. The **Nile Valley Civilization** in Egypt (4000 – 500BC)
4. The **Hwang –Ho** or the **Yellow River civilization** in **China** (3500-3000 BC)

The Nile Valley Civilization of Egypt

Among the four civilizations of the **Bronze Age**, the **civilization of Egypt** which flourished in the valley of the Nile, is believed to be the oldest of which systematic records are available. The **archaeologists** were able to find huge **pyramids**, the mysterious **sphinx**, ruins of temples and **tombs**, furniture

and clothing and even well preserved human bodies (**Mummies**). Egypt is known as the “daughter of Nile”. Herodotus, the Greek historian aptly called Egypt, “the gift of Nile” The Egyptian civilization was at its pinnacle of glory about 5000 years ago.

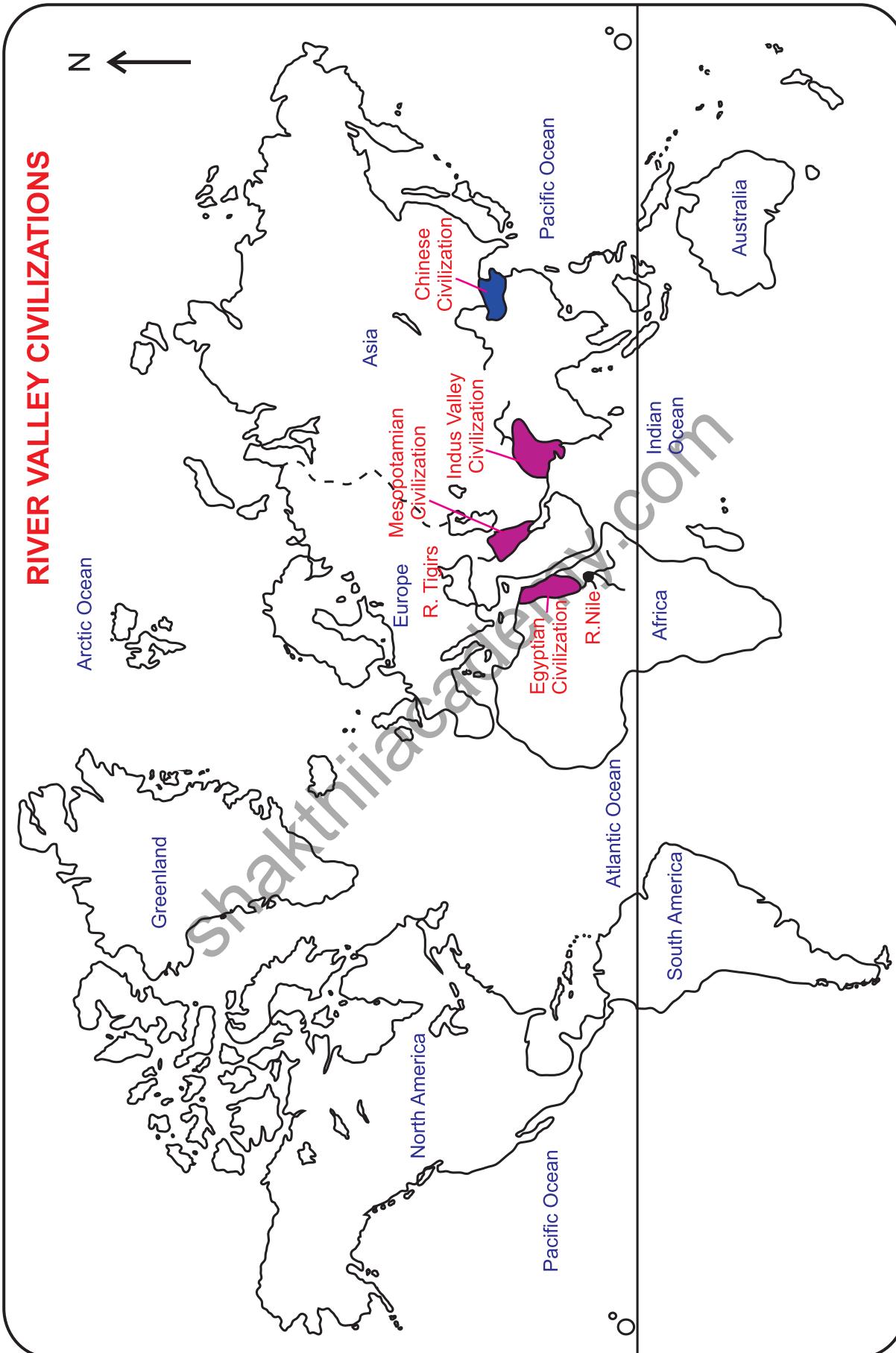
Political Condition

The people of ancient Egypt consisted of various tribes. The innumerable tribal chieftains (**Nomes**) were gradually merged into two kingdoms under strong kings. Later on entire Egypt was united under one **Pharaoh**. The Pharaohs were absolute monarchs. The kings were believed to have descended from the **Sun God**. They lived in great luxury. The Pharaoh was the chief justice, chief priest and chief commander. After his death his body was preserved in the form of a ‘**Mummy**’. He had the power to declare wars and make treaties. The foremost among Egyptian kings of this period were **Thutmose I**, and **Thutmose III**. Emperor Thutmose III was known as the “Napoleon of Egypt”.

Socio – Economic Condition

The Egyptian society was composed of three classes namely the **aristocracy**, the **middle class** and the **slaves**. The slaves were forced to work for the construction of pyramids, temples, canals and dams. Generally speaking, the king and his lords were at the top in the social ladder. The priests and the nobles formed a privileged class. They lived a life of comfort. Merchants, artisans, small land owners formed the middle class of the society.

RIVER VALLEY CIVILIZATIONS

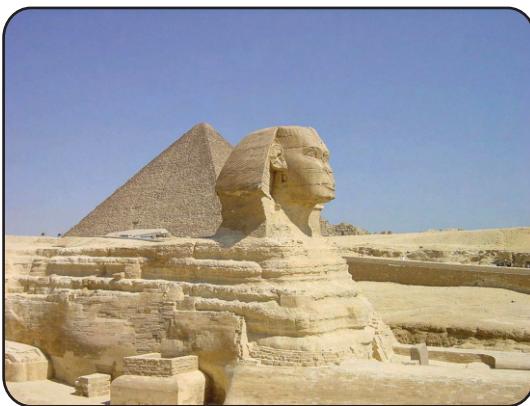


The position of women was a unique one. They practiced monogamy and endogamy.

Agriculture was the main occupation. They introduced the process of irrigation by digging canals in basins. They knew the art of making several articles of metal, particularly of bronze. **Ship-building** became an important trade, along with pottery and cloth weaving. Both internal and external trade were highly developed. Their main means of transport was navigation in the river Nile and the sea.

Religion

Religion dominated the **political, economic, intellectual and social life** of the Egyptians. The ancient Egyptians practiced polytheism. Their principal god was the **Sun God, Amon or Aton or Ra**; the other important gods and goddesses were **Osiris, Isis and Horus**. The images of these gods were carved out of big stones. They were shaped as partly human and partly animal. They believed that man would have a resurrected life, and a trial by God. This religious belief inspired them to **mummify** their **corpses** and to construct pyramids (**Tombs of the Pharaohs**) to preserve dead bodies. The great **pyramid of Gizeh** built for the **Pharaoh Cheops (Khufu)** is 481 feet high.



Pyramid of Gizeh

The preserved and embalmed dead body inside the tomb was called mummy. The mummy was placed in a wooden **coffin** and it was sealed in a stone box called **Sarcophagus**.

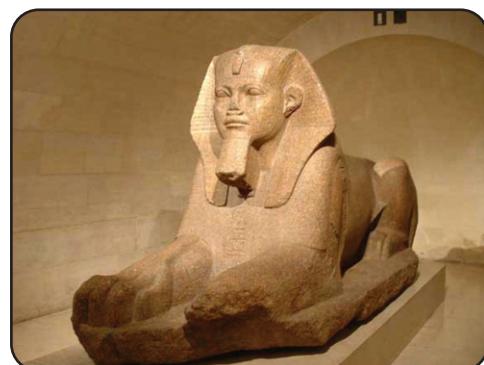


The Mummy case

In order to make the journey of the Pharaoh to the next world comfortable, food, clothing and furniture were placed inside the tomb. **Pharaoh Amenhotep IV**, popularly known as **Akhnaton** enforced **monotheism**, with **Aton** as the only god to be worshiped by people. He also declared that he was against fighting and wars.

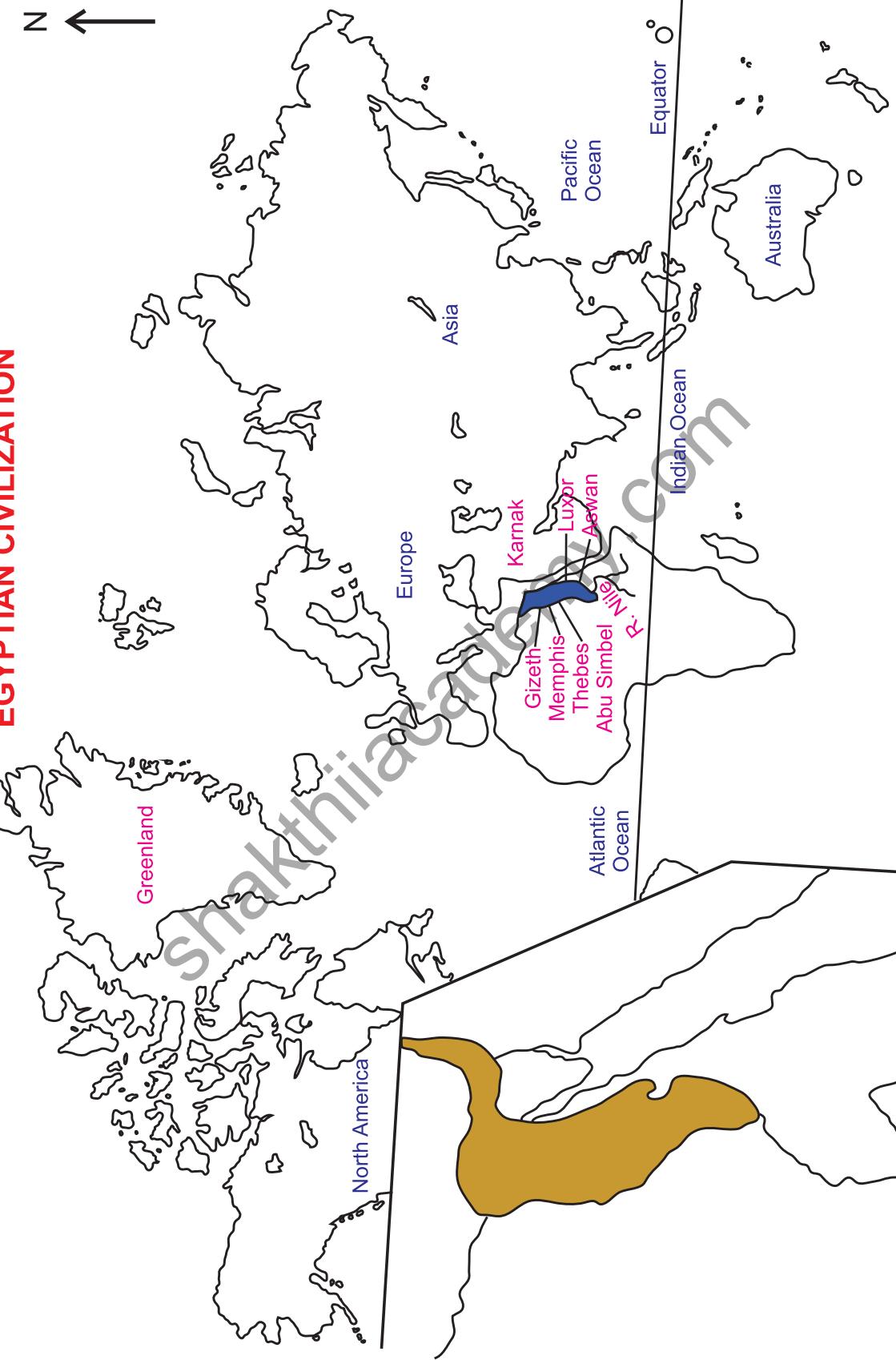
Art and Architecture

Egypt was the earliest home of art, architecture and sculpture. The pyramids and the sphinx are the most



The Sphinx

EGYPTIAN CIVILIZATION



beautiful and wonderful specimens of their architecture and art. The sphinx is a **mythological** animal with the head of a man and body of a lion.

The Greek historian and the father of history **Herodotus** wrote that 30,000 men worked for 20 years to complete the structure of the pyramid of Pharaoh **Cheops (Khufu) at Gizeh**. It is regarded as one of the seven wonders of the ancient world. The temple at **Karnak** is a fine monument.



The Karnak Temple

Writing

The ancient writing of Egypt was known as **Hieroglyphics**. Hieroglyphics is a Greek word, which means Holy picture. They first used a system of pictographs. There were more than 2000 pictograph symbols. Writing materials consisted of **papyrus, reed pen, ink and ink pot**.

Egyptian literature is predominantly religious in nature which included book of '**the dead**' and '**coffin texts**'. They also discovered the secrets of eclipses, movements of planets and prepared a solar calendar. They calculated the days between floods in the Nile and fixed the solar year with 365 days. The cycle of Zodiac is a gift of

Egyptians to the science of **Astronomy** and **Astrology**. They prepared star tables. Tremendous progress in the field of medicine and surgery were made. They were the first to introduce a decimal system and to develop geometry.

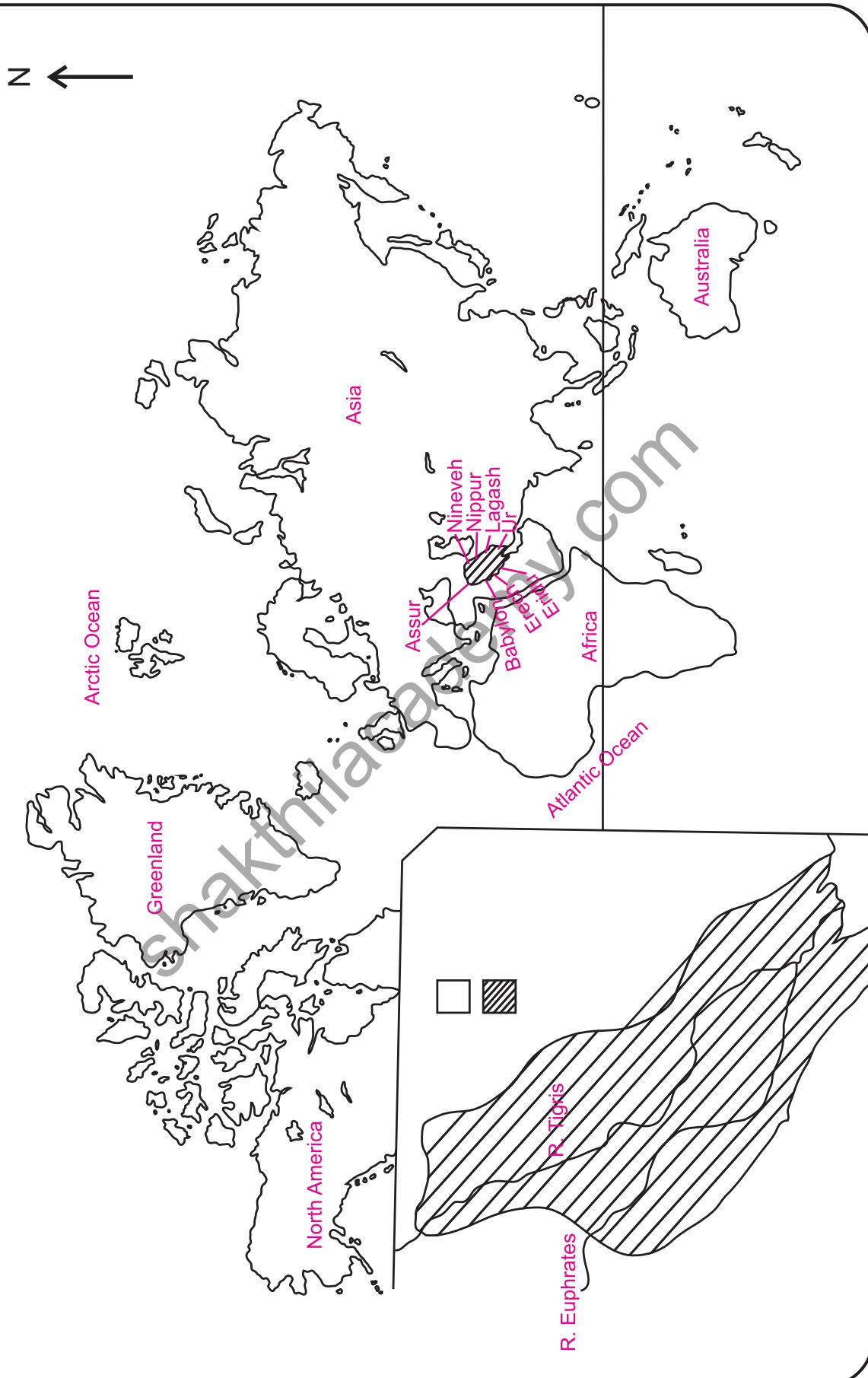
Trade and Commerce

Agriculture was the main occupation of the Egyptians. The Nile Valley became the centre of great economic activity. They carried on trade in **ivory, gold, ebony, ostrich feathers** and **slaves** with Nubia and Sudan. They imported spices, scents, colours, fine cloth and sandal from India. They learnt the art of making jewellery, glassware and furniture. The world is deeply indebted to them not only for their contribution to the civilization but also for their art and crafts. Thus Egypt made several unique and valuable contributions to the world.

Mesopotamian Civilization

The great Mesopotamian civilization comprises the Sumerian, Babylonian and Assyrian cultures. This civilization flourished in a region between two rivers, i.e, Euphrates and Tigris, hence the name Mesopotamia (meso - in between , potam - rivers; i.e, the land between two rivers). Both the rivers, the Euphrates 2760 kms long and the Tigris 2000 km long, have their source in the mountains of Armenia. The valley between these two rivers is in the shape of crescent and the region is fertile, hence is known as the '**fertile crescent**'. The Garden of Eden mentioned in the Old Testament of the Bible was believed to have been situated within this region. The fertility of the soil and availability of water

MESOPOTAMIAN CIVILIZATION

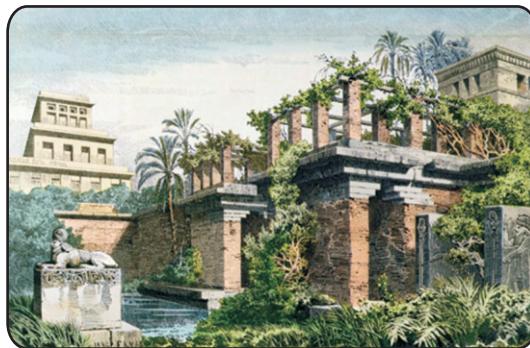


attracted many tribes to this region. The peculiar feature of the Mesopotamian civilization was its complex character.

Political Life

The word Sumerian means black headed. The historians tell us that they did not belong to the Aryan or the Semitic race. They settled in the southern part of Mesopotamia near the Persian Gulf. They adopted a city state type of government. Sumer was their chief city state, so they were called Sumerians. Their city states were governed by patesis (Priest Kings). The most important city-states were Ur, Larsa, Kish, Lagas Eridu and Ammon. They had no physical barriers to prevent immigrations. So their kingdom was conquered by the Semitic king of Akkad, Saragon I.

Bab-Ilu was made the capital of Amorite by king SUMMU ABU, and their city was popularly known as Babylon. Amorites were called **Babylonians** and their powerful king was Hammurabi. His reign witnessed all round prosperity and was sometimes described as the golden age of Mesopotamia. Later on Assyrians conquered Mesopotamia. They were cruel and believed in terror activities. The chief centres of Assyrian power were Assur and Nineveh. Later on they were conquered by the Chaldeans. The Chaldean empire reached the zenith of its prosperity



Hanging Garden of Babylon

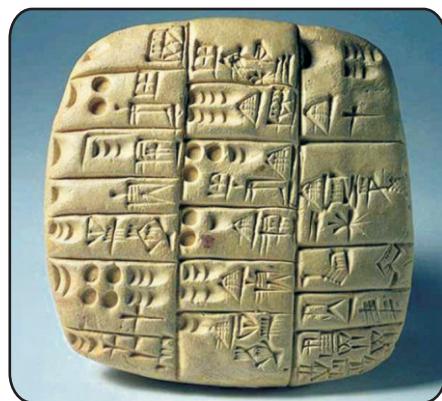
during the reign by Nebuchad Nezzar. He built the famous "Hanging Garden", which is considered as one of the wonders of the ancient world. As a result of the joint contribution of the Sumerians, the Babylonians and the Assyrians, there flourished a great civilization in Mesopotamia for long time.

Social Life

The society was divided into three strata, the farmers, labourers and the slaves. The social regulation was based on religion. The temples were the centres of education. Women had a honoured position. Agriculture was highly developed. They carried trade with Indus and Nile Valley people. The Babylonian merchants carried on commerce by barter at first, and the city of Babylon became the centre of the international commerce.

Cuneiform Script

The Sumerians evolved a system of writing with wedge shaped letters called **cuneiform**. They wrote on wet clay tablets. They were then baked or dried. A large number of these clay tablets have been found. They used nearly 350 signs. Their writings were from right to left. Most of the books of this period described gods and their activities. The most famous of these is the Epic of Gilgamesh.



Cuneiform Script

Science and Astronomy

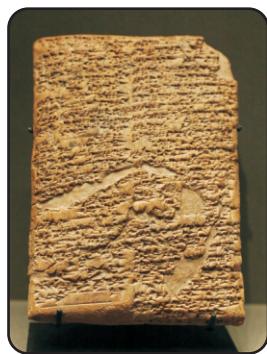
Science, especially astronomy and medicine made astonishing progress. Sun dials and water clocks were used to measure time. They made use of a Lunar calendar of 365 days divided into 12 months. They divided the circle into 360 degrees (60×6). The ziggurat or towered building also served as an observatory. The Sumerians knew planets like Jupiter, Venus, Saturn and Mars. Ancient Chaldean astronomers Naburi and Kidinnu made many contributions to the science of astronomy.

They adopted units of sixty to count time. The Sumerians mostly used Sexagesimal system of counting. The concept of seven days constituting a week also goes back to the days of Chaldeans.

Religion

Religion played an important role. Their chief god was Marduk and his queen Nanshe. Ishta the mother of the gods possessed control over reproduction among plants and beasts. The Gods named Shamash, Nannar and Tammuz were worshiped by them. The tower temples known as Ziggurats were built by them. Their sculptures were inferior to those of the Egyptians.

Code of Hammurabi



Hammurabi Code

Hammurabi was the greatest of the Babylonian rulers. He is famous in history as a warrior, conqueror, administrator and builder. The code of Hammurabi is the first written code of laws known to history. This had earned Hammurabi the title "**The World's first Law giver**". The code covered almost all aspects of man's life, for example debt, marriage, divorce, property, payment of taxes etc., The Laws were engraved in Semitic Language of the Amorites on a piece of stone at the top of which was a scene representing Hammurabi receiving the laws from the sun god. The code contained 4 parts namely a civil code, a code of procedure, a penal code and commercial code. The civil code recognized 3 classes of citizens, freemen, semi-freemen and slaves. The second part dealt with courts, rules and appointment of civil and religious judges. The penal code fixed punishment of crimes. This law based on the idea of "**an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth**" is similar to the Mosaic Law. The laws fixed prices and wages, organized trade and fixed the rate of interests. These Laws, were engraved on a tall column of 2.5m high in cuneiform script and exhibited to the public. 285 Laws were arranged in logical manner.

Art and Architecture

The Mesopotamians developed a distinct form of architecture. Arches, tombs and pillars were the notable features of their architecture.



Temple of Karnak

The tower of Babel was considered one of the wonders of the ancient world and another which finds mention in the Bible was a Ziggurat raised to the Sun God. According to one account it rose to a height of about 200m and measured about 95m wide at the base.

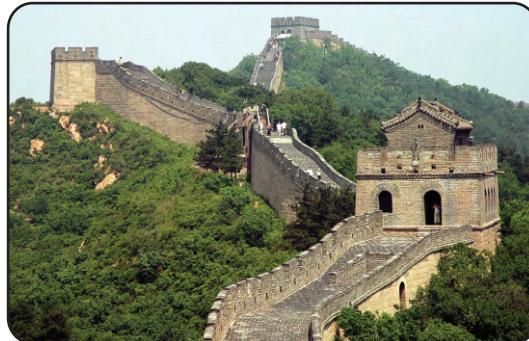
The early Chinese Civilization or The Hwang-Ho Valley Civilization

The Hwang-Ho is known as Yellow river because it brings the Yellow alluvial soil and deposits it on its banks. The civilization represents the largest unbroken chain of development known to humanity. The role of rivers Hwang-Ho, and Yang-tze Kiang are significant in shaping the culture, civilization and History of China. The Hwang-Ho is called sorrow of China as its annual floods cause widespread destruction of both possessions and to agriculture. The geography and topography of China caused the civilization to develop in isolation. The Chinese people belonged to the Mongol race. They have yellow complexion, short, oblique eyes, snubbed nose and black hair.

Political History of Ancient China

Fu Xi was the first known king. The Shang dynasty (1766–1122.BC) unified the territories of Yellow river. The succeeding Chou dynasty and its ruler Wu-Wang introduced many reforms, and the Chou Age is known as the classical Age of China. After the decline of Chou Dynasty China became disunited and feudal lords reigned supreme. Hence this age is known as feudal age. Shi – Huang – Ti who belonged to Chin dynasty, put an end to the feudal control.

He is remembered in history as the builder of the great wall of China, one of the wonders of the ancient world.



The Great wall of China

The Chinese honoured the teachings of great philosophers named Confucius, and Lao tze.

Socio - Economic Condition

The Chinese society was divided into the privileged and unprivileged classes. The nobility and the priests enjoyed most of the privileges in China. The life of peasants was generally miserable. Slavery and forced Labour were common features. Women were not given much freedom in the society. The system of foot binding was common among women. They had no right to property. However there was no hereditary bureaucracy in China. The officials were chosen from a class known as “Mandarin” who were selected through a series of public examinations. After the spread of Confucianism, there was marked change in the society.

The Chinese cleared and drained the Hwang-Ho basin and cultivated crops; there canal irrigation was in practice. They wove silk garments which attracted the attention of the world trade. They developed the ceramic art to a very fine manner and even now ceramic cups are called China cups. The horse was known to them and was used in warfare.

The earliest commodities of trade in China were silk, ceramics, salt and iron. The trade was taken through the

inland canals. There were guilds to protect the interest of the merchants. During this period commercial contacts with Asia, South East Asia, the Mediterranean region and South Asia were established. The popular drink "Tea" is also a gift of the ancient Chinese to the modern world.

Religion and Philosophy

Chinese believed in ancestor worship and made offerings to them. They also worshipped petty village deities and believed in the existence of good and evil spirits. To welcome the good spirits and ward off evil spirits, they used to build towers in each village and burst crackers to ward off evil spirits. They believed that a mythological dragon was protecting their land and people. The great Chinese thinker LaoTse condemned ritualistic practices, and advised people to go with nature. Confucius, the great Chinese philosopher emphasized that, moral living, discipline and duty consciousness alone would lead us to peaceful and prosperous society. Later on Buddhism was introduced and it soon became the most influential religion in China.

Chinese Script

The Chinese developed a pictographic script and later brought out many changes in it. Their writing was done on bones or tortoise shells with the help of some sharp instrument. In 2nd century A.D they invented paper. Silk pieces were also used for writing. Ink was invented in 5th Century AD. The Chinese pencils were made of bamboo.

Some of the valuable scientific discoveries owe their origin to ancient China. Theories of Lunar and Solar eclipses were also developed. They

made some scientific inventions like the Water Mill, the Mariner's compass, gun powder and paper currency.



Water Mill

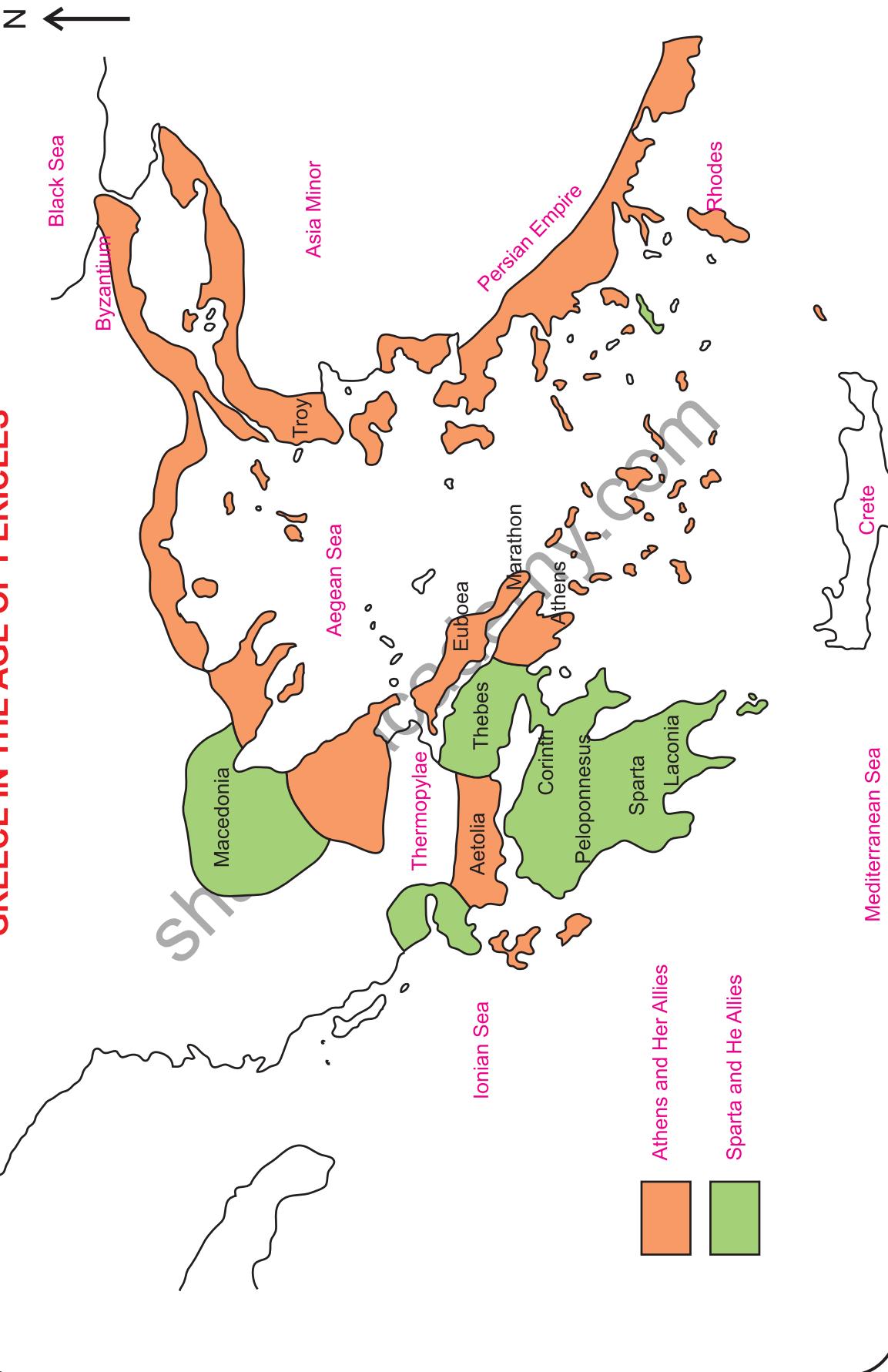
An anatomical study of human bodies was popular. In mathematics they introduced the abacus method. One of the noblest contributions of ancient China was its art of block printing. The Chinese civilization has left an indelible mark on human progress and cultural legacy of the world.

Civilization of Europe Greek and Roman Civilization Greek Civilization

Greece is situated in the Balkan Peninsula on the south eastern part of Europe, Balkan Peninsula is separated from Asia Minor by Aegean Sea. The early Greeks came and settled in Greece in different groups as Achaeans, Ionians and Dorians. They came from the Danube River Valley. Greece is a peninsula washed by the Adriatic, the Mediterranean and the Aegean seas. The main land of Greece is full of rugged mountains. Its crisscross ranges cut up the main land into hundreds of valleys.

One of the significant features of Greek civilization has been their city states. Athens, Sparta, Corinth, Thebes etc. were the important city states in ancient Greece. Each of the city states

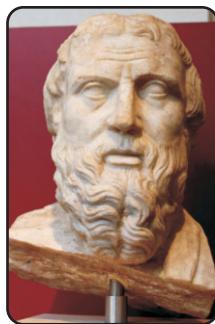
GREECE IN THE AGE OF PERICLES



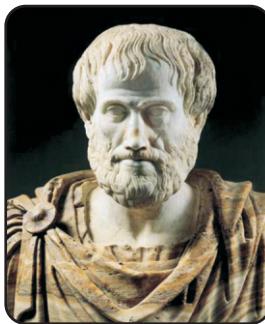
had its own government and rulers. Democratic Governments were set up. The city states often quarrelled among themselves. In the end there emerged, two powerful city states of Sparta and Athens. The Athenian democracy reached its zenith during the rule of Pericles. Ultimately the wars and conquests of Philip and Alexander of Macedonia put an end to the city states and Alexander built the first Greek Empire. As a result of this, trade developed between Europe and Asia. During the 2nd Century BC the Romans attacked the Greeks and Greece became a part of the Roman Empire.

Contributions of Ancient Greece to World culture

Ancient Greece has contributed a lot to enrich the culture of the world. In the field of language and literature the contribution of Greece is unparalleled. The Iliad and Odyssey are the great epics written by a blind poet Homer. Herodotus, Thucydides and Plutarch were famous historians and biographers of ancient Greece. The most famous Greek philosophers were Socrates, Plato and Aristotle. Plato was a student of Socrates. He wrote the book "**The Republic**". Aristotle was a philosopher and a scientist, and he was also Alexander's teacher. Socrates is regarded as the father of Western philosophy. Herodotus is known as the 'father of history'.



Herodotus



Aristotle

The Greeks considered science and philosophy as two sides of the same coin. Hippocrates is considered the '**father of western medicine**'. Ptolemy, a geographer and astronomer believed that the earth was the centre of the universe (geocentric theory). The Greek contribution to the science of Mathematics, especially to geometry was really great. Pythagoras was a great mathematician, astronomer, astrologer and philosopher.

The temples in ancient Greece especially that of Zeus in Alexandria are the best specimens of Greek art and architecture. The best example of Greek architecture is the temple dedicated to goddess Athena in Parthenon. Myron and Phidias were the famous sculptors of ancient Greece. The Greeks were pioneers in the field of sports and games too. They used to conduct the Olympiad festival once in every four years since 776BC. This proved to be the forerunner of the Modern Olympic games.

achievement of Myron
ancient Greeks in the spheres of philosophy, literature, science and sports are marvellous. It is the Greeks who gave the world the idea of freedom, namely freedom of thought, speech or writing.



The Roman Civilization

The Apennine peninsula in the centre of the Mediterranean region was the cradle of the Roman civilization. That peninsular territory is called "**Italy**" and the name Italy is of Greek origin. The river basins of "**Po**" and "**Tiber**" were the centres of

civilizational activities. The Alps mountain ranges in the north prevent the cold polar winds from penetrating into Italy, thus provide a very pleasant climate to Italy. In fact the Roman civilization can be deemed as Italian Civilization.

In the beginning monarchical system prevailed in Italy. There were Assemblies and Senates to advise and assist the kings. In due course, kingships were given up and "republics" were established. Of these republics the Republic of Rome emerged as the most powerful one. It is believed that the city of Rome was founded in B.C. 753 by two brothers named Romulus and Rhemus. By 6th century B.C. it became a Republic. The "Senate" was the legislative wing of the Republic. In that senate the propertied and influential class known as the Patricians wielded much influence. The common people who had no property were called "Plebians". After a protracted struggle, the plebians too gained representations in the senate. The administrative powers were in the hands of three elected consuls. The plebians later on secured recognition of their rights through codes of law. These codes engraved in slabs of woods were known as the "Laws of Twelve Tables".

Rome in the process of its expansion, had to fight three wars with the state of Carthage in North Africa. These wars were called the Punic wars and were fought between 264 BC to 146 BC. The brave Carthaginian general Hannibal was finally defeated. All these wars made Rome a society of slaves and slave holders. The rich vied with one another to possess slaves and accumulate wealth which resulted in moral decay of the whole society. The

rule of the Consuls was followed by the rise of Julius Caesar, the most powerful general and popular leader and the foremost of the dictators of Rome. Though he introduced many reforms in the senate and improved the condition of the poor, the enemies of Caesar murdered him in a senate meeting in 44 BC. After his death, his nephew Octavious Caesar became the undisputed master of the Roman Empire. He was given the title of 'Augustus' meaning the "magnificent". He ruled for forty one years. He completed the work which Caesar started. This period was known as "Golden Age of Rome"



Julius Caesar

Socio-Economic Condition

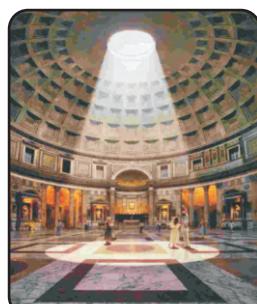
Agriculture was the chief occupation of the Romans. They grew barley, wheat, beans, grapes, figs etc. Along with agriculture, they domesticated animals, such as oxen, sheep, horses, asses and goats. Roman nobles employed large number of slaves for doing agricultural work and cattle rearing. The Romans had trade relations with India, Arabia, and China. Once Rome's expanded territory there arose another class in society. This class consisted of slaves, who were engaged to work in estates. As time passed on, the slaves began to occupy a high position in the state. Roman conquests and its affluence, made the rich squander their wealth in extravagance.

Contribution of the Roman civilization to the world

The most lasting contribution of the Romans was in the field of Law. The Roman Law developed in three main branches as (1) The civil Law, (2) The people's Law (3) The Natural Law. These Laws were codified by a later ruler Justinian and that code is known as the "**Corpus Juris Civilis**" or "**Justinian code**". The Roman concept of "**Pax Romagna**" ensured rule of law throughout the empire and it prohibited discriminations in Judicial procedures.

Religion played an important part in Roman government and life. They worshipped many gods; Janus, the double faced god, protected their home and family, Jupiter was the god of sky and Mars protected their armies. Venus was worshipped as the goddess of love. Prayers and sacrifices were offered by the priests on behalf of the Roman people. At first the emperors were hostile to Christianity and persecuted Christians. Christianity was popular among the slaves. Then in 313 AD Roman emperor Constantine made Christianity a state religion. In due course Rome became the seat of the Pope, the religious head of the Christians.

Roman art shows distinct Greek influence. They copied the Greek style in the construction of columns, or pillars. One of the most famous temple



Pantheon Temple

was that of the Pantheon. Pompey was a great architect. Their contributions to architecture are the arch and the dome. They developed mural paintings.

The Romans developed their own alphabet and their language was known as Latin. Rome produced some remarkable literary figures. Livy wrote History of Rome. Another famous historian was Tacitus. His "**Annals and Histories**" is a trust worthy work on Roman Government and society. Virgil wrote an epic in poetry. Cicero was a versatile genius. Seneca, Plautus and Terence were the most popular Roman dramatists who borrowed liberally from the Greeks. Cicero, Seneca and Marcus Aurelius Antoninus were notable philosophers. '**Meditations**' written by Marcus Aurelius is considered to be a master piece of stoic philosophy.

In the field of science, the Romans improved the medical science, Pliny, the Elder wrote a Natural History which contains scientific facts. Ptolemy a Greek and a great astronomer and geographer lived in the Roman empire. Galen was the greatest physician of his time. He studied the respiratory system and related diseases and wrote number of medical treatises.

The world is indebted to the Roman's for their share in the march of human civilization. The Romans acted as agents to spread and preserve much of what the ancient Greeks had left behind as their legacy. The Latin language, the concept of Pax Romagna (emphasising on one world, one citizenship and one law) the military system, works of engineering and codified law are precious contributions of the Romans to the world civilization.

FEATURES OF DIFFERENT CIVILIZATIONS

MESOPOTAMIAN CIVILIZATION	EGYPTIAN CIVILIZATION
Situated in the valley of two rivers, the Euphrates and the Tigris. J.H Breasted described the area as the “fertile crescent”. Different groups like the Sumerians, the Amorites, the Assyrians and the Chaldeans ruled. The form of writing was cuneiform. Epic of Gilgamesh was famous. The code of Hammurabi is the first written code of laws to history. They were polytheistic in the religion. They worshipped Enil, Shamash, Ishtar, Venus, Marduk, Saturn etc., The tower of Babel is one of the wonders of the ancient world. The hanging gardens of Babylon were also another wonder of the ancient world. The contributions in the field of Astronomy, Medicine and Geometry were noteworthy. The Ziggurat served as an observatory. The Astronomers Nabu and Kidinna were famous.	Situated in the valley of Nile. Described as the “Gift of Nile” or the “Daughter of the Nile”. Monarchs known as Pharaohs ruled. The form of writing was Hieroglyphics. Egyptians were first to make paper from a plant called papyrus. They were worshippers of Nature, Ra, Osiris, Iris and Horus was their god and goddesses. The embalmed dead body known as Mummy was famous. The Pyramids and the Sphinx were the most beautiful and wonderful specimens of Egyptian art and architecture. The most famous and the largest of pyramid is found in Giza. The temple of Karnak and Abu Simbel were fine monuments of the Egyptian temple architecture. The contribution in the field of Mathematics was astonishing. The cycle of Zodiac is a gift of Egyptians to the science of Astronomy and Astrologers.

FEATURES OF DIFFERENT CIVILIZATIONS

CHINESE CIVILIZATION

Developed on the banks of two rivers the Yangtse and the Howang-Ho.

Described as “Yellow River” and also referred as the “River of Sorrow”.

System of Monarchy was followed.

The teaching of Confucius was very popular and important.

The hot beverage “Tea” is a gift to modern world.

“The great wall of China” measured about 2880 km in length, is considered as one of the wonders of the ancient world. It was built by the Chinese Emperor Chin-Shi-Hung-Ti.

The Chinese Scholars have also contributed to the Astronomical Science. They could also foretell the Eclipse correctly.

GREEK CIVILIZATION

The land of Greece lies in the region of the Balkan peninsula.

The land juts into the Mediterranean Sea.

Different groups as Achaeans, Ionians and Dorian's settled in Greece.

The most famous philosophers were Socrates, Plato, Aristotle.

Iliad and Odyssey were the great epics. The language was of Indo-European origin.

The Greeks were masters in Epic, Drama, Poetry and History.

Homer, Aeschylus, Sophocles and Euripides were dramatists.

Herodotus, Thucydides and Plutarch were historians and Biographers.

Science and Philosophy are the two sides of the same coin. Euclid was a eminent mathematician Hippocrates is the father of modern medicine.

The best architecture of Greece is the temple dedicated to Goddess Athena in pantheon. Myron and Phidias were the famous Sculptors of ancient Greece.

ROMAN CIVILIZATION

Italy was the centre of the early Roman Civilization. River Tiber runs through the centre of Italy.

Oligarchy was the form of government and the idea of republicanism was their contribution.

“Vesta” the goddess of the earth was worshipped. Jupiter, Mars, Juno and Mercury were the other gods.

Romans developed their own Alphabet and Latin became their language.

Cicero, Marcus and Aurelius were the most famous Philosophers of Rome. Horace and Virgil were famous Poets.

The Romans contribution to architecture is the Arch and the Dome.

The Romans improved the Medical Science by giving medicines freely to the poor. The significant contribution of Romans is their calendar.

EXERCISE**I) Choose the correct answer.**

1. _____ was called as "father of medicine".
 a) Alexander b) Hippocrates c) Aristotle d) Galileo
2. The Egyptian king was called as _____.
 a) Rajan b) Guru c) Pharaoh d) Minister
- 3) The Sumerian calendar based on _____ days in a week.
 a) Five b) Seven c) Ten d) Nine
4. Gun powder was invented by _____.
 a) Egyptians b) Babylonians c) Chinese d) Indians
- 5) The Egyptian civilization grew along the _____ river.
 a) Nile b) Euphrates c) yellow d) Sind

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------|
| 1. Pyramids | Hilly region |
| 2. Great wall | Babylon |
| 3. Hanging garden | Rome |
| 4. All roads lead to | China |
| 5. Greece | Egypt |
| | Nile |
| | Euphrates |

III) Answer all the Questions given under each caption.

- 1) Egyptian civilization
 - a) Who built the great Pyramid of Gizeh ?
 - b) What was the Egyptian king called?
 - c) How did the Egyptians preserve the dead bodies ?
 - d) What is a Pyramid ?
- 2) Chinese civilization.
 - a) What was known as the "sorrow of China"?
 - b) Name the great philosophers of China ?
 - c) Which was the popular drink in China ?
 - d) Who built the Great wall of China ?

IV) Answer briefly.

- 1) How was the Egyptian society divided ?
- 2) Write a note on Hanging garden?
- 3) Name the two great epics of the greeks.
- 4) Mention two important contributions of the Chinese to the world?

V) Answer in a Paragraph.

- 1) What were the gifts of China to the modern world ?
- 2) Write a note on the contribution of Romans to civilization.

VI) a) Mark the following places on the outline map of the world.

- 1) Egypt, China, Babylon, Assiriya, Greece, Rome
- 2) Prepare an album to show the development of the human race.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Collect pictures and write a small note on the wonders of the ancient world. Paste them in your scrap book.
2. Collect samples of scripts used by the people of ancient civilization and paste them in your scrap book.
3. Have a discussion on the differences in lifestyle between modern man and ancient man.
4. Collect the information on the History of the Olympics games and prepare a chart to show it evolved. Show the difference and similarities between the ancient games and modern games.
5. Conduct a quiz on the features of ancient civilizations.

2. Intellectual Awakening of 6th Century B.C

Confucius,Zoroaster,Mahavira and Buddha

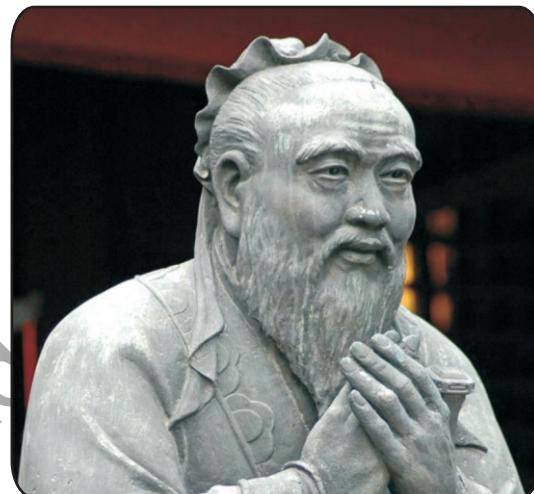
The sixth century B.C. witnessed a great intellectual awakening in various regions of the world. The reformers of all over the world raised their voice against the existing social beliefs and systems and endeavoured to reconstruct them on a rational basis. In Persia, Zoroaster launched his protest against the prevailing religious superstitions and in China, people welcomed the philosophic teachings of Confucius which gave them a higher conception of duties in life. It was an age when people in India were disgusted with old philosophical, religious and social dogmas and were striving for holistic alternatives. The new philosophy of revolt was anti-establishment in form and anti-caste in spirit. The ultimate aim of the revolt was not only spiritual but also materialistic. In due course some of the socio-intellectual movements assumed a religious form. (Example: Jainism, Zoroastrianism, Buddhism.)

The thinkers of the new movements were intellectual philosophers—and concerned with life as a philosophy of power and knowledge. In India such thinkers were the wandering teachers (**Sramanas**). They rejected the authority of the Vedas and Vedic priests, denounced the bloody sacrifices which constituted a very large part of the Religious rituals and they did not make their philosophy and doctrines, god-centric ones.

Confucianism

Early Chinese religion was

essentially a worship of spirits and ancestors, but there was a tendency towards monotheism in the form of worship of the supreme ruler or the spirit of heaven. Heaven was the chief nature-spirit, the forefather of the emperor, and chief of the ancestor spirits. Heaven was not considered a place.



Confucius

Confucius was not the founder of any religion nor was he even a religious reformer. In his own words, he was “**not a maker but a transmitter, believing in and loving the ancients**”. Like Gautama, he at first lived a life of luxury. His restless and penetrating mind would not allow him to remain in active. Like Socrates, Confucius was a great teacher. He established a school, in which he taught history, poetry and rules of propriety. “**A man's character**”, he said, “**is formed by the odes, developed by the rites (ceremony and courtesy), and perfected by music**”.

He spoke very little of gods and religious rituals, but spoke of disciplined society and of healthy social relations. Truthfulness and obedience

had to regulate social relations. Those who were in superior positions such as a **father, teacher, husband** or **king** had the responsibility of providing protection and fair treatment to the dependents; and if they failed in their responsibility, revolt would become unavoidable. Thus Confucius (**Kung-Fu-Tse**) was advocating a fair social order based on discipline and fairness to all. It would be difficult to overestimate the influence of Confucius on the Chinese people. Most Chinese scholars took pride in being his disciples. For more than 2,000 years, the philosophy of Confucius moulded and dominated the Chinese mind. **Confucianism, Christianity, and Buddhism** furnish the most conspicuous examples in the history of civilization, of efforts to convert into idealism the natural brutality of mankind.

Zoroastrianism

Before the advent of Zoroaster, the Persians followed a socio-religious faith that resembled the beliefs and practices of Early Vedic Aryans. At that time they practiced polytheism and worshipped several deities representing natural forces, like Mitra, Varuna, Surya etc; they indulged in costly, bloody and senseless rituals, leading to exploitation of people by

priestly class. Polytheistic faith and superstitions obstructed social unity, rational thought and moral life. Greed and selfishness ruined Persian Society. There was a need for a healthy philosophical base to redeem the Persian society from degeneration and chaos. It was at that time that Zoroaster (Zarathustra) appeared in Persia and gave them a better socio-religious order in the form of Zoroastrianism.

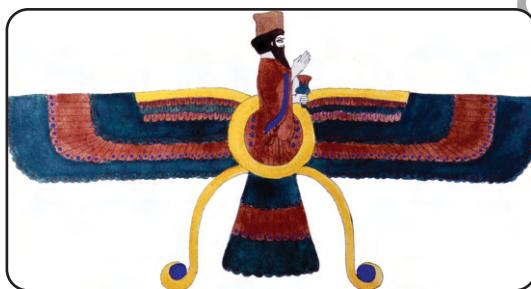
Zoroaster, the founder of Zoroastrianism was born in about 600 BC in North Western Iran. He was concerned about the superstitions, barbaric religious cults, polytheism and moral degeneration in Iran. He was pained to see that his people showed no discrimination between good and evil, right and wrong, individual greed and social need and between faith and superstitions. To begin with, he asked the people to give up polytheistic cults, and to accept Ahura Mazda as the only god, representing good and right. Ahura Mazda, personified as sun, fire and light, had been carrying on a relentless struggle against the evil forces (Asuras) who represented ignorance, selfishness and all vices. The struggle between good and evil became the central theme of Zoroastrianism. This struggle is manifested not only among humans, but also in all natural expressions. He asked his people to be with the good, and abjure everything that was evil so as to attain salvation and immortality. His concept of good and evil strengthened the moral base of Persian society and his monotheism served the cause of social unity among Persian people. The Zoroastrian Ahura Mazda cult did not involve any costly rituals.



Zoroaster

Zoroastrians could practice Mazda worship in the form of fire worship in their own houses. For them the body is only the instrument of spirits hence the corpse(dead body) did not deserve reverence or preservance. Hence the Parsees neither cremate nor bury their dead, instead they expose the corpses to disposal by nature (to decomposition or to be consumed by animals or birds). This method of disposal of the dead is considered as rejection of superstitious practices centered around death, and this contrasts the Egyptian practice of mummification. Zoroaster's teachings are found in Zend Avesta, the holy scripture of the Parsees.

The social unity brought about by Zoroastrianism ensured economic and political strength. Soon, the Persians built a political civilization and powerful empire. Their Achaemenian empire emerged as the largest empire in the middle east.



Ahura Mazda

In due course superstitious rituals, and priestly dominance crept into the Zoroastrian system. However the Zoroastrian concepts of monotheism and the ongoing struggle between the good and evil, the necessity of humans identifying themselves with the good for salvation, influenced the theologies and philosophies of Judaism, Christianity and Islam.

Jainism

Jainism and Buddhism in the 6th century B.C. satisfied the need of the time by introducing the most necessary changes. They recognised the realistic view of life. Their doctrines of Karma did not accept the belief that man's destiny is being pre-determined by supernatural forces. Instead, man's own activities (Karma) determine his future. Hence man can seek salvation not from religious rituals, but by righteous conduct.



Mahavira

Jainism was as old as the Rig Veda. It was a revolt against the then existing Brahmanism. The new system wanted to make religion simple and avoid irrational rituals. It gave new socio-religious code of conduct. The Jains claim that their religion derives its tenets from 24 preceptors of different ages. These preceptors are called Thirthankaras. The earliest Thirthankara was called Rishabha. However only the 23rd and 24th Thirthankaras are considered to be historical figures.

The 23rd Thirthankara, named Parsavanath, was a prince who lived

250 years before Mahavira. He became an ascetic and preached four disciplines to his disciples.

1. Non – injury to living beings (ahimsa)
2. Not to speak untruth
3. Not to steal
4. Not to possess

Vardhamana, the 24th Thirthankara was born in Kundagrama, near Vaisali, in 599 B.C. in a royal family. His father was Siddhartha and mother Trisala. Vardhamana married Yashodha and had a daughter. After the demise of his parents Mahavira renounced worldly life and became an ascetic. After twelve years of wandering and severe penance, Vardhamana attained the KevalaGnanam(realisation of ultimate truth) at the age of 42.

There after he came to be known as Jina (conqueror of senses) or Mahavira (great hero). He went on propagating his doctrine to people and princes for 30 years. He received patronage of powerful kings of the Gangetic valley (Bimbisara, Ajatasatru etc). The Jain sangha that he founded, helped to spread this new doctrines. At the age of 72 he died at Pava near Rajagriha.

Teachings of Mahavira or Doctrines of Jainism

Mahavira had no faith in God and also rejected the authority of the Vedas. He believed that the matter and soul were two eternal elements. The soul suffers due to impurities caused by its contact with the matter and is to be born again and again until it frees itself from the bondage of cycle of births. He preached the three gems i.e. ***Tri Ratnas; Right Knowledge, Right Faith and Right Conduct.*** Mahavira had a

strong faith in the doctrine of ahimsa or non – injury to any living being. Ahimsa became the most prominent principle of Jainism. The Jains started to cover their mouth with a piece of cloth, to prevent even a small insect from being killed. Care was taken not to injure even a plant or tree, nor to cause pain to men, birds and beasts. This principle was against the principle of animal sacrifice associated with yagnas.

Mahavira had no faith in the caste system, and preached equality of human beings. He stressed that all human beings, irrespective of their birth, could attain salvation from the cycle of life, i.e. death and rebirth, by leading a pure and austere life based on ahimsa. He advised his followers not to make any discrimination between man and man on the basis of colour or caste.

Jainism advocates the following principles to be followed by a householder

The state of Moksha or Nirvana can be attained by observing the following three principles or Tri Ratna. (Ratnatraya) i) Right Belief, ii) Right Knowledge, iii) Right Action. (Conduct)

The code of conduct that Mahavira preached has five disciplines

1. Non injury to living beings
2. Not to utter untruth
3. Not to steal
4. Not to posses and
5. To practice celibacy (Brahmacharya).

After the death of Maravira, Jains were split into two major groups. Those who followed the extreme tenets of Mahavira, and gave up clothes came to be known as Digambaras; others, who

practiced the simple disciplines of Parsavanath and wore white robes, were called Swetambaras. The Jains preferred people's languages to spread their messages. They contributed much to the native languages like Magadhi and Kannada. In Tamil they made rich contribution to the Sangam and post-Sangam literature. Many of the Sangam ethical works, Silappadikaram, five minor epics, and grammatical works like Yapperumkalam were authored by Jain Scholars.

Jainism had its influence on social, political and religious life of our people. The literary and cultural fields were also enriched by Jainism. Anga, Upa Anga, and Kalpasastras are beautiful literary works.

Chandra Gupta Maurya and Kharavela of Kalinga embraced Jainism. It was patronized by the Rashtrakutas of Deccan and the Pallava king Mahendiravarman of Kanchi. Jains built many beautiful temples at Kanchi, Sittannavasal and Kalugumalai. Temples at Girnar and Mt. Abu, also belonged to the Jains.

Buddhism

Buddhism was founded by (Gautama) Siddhartha. His father was Suddodana, the chief of the Saka clan and mother was Maya. He was born in about 567 BC in Lumbini in Nepal Terai. Siddhartha was provided with a comfortable and happy life. He married Yasodhara and had a son Rahul. Yet the royal splendours did not make him content; he was moved by human miseries in the form of old age, sickness, death, and disillusionment.

The misery of the human life cast a deep spell on Gautama. In order to find

a solution to the miseries of mankind he left his wife Yashodhara and son Rahul at the age of 29 and wandered from place to place in ascetic garb. This event is known as the Great Renunciation.



Buddha

Gautama spent 6 years as a wandering ascetic and had discussions with sages and Brahmins. Their teachings did not help Gautama to find a solution. In order to find the truth, he resorted to rigid austerities of various kinds of self-torture. Ultimately he abandoned everything and went to Uruvela on the banks of Niranjana river and sat under a pipal tree (Bodhi Tree) and meditated. He attained the "Supreme knowledge" (Enlightenment) on the 49th day of his continuous meditation. The place where he got enlightenment is known as Bodh Gaya. Thenceforth he came to be known as the Buddha (the Enlightened one); He proceeded to the Deer park at Saranath near Varanasi, and gave his first sermon which is described as "Dharma Chakra Pravartana". (setting in motion the wheel of Dharma).

The royal families of Kapilavastu, Magadha and Kosala were attracted towards Buddhism. It was in about 487 BC he died at the age of 80 at Kusinagara.

Teachings of Buddha

The Buddha did not accept the God as a creator or destiny maker. He preached Anatmavadha (No Athma) and Anitya Vadha (nothing is eternal and everything undergoes change). He did not accept the sanctity and supremacy of Vedas and yagnas and rejected the caste system. He stressed that "man is the maker of his own destiny".

The first sermon of the Buddha at Sarnath contains his philosophy. His teachings were simple and conveyed to the masses in their languages i.e. Prakrit (Pali) and not in Sanskrit. The essence of his teachings are contained in the 'four noble truths' and the 'eightfold path'.

The four noble truths

- i) The world is full of suffering.
- ii) All sufferings have a cause. Desire, ignorance and attachment are the causes of sufferings.
- iii) The suffering can be removed by destroying its cause i.e. by the curbing the desire.
- iv) In order to remove suffering, one must pursue the right path. This path is the eightfold path (Ashtangika Marga) which leads to salvation (since this path avoided ritualism and self-mortification, it is also known as golden path or middle path (Madyamika marga). In order to end our sufferings Gautama Buddha advocated the Eight Fold Path. (Eight codes of conduct)

The eightfold path consists the following principles

Right belief, Right thought, Right speech, Right action, Right means of livelihood, Right effort, Right meditation and Right remembrance or memory.

This eightfold path is considered as the middle path between extreme asceticism and self indulgence. The Buddha preached 'Nirvana', the ultimate goal in the life of a man. By a process of elimination of desire, one can attain 'Nirvana'. Prayers and sacrifices will not end the desire. He laid emphasis on the moral life of an individual.

According to his Karma theory, the present is determined by the actions of past. The condition of a man in this life depends upon his own actions. As his actions or karma are responsible for his sufferings, he can secure salvation by perfecting his own deeds. No eternal force, either God or rituals can give him salvation. Thus man becomes the maker of his own destiny.

The Buddha neither accepted nor rejected the existence of God (agnosticism). He was more concerned about the individual and his action. Buddhism also did not believe in the existence of soul. The Buddha emphasized the spirit of love. Love could be expressed on all living beings by following 'Ahimsa' (non-violence).

The Buddha preached the basic equality of all men. He had no faith in caste system. His egalitarian principles attracted deprived masses towards Buddhism. He also disapproved the supremacy of Brahmins and he laid down the concept of universal brotherhood.

The Buddha condemned the practice of rituals and sacrifices, especially animal sacrifice. He rejected the authority of the Vedas, and insisted that everything must be subjected to scrutiny or reason.

He laid stress on morality. He advised his disciples to lead an honest and disciplined life. He also advised people to practice non-violence and not to indulge in corrupt practices. The Buddha established Sangha to propagate his principles and to render services to people. During the life time of Gautama Buddha, his movement made rapid progress. In the fourth council convened during Kanishka's reign, the Sangha split into two; Mahayana and Hinayana sects.

The preachings of the Buddha and Confucius have at least two things in common. They are pacific and they are rational. Their philosophies and

doctrines are not God-centred. They stressed more on 'reason' than on faith. The Buddhist scriptures, known as Pitakas are divided into three sections, namely, the Sutta, the Vinaya and the Abhidhamma.

As a result of these philosophical or intellectual awakening, the existing social and political system had to undergo changes. These philosophers liberated the people from clannish considerations and made them have a universal outlook. A better social order and a humane administration were recognized as objectives of the people and princes. Rituals were replaced by a moral order. Rational philosophies gave a better purpose for individual and social activities. Such a development marked another progressive turning point in the history of mankind.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Which period witnessed a great intellectual awakening in the world _____.
 a) 5th Century b) 6th century c) 7th century d) 8th century
- 2) How many years did the Philosophy of Confucius mould and dominate the Chinese mind.
 a) 1000 years b) 2000 years c) 3000 years d) 4000 years
- 3) Who was the founder of Zoroastrianism _____.
 a) Zoroaster b) Buddha c) Mahavira d) Confucius
- 4) Who was the 23rd Thirthankara _____.
 a) Rishaba b) Parsavanath c) Mahavira d) Buddha
- 5) Where did Buddha get enlightened _____.
 a) Saranath b) Bodh Gaya c) Sanchi d) Kapilavasthu

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1) Zoroastrianism | Buddha |
| 2) Jina | Mahavira |
| 3) Yasodhara | Buddhism |
| 4) Triratnas | Pipal tree |
| 5) Sangha | Rajagriha |
| | Mazda |
| | Conqueror of senses |

III) Answer all the questions given under each captions.**1) Zoroastrianism.**

- a) Who founded Zoroastrianism ?
- b) Which was the wise spirit of Zoroastrianism ?
- c) What type of worship represented the monotheistic basis of Zoroastrianism?
- d) What was the name of the Holy scripture of the Parsees.

2) Jainism.

- a) How many Thirthankaras were there in the Jain religion.
- b) Who was the earliest Thirthankara ?
- c) What was the name of the last Thirthankara ?
- d) Who preached the four disciplines to his disciples ?

3) Mahavira.

- a) What was the original name of Mahavira ?
- b) Where was he born ?
- c) What is meant by Jina?
- d) For how many years did he wonder and observe severe penance?

4) Buddha.

- a) Who founded Buddhism ?
- b) What was his original name ?
- c) Where did he give his first sermon ?
- d) Where did he get Enlightenment?

IV) Answer in brief.

- 1) Why did Intellectual awakening start in the 6th century B.C.?
- 2) Write a short note on Mazda ?
- 3) What was the four discipline preached by Mahavira to his disciples ?
- 4) Write about Pitakas .
- 5) In which council was the Sangha divided into two ?

V) Answer in a Paragraph.

- 1) Give an account on Confucius.
- 2) What was the importance of Zoroastrianism.?
- 3) Write a note on the teachings of Mahavira .
- 4) Enumerate the code of conduct that Mahavira preached.
- 5) Write a paragraph on the Eight fold path of Buddhism.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Compare any two religious doctrines propounded during the 6th century B.C.
2. Collect information and prepare a project on any one festival celebrated by the Jains, Parsis or the Buddhists.
3. Prepare a slide show on the places of religious importance for the religious that were founded in the 6th century.

3. MEDIEVAL AGE

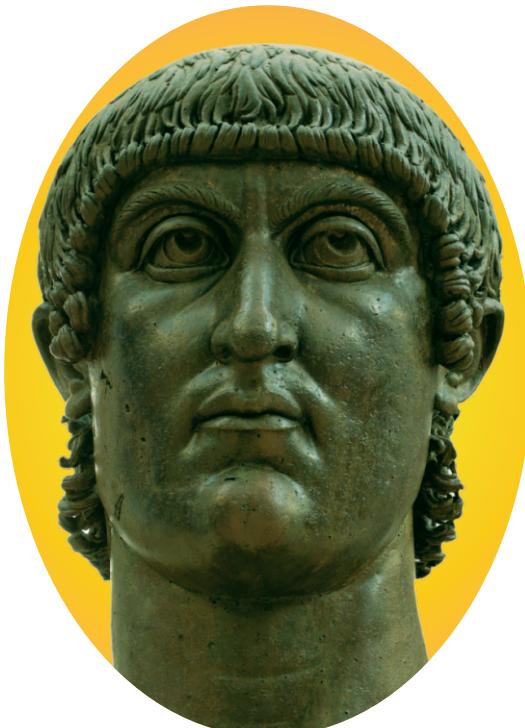
The Medieval Europe

The period from 600 AD onwards till 1500 AD is known as the Medieval age, in European history. It did not begin exactly at the same time in all the countries of Europe. Historians divided the medieval period into two parts. From the beginning of the fall of Roman empire till 1000 AD is called the Early Medieval Age and from 1000 AD to 1500 AD the Later Medieval Age. The beginning of the medieval age is marked by the fall of the Roman empire. The early medieval period has been termed as the "Dark Age", because of the chaos and degeneration prevalent everywhere. The central authority of the government became weaker and exploitation of the common people increased. The medieval age saw the emergence of a new religion Islam, which became internationally important.

On the political front, Medieval Europe saw the rise of the Eastern Roman Empire or Byzantine Empire with its capital at Constantinople. This empire held sway over whole of East Europe till about 1400 AD. The Romans proved to be great warriors and conquerors. It was because of their ability and wisdom that strong rulers emerged. After the fall of the Roman Empire in about 800 A.D Emperor Charlemagne established his power over a vast area—comprising modern France, Germany and a part of Italy. This empire lasted till his death and by about 1000 A.D another empire called the Holy Roman Empire was established. Thus towards the end of 14th century, Europe's political map had undergone many changes with many

rulers holding power in different parts of Europe at different times.

Rome was not built in a day. Similarly the decline of the Roman empire was not the work of a sudden or abrupt event but a long-drawn-out process spreading over nearly three centuries. The death of Marcus Aurelius in AD 180 was a turning point in the history of the Roman Empire. The safety, security and integrity of the empire was threatened from within and without. In fact the steady decline of the empire started from the latter half of the second century. Before their final decline in A.D.476. Many successful emperors like Diocletian (A.D.284–305) Constantine I the Great (A.D. 306–337) and Theodosius I the Great (A.D.378–395).



Constantine I

Causes for the down fall of the Roman Empire

The decline of the mighty Roman empire of the Caesars was wrought by time and nature, Hurricanes and earthquakes. Fires and inundations reduced the works of ages into dust.

The influx of wealth into the country brought in its wake moral degradation. The Romans lost all their old virtues of discipline and duty to the state.

The growth of the Christian church formed "a state within a state". In policy and action, the church stood against the empire.

The political mechanism of Rome with her constitution was quite unsuitable to an empire. A corrupt and expensive bureaucracy further worsened the situation. Rome became a big empire and territorially it became vast and impossible to control it. The Romans did not treat their colonial people well. The administration was weak and relaxed. Frequent wars, also contributed to her decline.

Decline of the Roman Empire

As Roman Empire expanded trade, industry too increased. Colonial people were exploited and their wealth flowed into the capital. Romans gave up hard work and wanted their slaves to work and fight. The empire was a Republic in theory but in practice Rome began to be governed by emperors. The people lost their freedom of speech which was so valuable. Senate and general assembly included wise people. When dictators came to power senate became subservient to them. In society, atmosphere became tense and suffocating. The indifferent attitude of masses towards their rulers became a cause for the downfall.

There was no regular law of succession under the Roman legal system. The internal disputes, action of Alison and groupism weakened the empire. Thus vastness of Empire, frequent civil wars, luxurious life of Romans, despotism of Roman emperors, confused social atmosphere, high taxes and invasion of barbaric tribes led to the downfall of Roman Empire.

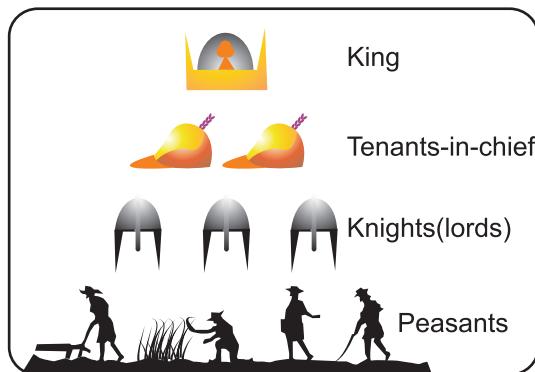
Barbarian Invasions

When the star of the empire was falling into evil days, the stunning blow to the tottering empire was given by the barbarian invasions. These invasions shook up the Roman solidarity. Barbarians like the Goths, Huns and Vandals poured into the country in large numbers and waited for the most opportune moment to strike at the trunk of the withering empire. Their aim was to loot the people of the conquered territories. The soldiers of the barbarian tribes had no love for the country but often revolted against weak rulers. Thus the barbarian invasions disturbed the internal peace. Under this condition the kings failed to realize taxes from the people. They felt unsafe and insecure. In this way the circumstances bound the kings, Lords and the common people to accept the new system of feudalism.

Feudalism

An important feature of the Middle ages was feudalism. The word "Feudalism" is, derived from the Latin word "feud" or "fief" which means a land held on condition of service. Feudalism was essentially an agrarian system. The peasants or the farmers were obliged to give a portion of the produce from the land to the lords as rent or taxes or they had to work on their

lord's land or farm without any payment.



A chart depicting feudal hierarchy

Features of Feudalism

Feudalism was an organization of society and its government based on land ownership. According to the system all lands belonged to the king who divided the kingdom into several fiefs and gave each fief to a baron or tenant-in-chief on condition of military and administrative services and other aids to the lord. As the fiefs were granted to bishops and other church dignitaries, they also came under the category of tenants-in-chief. The king in his turn granted protection to them in times of danger. Thus feudalism was a political arrangement in its origin. The baron in his turn subdivided the land into several manors and gave each manor to a sub-tenant on similar conditions. Thus the three important features of feudalism were feudal tenure, vassalage and immunity.

Merits of Feudalism

Feudalism proved to be a useful institution to protect the people from chaos and anarchy. It brought safety security and orderliness to the medieval society. The decentralization of political authority and distribution of power made the way to a new political development namely "parliamentary

democracy" in the later centuries. The lining of military and agricultural services with a well-graded social hierarchy fixed specific rights and duties upon the rulers and the ruled. The manorial system, an integral economic part of the feudal system saved Europe from utter confusion in the farm front. The exhibition of skill and valour by the knight errants encouraged a spirit of sacrifice and devotion to general cause among all people.

Demerits of feudalism

Feudalism was not an unmixed blessing. It brought the growth of baronial power. Jealousies among the barons and suspicion between the king and the lords encouraged local feuds. The king had to rely upon the military services provided by his vassals. The extensive holdings of the church gradually created the conflict between the Popes and the kings.

The feudal system was opposed to the emergence of a strong national government. The feudal lords ruled over their people in a tyrannical manner. They were either at war with the king or with the fellow lords. The army was not given uniform training in the kingdom. Different systems of justice were practiced from fief to fief. The society was divided between the rich and the poor. As a result, peasants suffered many hardships. The church also became a very big feudal organization. Thus the feudal system became largely responsible for the conflicts between the kings and the church.

Feudalism degenerated into the sharp division of society of the haves and the have-nots. Growth of learning and education did not materialize in full

bloom under feudalism. Justice became a mockery under the feudal system.

Decline of Feudalism

Feudalism as a social force began to decline even from the 12th Century onwards, and as a political force from the 13th century. The rise of strong monarchies along with the rise of the bourgeoisie or middle class as a major class, completely changed the political values. The growth of representative institutions in different parts of Europe undermined the feudal setup. The crusades and the invention of gun powder sounded the death-knell of feudalism.

During the Age of Faith, the conflict between spiritual authority and temporal power resulted in victory to the former. The Age of Faith gradually gave place to the Age of Reason. The renewed study of Roman law made it to understand the superiority of such a law as against the clumsy feudal laws.

The rise of the papacy

Christianity got political support under the Roman Emperors from the days of Constantine. By the 6th century A.D the Pope became the head of the church and kings were the rulers of the kingdoms. Sometimes, the Popes were stronger than the king. There developed in Europe a system of dual leadership under the Popes and the kings. Later, this dual leadership led to the rivalries between the church and the state. The Pope was considered as the representative (Vicar) of Jesus Christ. He was the highest authority of the church and was stronger than the kings. They could give directives to the kings and force them to obey their orders.

The papal authority became supreme due to missionary spirit of Christians. In the establishment of papal supremacy, monasteries played a very significant and important role. The character of monks, educational institutions of monasteries attracted the people towards papacy. It made certain valuable contributions.

Effects of papacy

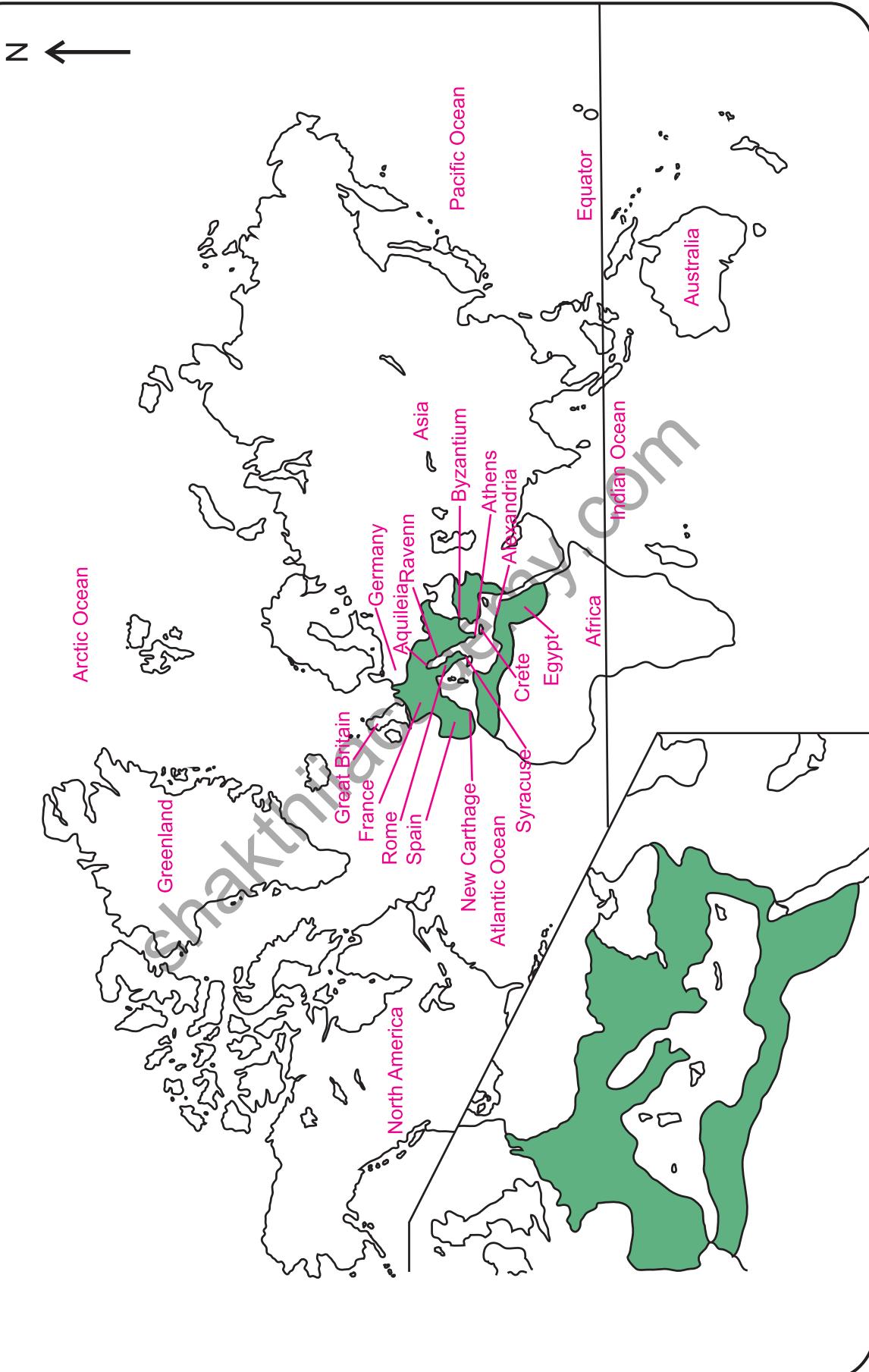
In the social life, people became God fearing, began to help the poor, the needy and the deserving. The sense of morality and character as well as dignity developed. Beautiful churches were developed. Religious dogmas and hymns became the themes of literature. In the eyes of the papacy, all the high and the low were equal. With the result it created a sense of equality among all. It was due to papal educational institutions that knowledge developed and also could be passed on to the present generation.

Holy Roman Empire

Holy Roman Empire was an attempt by the kings to attain political unification of Christian Europe with close co-operation of the church. In the old Roman empire there was no place for Christianity. In the new empire Christianity was the recognised religion. Rome was only nominal centre of authority. The old empire was Italian in its outlook whereas the new one was Christian in nature and character. Thus the main idea of creation of an empire was to bring all Christian states together in a fraternity. In the empire, the emperor was required to be crowned by the Pope.

The king possessed vast powers. He wanted that the Pope should be under his control. The Pope belonged to the other world and had a superior

ROMAN EMPIRE AT ITS GREATEST EXTENT



position over the emperor. The greatest service of the Empire was that the whole of European continent, which was divided into small units, were united into one empire. It strengthened hereditary system and weakened the republican system. The Holy Roman Empire contributed a lot by way of crushing feudal lords and feudalistic tendencies. Mainly it was responsible in bringing national unity in Germany. It was as a result of Holy Roman Empire that nation states of England, France and Spain came into being.

Medieval Towns and Universities

New towns began to emerge as centres of craft and trade. The early towns were very small, as the number of artisans increased and the trade became extensive, the towns too became bigger. When western Europe traded with the East, Italy enjoyed an advantage over others because of their location. Genoa, Florence and Venice became trade centres. Genoa and Venice were coastal towns whereas Florence, Pisa and Milan were situated on inland trade routes. In Holland, Belgium, Germany, France and England a number of cities grew up that were either sea ports or centres of trade and commerce. These medieval towns became centres of the Medieval European civilization and culture.

Education

In the early medieval period it was the church that gave education to the people. It taught the subjects like grammar, logic, arithmetic and theology. Some of the monasteries became centres of learning. Many universities were set up. The monks dominated the universities. Theology and philosophy were given prominence. History and science were

ignored. The books were hand copied. The university of Bolonga became famous for law. Arabic and Hebrew that were taught in this Spanish University.

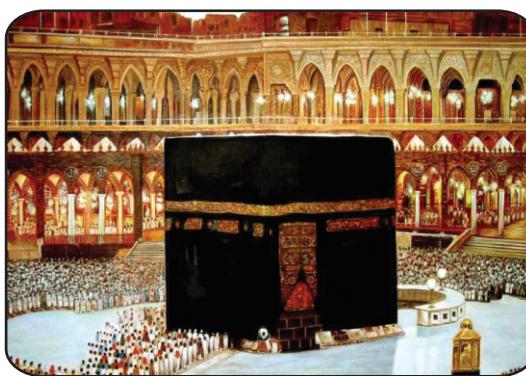


Bologna University

The University of Oxford in England was modelled on the Paris university of France. The Cambridge university came into existence in the 12th century.

Rise of Islam

During the middle ages, Arabia, a vast desert land in south west Asia, became the birth place of Islam. Islam is one of the most important world religions. It united the various warring tribes.

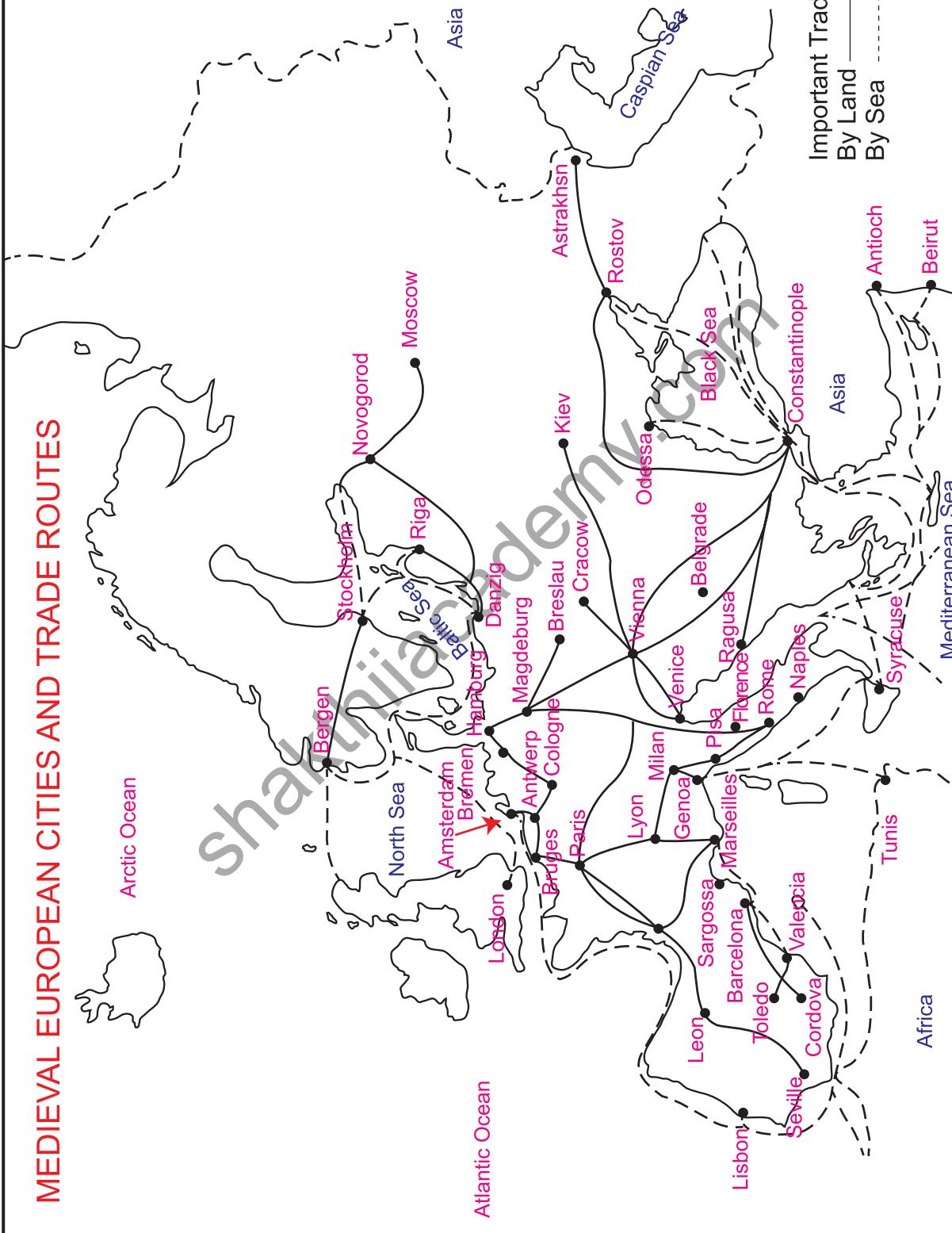


Mecca

The founder of the Islamic religion was Prophet Mohammad. Islam laid stress on the Unity of God and on following high moral standards and

MEDIEVAL EUROPEAN CITIES AND TRADE ROUTES

N



principles. Mecca and Medina became two important pilgrim centres in Arabia. The main and significant contributions of Islam were in the field of literature, science and medicine. Due to their superior organization, faith in their ultimate victory and unabating zeal in their mission, the Muslims were in a position to secure power in many countries. The Islamic culture served as a link between the Christian west and the rich fabulous Orient (east). It posed a serious threat to the Christian culture. The Arabs wanted to spread their religion in the conquered regions. This enthusiasm for the spread of their religion led to the fast expansion of their empire.

Crusades (1095 – 1444)

The Crusades were Holy wars fought by the Christians of Western Europe against the Turks, the Muslims. They were fought to have free access to their holy lands in the Middle East. Every pious Christian considered it his sacred duty to visit their Holy places where the relics of Christ were available. Jerusalem was one such important place which was captured by Turks in 1071 from the Fatimid Caliph of Egypt. Upto 1076, there was no real problem due to the tolerant policy of Caliphate. But in 1076, Jerusalem went under the control of Seljuk Turks, who were religiously intolerant.



Crusades

To save themselves from the persecution and humiliation and to retrieve access to their holy places the Christians undertook a crusade. Pope Urban II gave a call to the Christians all over the world to come together and to take arms. There were different factors responsible to their quick response. The religious fanatics joined to discharge their religious duty. Some joined to show their fighting skills and for plundering and looting. The wars of the "Cross against the Crescent" according to tradition, were eight in number. The first four were Major Crusades and the last four Minor Crusades. After a meeting of council at Clermont, they affixed a cross on their garments. The Muslim had a crescent on their banners. Thus the crusades, the long drawn out "wars of the cross against the crescent" began.

Children's Crusade (1212)

The leaders of the children's crusade were Nicholas of Germany and Stephen of France. They believed in their heart of hearts that God would mysteriously guide and guard the children in their endeavors. But none of the children went beyond Italy. Many died of hunger and starvation.

Causes for the failure of the crusades

The wars were fought in a far distant, alien and inhospitable regions. It exhausted the energies and sapped the spirit of the people. The crusaders failed in their primary motive of recovering the holy places of Jerusalem and Bethelham.

The Crusades were not properly organized. There was lack of unity and discipline among the leaders. The struggle for supremacy between the papacy and their Empire had a baneful effect on the issue. The weakness of the Byzantine empire was another serious cause for the collapse of the crusades.

Results of the Crusades

The Crusades failed in their most important objective of recovering the holy places in Palestine but led to the establishment of new Christian kingdoms in Spain and Portugal.

The Crusades in the end left Byzantine power vastly reduced in prestige and honour. The loss of Byzantine prestige was never fully recovered.

The crusading spirit spread like a contagious disease and it led to the conversion of Slave races on the shores

of the Baltic sea to Christianity and the Germanisation of the population. Feudalism received its rudest shock from the Crusades.

The crusades seriously affected the future of the military orders. The power and prestige of the Pope increased.

The extensive travels undertaken during the crusades provided the people with an opportunity to promote their knowledge of geography. It prepared the way for the discovery of new trade routes in which Portugal and Spain became pioneers. It gave an added fillip to the ship building industry which in turn paved the way for the use of Mariner's compass, etc.

The Crusades created a spirit of enquiry and prepared men's mind for the Renaissance of the 16th Century.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Early medieval period has been termed as _____.
a) Golden age b) Copper age c) Dark age d) Iron age
- 2) Feudalism was a social system based on _____.
a) Religion b) Army c) trade d) Land
- 3) Prophet Mohammad founded the religion of _____.
a) Christians b) Hinduism c) Islam d) Sikhism
- 4) The title of Lion heart was given to _____.
a) Philip b) Richard c) Fredrick d) Nicholas
- 5) The Holy Land of Christians is _____.
a) Mecca b) Italy c) Vatican d) Jerusalem

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1) Constantine | Tribes |
| 2) Fief | Land |
| 3) Cambridge | Constantinople |
| 4) Genoa | University |
| 5) Barbarians | Coastal town |
| | Code of conduct |
| | Emperor |

III) Answer Briefly.

- 1) What is Feudalism ?
- 2) What is a Manor?
- 3) What are the coastal towns and trade centers ?
- 4) How did the king get military service in the time of war ?
- 5) Who were the leaders of the children's crusade ?
- 6) Name some of the universities of medieval Europe ?
- 7) What was the aim of the crusades ?
- 8) Who was the authority of the Church?

IV) Answer all the questions given under each heading.**1) Feudalism.**

- a) From which word is "feudalism" derived ?
- b) Who were the Feudal Lords?
- c) What was the Feudal village called ?
- d) When did this system prevailed in Europe?

2) Papacy.

- a) Who was the head of the Church ?
- b) How was the relationship between the Pope and the king ?
- c) What was the role of the Pope ?
- d) What was the result of the dual leadership ?

3) Crusades.

- a) Which was the holy land of the Christians ?
- b) Who gave call to the Christians all over the world ?
- c) Where did the council meet ?
- d) How many Crusades have taken place?

4) Mohammed the Prophet.

- a) Which was the birth place of Islam ?
- b) Who was the founder of Islam ?
- c) What are the important cities in Arabia ?
- d) What did Islam religion stress on ?

V) Answer in a paragraph.

- 1) Describe the Barbarian invasion.
- 2) Write the causes for the downfall of the Roman Empire.
- 3) Describe the rise of Islam in Europe.
- 4) What were the results of the Crusades.

VI) Mark the following places on the outline map of Europe.

- a) Rome b) Constantinople c) Venice d) Genoa
- e) Paris f) London g) Pisa h) Florence

Mark the following countries.

- a) Italy b) Greece c) Spain d) England e) France
- f) Germany g) Arabia

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Collect pictures, stick them in your scrap book and write a short on 5 important religious places of
 - a. Hindus
 - b. Christians
 - c. Muslims
2. Explain the religious customs and traditions followed by the people when celebrating
 - a. Deepavali
 - b. Christmas or Easter
 - c. Ramazan
3. Prepare a chart to show the social order under the Feudal system.
4. Divide the class into 2 Groups. One group could enact a play to show the rise and spread of Christianity and other of Islam.

HISTORY

1. BEGINNING OF MODERN AGE

Introduction

The transition from mediaeval “Dark Age” to Modern Age is caused and marked by certain new trends and developments such as Renaissance, Humanism, Spirit of Enquiry, Geographical Discoveries and Reformation.

The ancient period in European history came to an end in 476 A.D. with the collapse of the mighty Roman Empire. The barbarians who pulled down the empire had no taste for the pursuit of classical languages and fine arts. The neglect for learning immersed Europe in ignorance and darkness. But at the beginning of the 16th century, a renewed interest in the study of Greek and Latin brought about the age of reason. The Renaissance marked a reaction against established conventions. A spirit of enquiry developed. People began to doubt, question and challenge instead of blindly believing anything that was taught by the church. This spirit of enquiry stimulated the progress of science, architecture, sculpture, painting, literature, geography, religion, etc.

Renaissance

Renaissance means revival or rebirth. It marks the aged of reason and the revival of classical Greek and Roman spirit.

Renaissance signifies, “emancipation and expression”. On the intellectual side, it marked the revival of literature and art, on the political side it marked the death of the universal

authority of Pope, the emergence and the consolidation of well organized nation states. Socially, it marked the spirit of individualism and the recognition of man as an individualism and the recognition of man as an individual in a society. Ecclesiastically, it marked the crumbling of the idea of the universal church and emergence of the national churches.

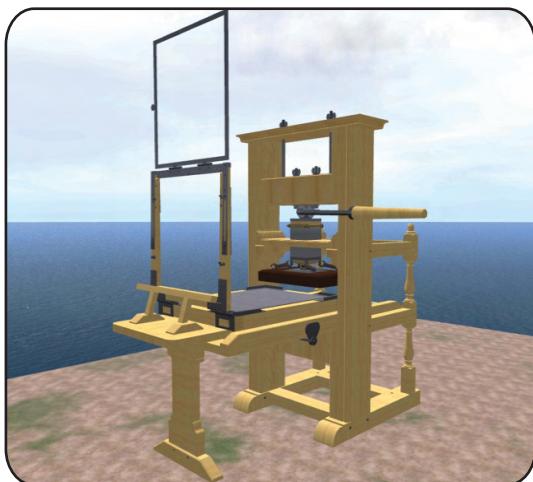
Renaissance in Italy

Italy, “the school of Europe”, was the birth place of the Renaissance. Feudalism failed to take deep roots in Italian soil, in the middle ages. The nobles and the church controlled the activities of the people. In due course, the death knell to feudalism was sounded by the Crusades. The crusades were associated with the invention of gun powder and the growth of nation states and towns with power and independence. Northern Italy was in a position to patronize art and literature. Moreover, Italy was the seat of an ancient civilization which reminded the people of “The Grandeur that was Rome”. The renaissance scholars wrote in the vernacular languages which appealed to the masses. The absence of a strong centralized monarchy in Italy provided excellent opportunities for intellectual outbursts. Renaissance as a movement began in the 14th century with the publication of the “Divine Comedy” by the greatest Italian poet Dante and reached its culmination in the next century.

The Renaissance movement comes under two broad divisions, namely humanistic phase or the revival

of classical learning and literature and the regulation of classical art. The first great pioneer in this line was Petrarch. He collected the classical manuscripts written by Plato, Cicero and others. He gave a new life to the ancient classics. Boccaccio, the disciple of Petrarch followed the footsteps of his master.

The humanistic movement was accelerated by the capture of Constantinople by the Turks in 1453 A.D. The invention of the printing press helped in the production of cheap books. It considerably helped the cause of humanism.



Printing press

Renaissance also left its mark on the artistic side. The barbarians destroyed most of the remnants of culture of ancient Greece and Rome in the middle ages, the Church controlled all the cultural activities of the people. Art was influenced by the church. The works of art were created mainly with the object of perpetuating religion. Renaissance created a spirit of devotion towards the Greek art and literature in the hearts of the people. Gradually Romanist spirit began to find expressions in the arts, even in religious subjects. Leonardo da Vinci was a versatile genius, a writer,

scientist, inventor, engineer, architect and painter. Architecture, sculpture, painting, music and other fine arts progressed tremendously though the influence of Christianity was very visible on the arts of this time.



Last Supper

Michael Angelo, Leonardo da Vinci, Raphael and Titian were the great painters of the time. The meet remarkable painting of Michael Angelo was the "Last judgment".



Mona Lisa

Leonardo da Vinci's famous paintings are "Mona Lisa" and "Last supper", Raphael was famous for his paintings of "Madonnas". Titian was noted for this mastery of colour. Peter

Brueghal, the Elder's genre paintings depicted scenes from robust peasant lives.



Madonnas

Sculpture and Paintings

The sculptors produced works of greater beauty and originality. In architecture, the architects turned to classical models.



St.Peters Cathedral



Michelangelo's Paintings

The best specimen of the architecture of the period was St.Peter's cathedral at Rome. Michelangelo's "Moses" is a remarkable sculptural expression of the time.

Music

Music also made tremendous progress in the fourteenth century. People began to take interest in instrumental music rather than vocal. Various changes occurred in the system of music. Like other arts, Italy led the path in music. Music was liberated from the monopolistic cultures of the church. New song forms and new musical instruments helped the emergence of secular music.

Rise of Humanism

A shift from God centred and Church centred literary activities to human centred literary trends is known as Humanism. The spirit of Humanism was found in ancient Greek and Roman literature. But in the medieval age owing to the influence of church the spirit of spiritualism, escapism and worship of God became quite popular and people began to think more of the other world than this one. Owing to the influence of Renaissance, people began to take an interest in ancient Greek and Roman literature. They also began to take an interest in expression of humanism and their interest in the mediaeval culture and civilization diminished.

Humanism

Petrach is supposed to have been the original thinker who preached Humanism. Dante and others supporters were his follows. The contemporary ruler of Florence, Lorenzo de Medici was the great patron

of scholars. He provided shelter to various authors of Humanism.



Leonardo da Vinci

Humanism spread from Italy to other countries of Europe. Michelangelo, Machiavelli, Leonardo da Vinci, Donatello Botticelli, Robbia, Fincino were some significant writers of Humanism. Andrew Vesalius, a doctor to Emperor Charles wrote "Seven Books on the structure of the Human Body" Leonardo da Vinci drew a sketch of the future airship.



Andrew Vesalius

Human happiness and progress were the core objectives of the ancient

Graeco Roman literature. The church controlled medieval society encouraged and patronized only such literature that was agreeable to the interests of the church. Life was portrayed as devoid of any worth. Pursuit of happiness was treated as a sin. Pessimistic spiritualism found expression in all church sponsored literature. The rediscovery of the Graeco Roman spirit of Humanism inspired a new human-centred literary trend in Europe.

Science

The Renaissance spirit affected the field of science also. Friar Roger Bacon, the Father of modern sciences, was the greatest medieval exponent of observation and experiment. His writings developed a critical and scientific spirit. Notable contributions were made in astronomy, mathematics, chemistry, physics and medicine. Copernicus discovered that the earth revolves round the sun. Galileo perfected the telescope.



Galileo's Telescope.

Both contributed to the heliocentric theory. Earth is the centre of the universe. Newton discovered the “**law of gravitation**”. Kepler laid the foundation, of Mathematical Astronomy.



Kepler

It was also an age that witnessed the invention of printing. Far-reaching results were achieved in geographical discoveries. Columbus, Vasco-da-gama and Magellan were the greatest figures in this field. The invention of mariner's compass (in China) was of immense help to the sailors, especially in their voyages to the south of the Equator.

Results of the Renaissance

1. The study of classical languages developed a spirit of enquiry in the minds of the people. Instead of blindly believing what was written by others, they began to doubt, question and argue which enabled them to arrive at the truth. The quest for truth brought about profound changes in science, art, politics, religion and literature.
2. Renaissance created a passion for reason in the minds of the people.
3. The Renaissance kindled the creative talents of the people and slowly paved the way for many inventions and discoveries.

4. Before the Renaissance the ruins of Greece and Rome had no fascination for the people. But after the Renaissance the people evinced keen interest in the ruins. Thus, the science of archaeology came into existence.

5. The reasoning spirit opened new opportunities for the people to find our loopholes in religious beliefs. The invention of the printing press helped to publish books on a large scale.

6. The new inventions, discoveries and writing of eminent men completely changed the outlook of the people towards the state. It developed a spirit of nationalism and individualism. It resulted in the emergence of nation states such as England, France, Holland, Portugal and Spain.

7. The study of the old classics which ran counter to Christian ideals greatly weakened the church and revived the spirit of Humanism.

8. The study of history became more scientific. The Renaissance resulted in “Humanism” which was noted for its sympathetic and devoted approach to mankind.



Erasmus

9. The Greek and Latin classics were humane in nature. The protagonists of this culture were

called "Humanists", and their subjects "Humanities".

"Humanism, whose seed was sown by Petrarch in the fourteenth century and whose fruit was plucked by Erasmus in the sixteenth, still lives in higher education through our Europe and America".

Reformation

The term 'Reformation' refers to the religious reform movement in the Catholic Church which led to the rise of a new section of Christians known as Protestants. These Protestants broke away from the Roman Catholic Church in order to form new churches on nationalist lines. Though reformation was a religious movement it was an outcome of the socio, economic and political conditions that prevailed in the sixteenth century.

During the medieval period the Church had developed a powerful hierarchy led by the Pope (Bishop of Rome) and assisted by cardinals, archbishops, bishops and priests. Every Christian had to perform seven sacraments in his life time with the assistance of the priests of the church. Hence, the church had acquired absolute authority to control the personal lives of Christians. The church exploited Christians by all means.

Religious appointments were sold and those who purchased the positions charged high fees for the services they rendered. The new learning promoted by the Renaissance and growth of capitalist tendencies influenced some of the clergymen. The popes and higher clergy lived like princess. They indulged in corrupt practices to amass wealth. They lived a life of opulence, immorality, running gambling houses and keeping mistresses. Dispensations which exempted people

from certain laws of the church were sold. Moreover any opinion or doctrine contrary to the church dogma was considered heretical. Such heretics were burnt at stakes. For example John Huss was burnt at the stake in 1415.A.D.

The growing nationalist sentiment also worked against the church. Powerful dynasties were emerging in Spain, France and in various parts of Europe which resisted the overlords of Rome. The church collected various taxes and a large portion of this was sent to Rome, the head quarters of the Catholic Church. Christians of various countries like Germany, England, and Netherlands etc. disliked this practice. The rulers of various countries resented the control of the church on their royal authority, and the church lands being exempted from royal taxes.

The immediate cause of the Lutheran revolt was the issue of 'sale of indulgences'. A magnificent church known as St.Peter's church was being built by the Pope. A lot of money was



Martin Luther

required for the building of that church. The Pope ordered the subordinate churches to raise funds for the construction of that church Johann Tetzel, a Dominican friar, in order to raise funds, sold indulgences for the remission of the penalty for the sins in the purgatory. The quantum of remission would be in proportion to the amount of money spent for the purchase of 'indulgences'. Such vulgar salesmanship of the clergy shocked Pious clergy like Martin Luther who raised a banner of revolt against the corrupt practices of the Roman Catholic Church.

In 1517, Martin Luther nailed his protest against the indulgences in the form of 95 theses to the door of the Wittenberg church in Saxony. His protest theses were translated, copied, and circulated widely in printed form. In 1520 Luther published three pamphlets

- i.e 1) AN ADDRESS TO THE NOBILITY OF THE GERMAN NATION.
- 2) ON THE BABYLONIAN CAPTIVITY OF THE CHURCH AND
- 3) THE FREEDOM OF THE CHRISTIAN MAN.

In his writings Luther questioned the



Pope Leo X

authority and relevance of the Pope and church councils.

Pope Leo x, through a papal bull (papal order in a sealed cover) threatened Luther with excommunication if he failed to recant. But Luther encouraged by the support of the German people and princess, defied the authority of the Pope and burnt in public the papal bull and some books of canon law. This "burning of the books" symbolized the 'declaration of independence' of the German principalities from the control of the Roman Pope.



Charles V

Charles V, the Holy Roman Emperor, summoned Luther to an imperial Diet (Assembly) at WORMS, and asked Luther to recant.

Supported and protected by German princes led by Frederick of Saxony, Luther refused to retrace his step. Lutheranism refused to accept the mediatory role of the Roman Church, reduced the sacraments from seven to three (i.e baptism, marriage and communion) condemned monasticism (and the clergymen were to marry) and adopted native German language for religious and secular

purposes. The German princes and nobles also took possession of the church lands. In 1529 the Lutheran princes defined an imperial edict asking them to suppress Lutheranism - made a formal 'protest' that "they would remain loyal to the God rather than to the Emperor". Hence the Lutherans were called 'protestants'.



Ulrich Zwingli

Ulrich Zwingli in Zurich (Switzerland) and a French clergy John Calvin. Who fled to Switzerland similarly raised 'protests' against the papal order and more or less toed the lines of Martin Luther. All of them wanted the church to be restored to its early purity and simplicity. In England the Tudor King, Henry VIII quarreled with the Pope Clement VII, on the question of securing papal sanction for his divorce with Catherine and marriage to Anne Boleyn. He pressurized the English church to break away from Rome in 1533. In the succeeding year the 'Act of Supremacy' of the Parliament made the English king the supreme head of Anglican Church. Thus a clerical protest against Roman Catholic Church resulted in the emergence of non-Latin national states and non-Catholic Christian sects in Europe.

Counter Reformation

The triumphant progress of Protestantism was viewed with great concern and fear by the Roman Catholic Church. The aim of the counter-reformation was primarily to restore the Church to a condition of Pristine purity and sublime holiness. The church stood in dire need of protection from within and without. Before things went out of control, it took drastic measures to arrest the onward march of Protestantism. It also committed itself to the purification of the Church. This movement for reform within the church and the steps taken by it to arrest the growth of Protestantism came to be known as Counter-Reformation.

Society of Jesus Ignatius Loyola and the Society of Jesus(1491-1556)

Ignatius Loyola, a Spanish nobleman, was born in 1491. He became a soldier and served Emperor Charles V by fighting the French. He was wounded in a battle, and during the period of treatment he had strange religious experiences. He underwent a great transformation after studying the



Ignatius Loyola

works relating to the lives of Jesus Christ and order saints. He founded a religious order known as the Society of Jesus with papal consent and enrolled sixty members (Jesuits) who were subjected to more religious discipline and training. Each member had to undergo Loyola's spiritual exercises and in 1540, the Pope sanctioned increase in the strength of Jesuit members. The Jesuits, who swore to lead a life of poverty, chastity and "service to god and Christianity", spread themselves throughout the European continent and worked tirelessly with great zeal as missionaries. They spread the message of Christ, and opened schools everywhere. The Jesuits were the agents in propagating the counter-reformation. The Jesuits in their missionary activities achieved remarkable success. The Jesuits did yeomen service for the cause of Catholicism.

The Council of Trent

The Council of Trent (1545 – 63) aimed at reforming the Catholic church. Though it failed to bring about unity in Christendom, it gave a clear definition to Catholic doctrines; the council marked the triumph of populism. After the Council of Trent, the Pope was recognized as the supreme arbiter in religious matters as far as Catholicism was concerned. Evil and unworthy priests were to be removed. Celibacy was enforced. The service-book of the church was completely renewed and the Bible was revised.

The inquisition

In order to root out heresy, the church-court-'inquisition'-meted out brutal punishments to people who wavered in their allegiance to the

Catholic faith. The Spanish inquisition was founded during the time of Ferdinand and Isabella. Torture was used to extract confession.

The Church also prepared an 'Index' of hierarchical books and passages and such hierarchical writings were prohibited for the believers.

Geographical Discoveries

The age of Renaissance has removed all the mediaeval ideas from the mind of the people and it fostered a spirit of adventure among the people of Europe to explore unknown distant lands in various parts of the world.

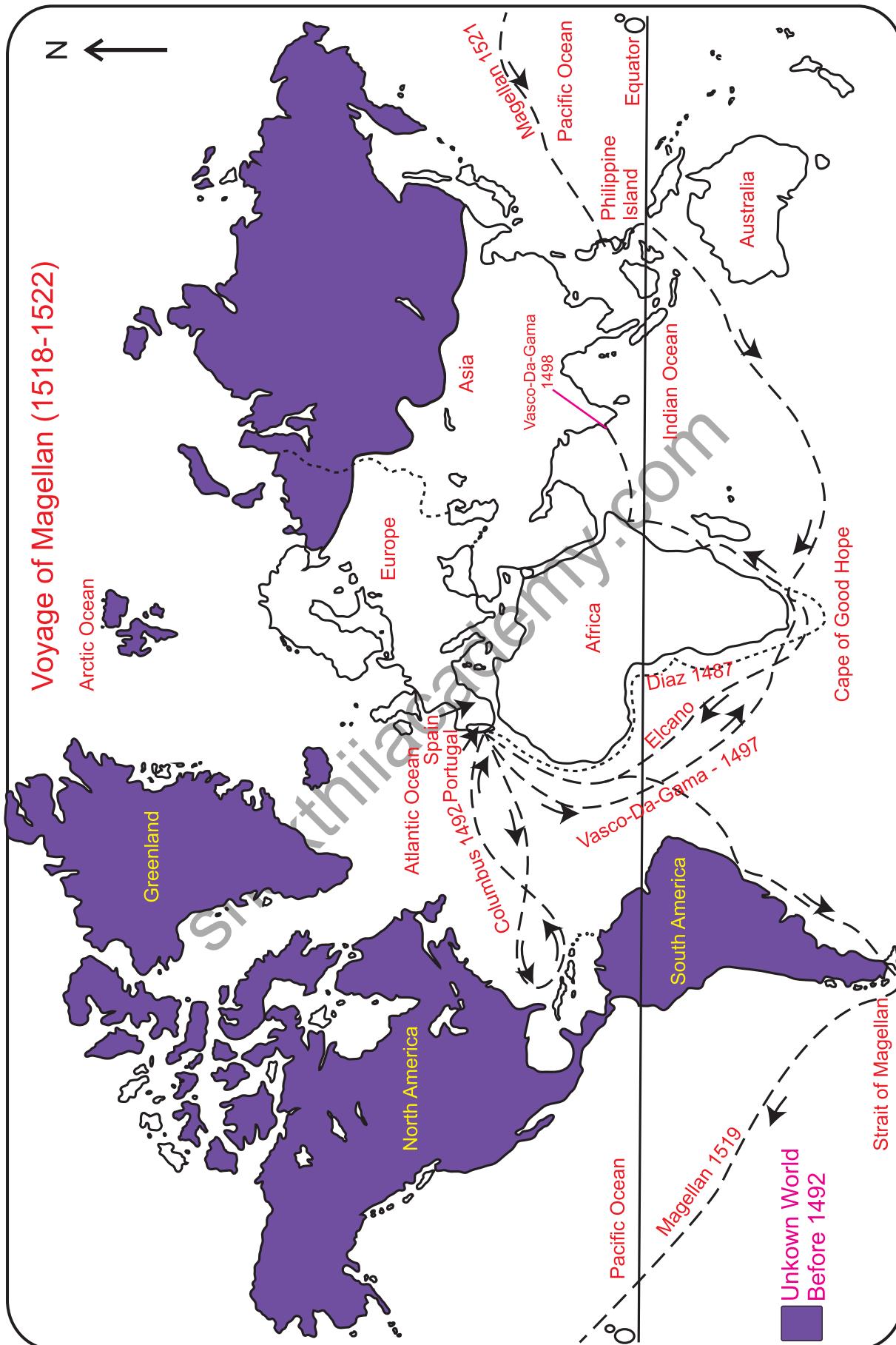
Knowledge about Earth

During this period the scientists discovered that the earth is spherical in shape. So the sailors concluded that they might return to the same point from where they began their journey. It encouraged them to travel.

Scientific insertion contributed to development in the modern era. Among all these inventions, the invention of Mariner's compass was the most significant one. It is an instrument meant to know the directions. Its needle always points towards north. It saves the people at sea especially to



15th century ship



the south of Equator from getting People dared travel to distant places because they had the correct knowledge of geographical directions.

In the 15th century after the occupation of Canary Islands, the Portuguese began to make efforts to explore the western side of Africa. Prince Henry a Portuguese made great efforts in this direction hence known as Henry the Navigator (1394-1460). He started a school for navigators and encouraged extensive exploration. The sailors were taught how to make use of the Mariner's Compass and astrolabe. His sailors undertook many voyages along the coast line of West Africa. They discovered Azores and Madeira Islands and went as far as Sudan and Senegal.

After the fall of Constantinople in 1453 to the Ottoman Turks, it had become impossible to travel to Asia from Europe. It endangered the spice trade of the Europeans; Until then the Arabs were the intermediaries in spice trade. Hence the Europeans had to search for new sea routes in order to reach Asia and to amass wealth. They sought royal patronage to undertake long voyages to find our new routes to India and Cathay (China).

The geographical imagination of Europe was enormously stimulated by the Mongol conquests. The desire for foreign travel and commerce was greatly encouraged by the Crusaders. The overland journey of a small party of Venetians, of which Marco Polo's travel to Cathay (China) at the end of the thirteenth century was a bold undertaking.

Remarkable discoveries were made during the second half of the 15th

century. Barthmellow Diaz a Portuguese, reached the southern most tip of Africa, which came to be called the 'Cape of Good hope'. In 1497, Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese explorer, sailed across the India Ocean and reached Kerala's coastal town of Calicut in 1498. His discovery of new sea route to India was a remarkable achievement.



Vasco da gama

Christopher Columbus, was an Italian but his voyages were financed by the Queen of Spain. He was the first to sail across Atlantic Ocean in 1492, with three ships-The Santa Maria, the Nina and the Pinta with 88 crew members.



Columbus

He reached America on 11th October 1492 after great difficulties. This was the most significant discovery of Columbus and it came to be known as 'The New World'.

Fernando Cortez, a Spanish adventurer made an expedition to explore the coast of Central America and discovered Mexico and Peru surrendered to Pizarro in 1530. The discovery of Mexico and Peru caused a steady stream of gold and silver to flow across the Atlantic to Spain.

Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese in the service of Spain, reached and named the Pacific Ocean.

Amerigo Vespucci, Italian adventurer, made four voyages to the region visited by Columbus. He gave a detailed description about the land and its people.

Martin Wald Muller, a German cartographer was drawing a map of the world and he named the New World-Amerigo Vespucci.

For commercial prosperity and imperialism both Portugal and Spain divided the world between them with the help of the Pope. Africa, Asia and Brazil were given to Portugal and Spain established control over parts of Northern and Southern America and Spaniards poured there in great numbers, in search of gold and silver. Spain amassed a lot of wealth. It lured the other countries of Europe to establish their colonies in the New world especially France. England and Holland the countries began to fight among themselves for territories in the American Continent.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) The birth place of the Renaissance was _____.
a) Italy b) Germany c) England d) Austria

- 2) _____ was responsible for the Reformation?
a) John Huss b) Martin Luther King c) Zwingli d) Calvin

- 3) Constantinople was captured by the Turks in _____.
a) 1452 A.D. b) 1553 A.D. c) 1453 A.D. d) 1353 A.D.

- 4) Mona Lisa was painted by _____.
a) Micheal Angelo b) Raphael
c) Titian d) Leonarda da vinci

- 5) The religious order known as the society of Jesus was Founded by _____.
a) Martin Luther b) Charles-V
c) Ulrich Zwingli d) Ignatius Loyola

- 6) Vasco da Gama reached Calicut in _____.
 a) 1498 b) 1497 c) 1496 d) 1499

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1) Dane | Father of modern science |
| 2) Mochael Angelo | New scientific invention |
| 3) Friar Roger Bacon | America |
| 4) Mariner's Compass | Last judgment |
| 5) Amerigo Vespucci | Divine comedy |
| | Last supper |
| | New sea route |

III) Write Short Answers.

- 1) What were the two broad divisions of the Renaissance movement?
- 2) Write a short note on Painting during the Renaissance period.
- 3) What were the important scientific inventions during Renaissance period?
- 4) Define – Renaissance.
- 5) Write a note on indulgence.
- 6) The council of Trent – Define.
- 7) Write a note on Henry the Navigator.
- 8) What were the effects of the new voyages?

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1) Renaissance in Italy

- a) Which Country was known as the school of Europe?
- b) Who was the first great Pioneer of classical art?
- c) Name the doctor of Charles V. Who wrote seven books?
- d) Who was noted for his mastery of colour?

2) Reformation

- a) What was the immediate cause of the Lutheran revolt?
- b) Who were the 'Protestants'?
- c) What were the Sacraments that were reduced from seven to three?
- d) Who was Johann Tetzel?

3) Society of Jesus

- a) Who founded the Society of Jesus?
- b) In which year it was founded?
- c) How many members (Jesuits) enrolled in the Society of Jesus?
- d) Who were the agents propagating the Counter Reformation?

4) New discoveries

- a) Who named the Cape of Good Hope?
- b) What was the name of Christopher Columbus's discovery?
- c) Name the three ships used by Christopher Columbus.
- d) Which Portuguese explorer named the Pacific Ocean?

V) Answer in a Paragraph.

- 1) Write a paragraph on Humanism during the Renaissance period.
- 2) What were the Results of the Renaissance?
- 3) What were the services of Martin Luther against the corrupt practices of the Roman Catholic Church?
- 4) Write a note on 'The inquisition' and 'Index'.
- 5) What were the causes for the Geographical Discoveries?

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

- 1) On an outline map of the world trace the routes taken by
 - a) Christopher Columbus.
 - b) Magellan.
 - c) Vasco da Gama
 - d) Barthomew Diaz.
- 2) Collect pictures of the famous paintings of
 - a) Michael Angelo.
 - b) Leonardo da Vinci.
 - c) Raphael.
 - d) Titan. And paste them in your scrapbook.
- 3) Find out more information on the Society of Jesus and their work in India.
- 4) Choose any one painting of Leonardo da Vinci or Michael Angelo and write a paragraph on why you think it is so famous.

2. THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

The Industrial Revolution which took place in England fundamentally changed the industrial, commercial, political and social life of the western world. The term Industrial Revolution is used to express the adoption of system of making things on large scale in factories. **The term Industrial revolution refers to the shift from an agrarian, handicraft, labour intensive economy into one dominated by machine manufacturers, factories and a free flow of capital.** The capitalist procured raw materials and supplied it to the artisans and craftsmen who manufactured products in their houses. New inventions were taking place in different areas, which gave birth to machines. The machines changed the entire method of production. The revolution was completely economic in nature. There was no violence, no bloodshed, it was a peaceful process of industrial transformation. The French writer Blanqui first coined the term Industrial Revolution.

Factors responsible for Industrial Revolution

In the 18th century many innovations in agricultural methods and organization has brought about far-reaching changes. The traditional patterns of farming were breaking up. Agriculture became more and more a capitalist enterprise. Peasants freed from manorial obligations joined the ranks of entrepreneurs and tenants. The demand for English goods went on increasing. The expansion of commerce was the result of the discoveries of new lands and new sea routes. The population in European

countries expanded rapidly due to factors. More efficient agriculture and better food distribution reduced malnutrition which meant more births. The progress of science revolutionised the methods of production. These conditions and many natural advances were favourable for the beginning of an Industrial Revolution.

The widespread production of rural handicrafts provided the foundation for the rapid expansion of trade. This expansion resulted a search for new markets. The capitalists encouraged the scientists to invent machines. Further, the European countries exploited the colonies and their exploitation gave birth to capitalism. The capitalists wanted production of more goods in order to gain more profits and for this they required factories. With the help of newly invented machines, the people produced goods on large scale. These factors helped the rapid industrial changes in Europe. Before the Renaissance scientific knowledge was not put into practice, but now there was awakening all around.

England in the 18th century was in a most favourable position for an Industrial Revolution. It had become the leading maritime and colonial power of the world. Here colonial and naval supremacy provided an incentive for the development of industries as the colonies provide raw materials as well as markets. Britain also possessed many natural advantages, her coast line and climate promoted trends towards industrialisation. The role played by private enterprises in England's economic developments

was extraordinary and unique. The engines of the industrial revolution made England rich and powerful. Many protestant artisans of Spain and France migrated to England due to religious persecutions. The English government provided them shelter and monetary help and in return made full use of their skills. It gave an impetus to industrialization England.

Scientific Inventions and Technological Developments – Revolution in the Textile Industry

The industrial revolution brought a change from handicrafts to machine manufacture and from human or animal power to other forms of energy such as steam. The cotton textile industry was the first to gain momentum from the outburst of inventions. **John Kay's** (1733) "Flying Shuttle" speeded up the process of weaving and thus increased the demand for thread. **James Hargreaves's** "water Frame" and **Crompton's** "Spinning Mule" (1769) supplied the demand for thread. **Cartwright's** "power loom" (1754) improved weaving methods. **Whitney's** "cotton gin" (1793) made a large and cheap supply of raw cotton for spinning. **Elias Howe** invented the "sewing machine" (1846).

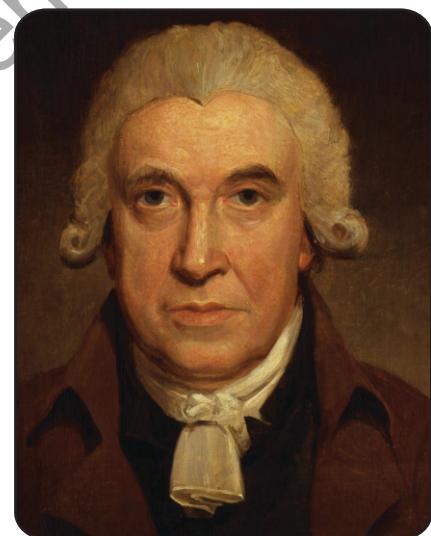
Inventions of Power

The most important invention of the Industrial Revolution was the steam engine. **James Watt** studied Newcomen's steam engine and invented a new steam engine in 1769. Steam replaced horse and water power in the textile industry. **George Stephenson** invented the steam locomotive engine in 1825. In 1830, the first passenger railway between Manchester and Liverpool was

operated. The steam printing press in 1814 decreased the cost on printed materials. Later on **Faraday** invented the dynamo.



George Stephenson



James Watt
'An Improver of the Steam Engines'

Abraham Derby experimented to substitute coke for charcoal for smelting iron ore. In 1760, **John Smeaton** improved the "Derby process" with the addition of water power. **Humphrey Davy** invented the miner's safety lamp which enabled the miners to do their work safely. In 1784, **Henry Cort** introduced the puddling process for the purification of pig iron.

In 1855, **Bersemer** invented a new method of making steel. From this time onward coal and iron went hand in hand with steam as the foundation of industrialisation.

Revolution in Transport

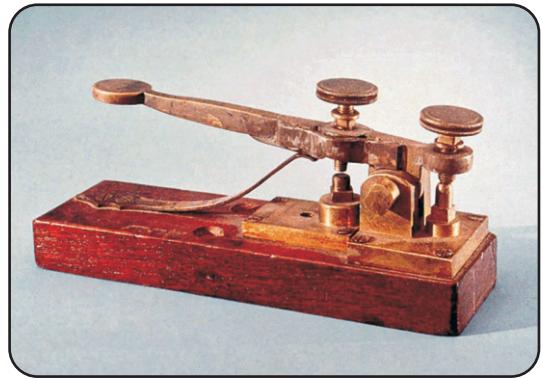
Changes in mining and metallurgy speeded changes in other industries especially transportation and communication. **John Metcalfe** and **John McAdam** made tremendous improvements in road making. McAdam devised the method of making pucca roads, which were called "macadamised" roads. **John Brindley** constructed a network of canals in important towns like Birmingham, London, Liverpool, Manchester, etc., any they were soon linked by canals.



Steam Engine

Revolution in the means of Communication

'Sir Rowland Hill' invented the 'penny post system' by which the business men were able to carry on their correspondence with their customers and clients from far and near. **Morse** invented the method of sending messages through telegraph wires. In 1835 the first electric telegraph came into existence. Point for Discussion- present state of Electric Telegraph in India.



Electric Telegraph

Revolution in Agriculture

The revolution in agriculture had started before the industrial revolution. New farm machinery included the steel plough and the harrow for breaking the ground, the mechanical drill for seeding and the horse drawn cultivator to replace the hoe. There were also machines for reaping and threshing. The practice of crop rotation was adopted to maintain soil fertility. **Clover**, one of the plants which add fertility to the soil was cultivated Land owners in England began to enlarge their farms. The strips that lay scattered about the village were also consolidated so that they could hold all their lands in one piece thereby increasing the production.

Effects of Industrial Revolution-Social Effects

The industrial Revolution left a deep impact on all facets of European life. The changes in agricultural production, business organisation and technology had revolutionary effects in society and politics. People were drawn from the country side into cities thus during to a number of industrial towns. The overcrowded towns lacked sanitary amenities. Air, water and noise pollution affected the health of people. The Industrialists found it more profitable to employ women and

children in their factories. Mass underemployment became one of the greatest social problems. It also destroyed the old division of the society and created two distinct classes, the 'capitalists' and the 'Labours'. The division of people into 'haves' (rich) and "have nots" (poor) became pronounced. As industries developed in many of the European countries, they were forced to set up their colonies in other continents to get raw materials and to sell their goods. This search for colonies led to **colonial imperialism**.

Political Effects

The emergence of big towns necessitated parliamentary reforms. A number of parliamentary reforms were introduced. The factory acts were passed in 1819, 1833 and 1847 to improve the condition of labourers and to give them protection from the exploitation of capitalists. In 1825, trade unions were organized to fight for their rights. It also gave rise to ideas of rationalism and internationalism through means of communication and transport. This also gave rise to the demand for democratic government on an economic basis i.e. Socialism.

Economic Effects

The industrial Revolution changed the economic face of England. England became the most advanced country in the world. It developed its trade relations and this increased the national income. Cottage industries could not compete with the factories and they met their natural death in course of time. The establishment of factories saw the rise of many new industrial towns like Manchester, Lancashire, Birmingham and Sheffield. The birth of new classes the Capitalist and the Labour class made the poor

poorer and the entire capital of the country went in to the coffers on the capitalist. It was therefore as someone said "The Industrial Revolution made the rich richer and the poor poorer".

New Idealism

The Industrial Revolution gave birth to many political terminologies which are frequently used. Capitalism was born out of the mass production of goods which led to the owners of the big industries amassing wealth. The large scale factories began to develop **mercantile capital**, this was the beginning of **capitalism**.

Socialism

The slogan of socialism was raised by the labour classed against capitalism. The motive behind socialism was that there should be a just distribution of wealth and to narrow the gap between the rich and the poor. Nobody should starve and everybody's needs must be met. Industrialization sharpened the distinction between the middle class and the labour class. Socialistic demands were meant to narrow this gap. **Robert Owen** was the first person to coin the word "socialism".

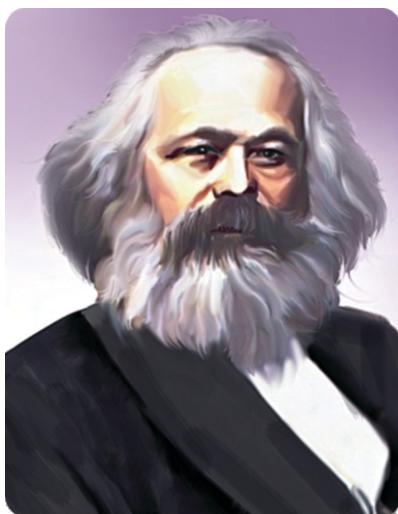


Robert Owen

Inventions during the Industrial Revolution			
INDUSTRY	NAME	INVENTIONS	YEAR
1.TEXTILE	John Kay	Flying Shuttle	1733
	James Hargreaves	Spinning Frame	1769
	Richard Arkwright	Water Frame	1769
	Samuel Crompton	Spinning Mule	1769
	Edmund Cartwright	Power Loom	1754
	Eli Whitney	Cotton Gin	1793
	Elias Howe	Sewing machine	1846
2. STEAM	Thomas Newcomen	First steam engine	1763
	James Watt	Redesigned Newcomen's steam engine.	1769
	George Stephenson	First Iron ship	1790
		First Locomotive called Rocket	1813
	Robert Fulton	First Railway	1825
	Robert Stephenson	Steam Boat called Clermont	1807
		Flying Rocket	1829
3.Iron and Steel		Steam printing Press	1814
	Abraham Derby	Dynamo	1831
	John Smeaton	Substitution of coal from charcoal	
	Humphrey Davis	Improved Derby Process	1760
	Henry Cort	Safety lamp	1816
4.Transport	Bersemer	Pudding process for purification of iron	1784
		Method of making Steel	1855
	John Metcalfe	Road making	
	John McAdam	Macadamised Roads	
5.Communication	John Brindley	Networking Of Canals	
	Sir Rowland Hill	Penny Post system	1835
	Samuel Morse	Sending messages through telegraph wires.	
	Cyrus W field	First electric telegraph Trans Atlantic under Sea Cable Connectivity	1836

Marxism

Marxism is a theory developed by **Karl Marx** who was a socialist from Germany. His theory is based on the assumption that production and physical forces have an intimate relationship, and the surplus value of products should go in favour of the working class. The industrial revolution gave birth to Marxism and philosophies which are sufficiently advanced these days.



Karl Marx

Theory of Laissez-Faire

It was a result of Industrial Revolution that the theory of Laissez-Faire or “free trade” came to the forefront. By this theory capitalist

and traders pleaded that the state had no right to interfere in the affairs of the factories and trade.

Impact of Industrial Revolution

The Industrial Revolution led man to become a slave of the machines. The owners of the factories ruthlessly exploited their employees. The hours of work in the factory varied between fourteen to sixteen hours a day. The women and children were employed at low wages and were also required to work on dangerous machines. It also created serious problem of under employment. The people began to live an unnatural life.

The industrial Revolution had both good and as well as evil effects. But it is undoubtedly clear that these effects were far reaching. **Davies** says, “The Industrial Revolution was not however an unmixed blessing. The domestic system of industry which it brought to an end was in many respects ,more conducive to the happiness of the workers”. It bestowed great material benefits to mankind. In brief the industrial revolution has made the modern world what it is today.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. During the Industrial Revolution Production became _____.
a) faster b) slower c) very slow d) no change
2. _____ was the birth place of the Industrial Revolution.
a) USA b) France c) England d) Germany
3. Great Britain is an _____.
a) Peninsula b) Island c) Desert d) Mountain

4. Cotton gin was invented by _____.
a) James Hargreaves b) Eli Whitney c) Samuel Crompton d) Elias Howe
5. In _____ the First Passenger Railway was operated in Britain.
a) 1830 b) 1850 c) 1779 d) 1900

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. John Kay | Road |
| 2. James Watt | Dynamo |
| 3. Faraday | Flying Shuttle |
| 4. MC Adam | Spinning |
| 5. Humphrey | New Steam Engine |
| | Safety Lamp |
| | Cotton Gin |

III) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. Textile Industry
 - a) Which industry gained the first momentum from the outburst of Invention?
 - b) Who invented the "Plying Shuttle"?
 - c) Who invented the sewing Machine?
 - d) When was the Cotton Gin invented?
2. Invention in Power
 - a) Who invented a new steam Engine in 1769?
 - b) Who invented the safety Lamp?
 - c) What did Bersemer invent 1855?
 - d) Who introduced the Pudding process? What is it used for?

IV) Answer Briefly.

1. What is meant by the term 'Industrial Revolution'?
2. What were the results of the expansion of Commerce?
3. Write a note on Revolution in Agriculture
4. What is the motive behind socialism?
5. Who is Karl Marx? What was his Theory?

V) Answer in Detail.

1. What were the Causes for the Industrial Revolution?
2. What were the effects of the Industrial Revolution?
3. Mention some Important scientific Inventions that were made during the Industrial Revolution.

HISTORY

1. THE FRENCH REVOLUTION (1789)

"When France catches cold entire Europe sneezes"

The French Revolution was a period of great upheaval in French history. During this period the absolute monarchy of France and the entire social three-estate system was overthrown. People in the third estate or the lower working classes were tired of being treated badly and wanted radical changes right away.



Louis XVI

Absolutism

The French system of absolute monarchy was rooted in the "Divine Right Theory of Kingship". The church supported this theory. Under this system, the people had no freedom for redressal. The only traditional



Queen Marie Antoinette

representative body flourished earlier was the "States General". It was a tricameral body consisting of a chamber for clergy, another for nobility and the third one for the commoners. This was only an advisory body but that too was not convened since 1614. Another body known as parliament was entrusted with the responsibility of registering king's edicts. But that parliament too was ignored by the court. Hence, there was no forum through which king could gain acquaintance with people's issues

Economic Reasons

Feudalism was decaying. The nobles who owned large tracts of lands practised absentee land lordism. They left their lands under the care of petty officials and settled in the capital, so as

to gain proximity with the king. Their officials mismanaged the lands and exploited the peasants. The nobility were exempted from many taxes and compulsory labour. At the same time, they collected exorbitant dues from the peasants and held tight control over their produce. They could even award punishments to the disobedient peasants. Similarly, 1/3 of lands in France were held by clergy. They too enjoyed exemptions from most of the taxes. At the same time they used to collect Tithes and other dues from the people. The peasants were thus exploited by the state, nobility and clergy.

The burden of most taxes fell on the peasants. They were coerced to render free manual labour to the state, nobility and clergy. Dissent was punished with repressive measures. The French colonies at that time were not prosperous enough to support the French government and the traditional industries could not make any progress. There were poverty and starvation deaths everywhere.

The Catholic church enjoyed absolute sway over the French Society. It registered births and deaths, regulated marriages, controlled education and determined the moral standards. The church became owner of vast tracts of land, and enjoyed exemptions from taxes, military service and manual labour. They joined with the king and nobility against the interests of poorer sections of society. Corruption and moral degradation made the church unpopular.

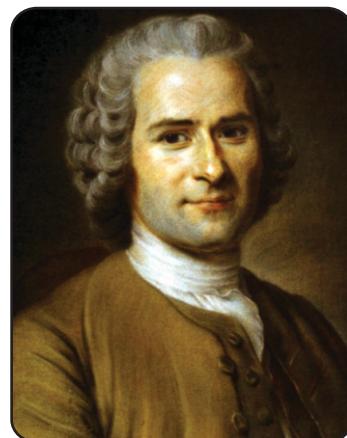
The burden of wars

Since the days of Louis XIV, France was involved in incessant

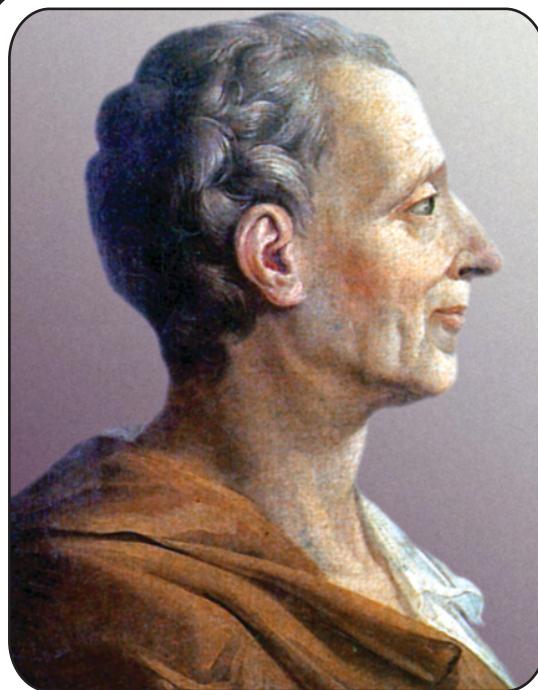
warfare with other European nations. The seven years war and Austrian war of succession had emptied the French treasury. At the same time, France did not gain anything from these wars. These expensive wars led to financial crisis in France.

Role of Philosophers

The French Revolution was inspired by the thought and writings of the eminent philosophers of the day. Of them Voltaire, an internationally famous writer raised his voice against superstitions and church. He was honoured by king Fredrick the Great of Prussia for his writings. Rousseau repudiated the "Divine Right theory of Kingship" through his "Social Contract" Theory. His social contract (book) became the Bible of the Revolution. He emphasized that people's will was the basis of the state and man was entitled to "Liberty. Equality and Fraternity". Montesquieu held absolutism responsible for the miseries of the people. He suggested the English model of separation of powers as a constitutional remedy for a welfare government in his book, "The spirit of Laws". There were a group of thinkers known as physiocrats who suggested economic remedies. Such ideas influenced and inspired the leaders of the French Revolution.



Rousseau



Montesquieu

Immediate cause

The drought and famine prior to 1789 worsened the conditions and that resulted in the outbreak of "bread riots". The court especially the Queen Marie Antoinette was insensitive to the people's plight and provoked it further by their indiscrete remarks. At the same time, the French volunteers who took part in the American war of independence returned to France with a new zeal. They were inspired by the American success and their experiments with "Republican system". They joined with the rioting people and strengthened the ranks of the revolutionaries.

France in 1789 - How the French revolution began

In 1789, the people of France were split into three estates:

1. The Clergy
2. The Nobility
3. The Commoners

Louis the XVI and his wife Maria Antoinette were weak and incompetent rulers. They enjoyed a lavish lifestyle and hence were in enormous amount of dept.

In 1789 Louis XVI called an estates general and the first since 1614, to discuss the dept.

At the meeting each estate had one vote, even though the first two estates comprised of only 20 to 25% of the population. As a result the third estate demanded individual rights for equal representation, as they were the majority and were angry at the lack of equality.

King Louis XIV locked the third estate out of the meeting chamber for its supposed insubordination.

Voting System

I Estate	II Estate	III Estate
I vote	I vote	I vote

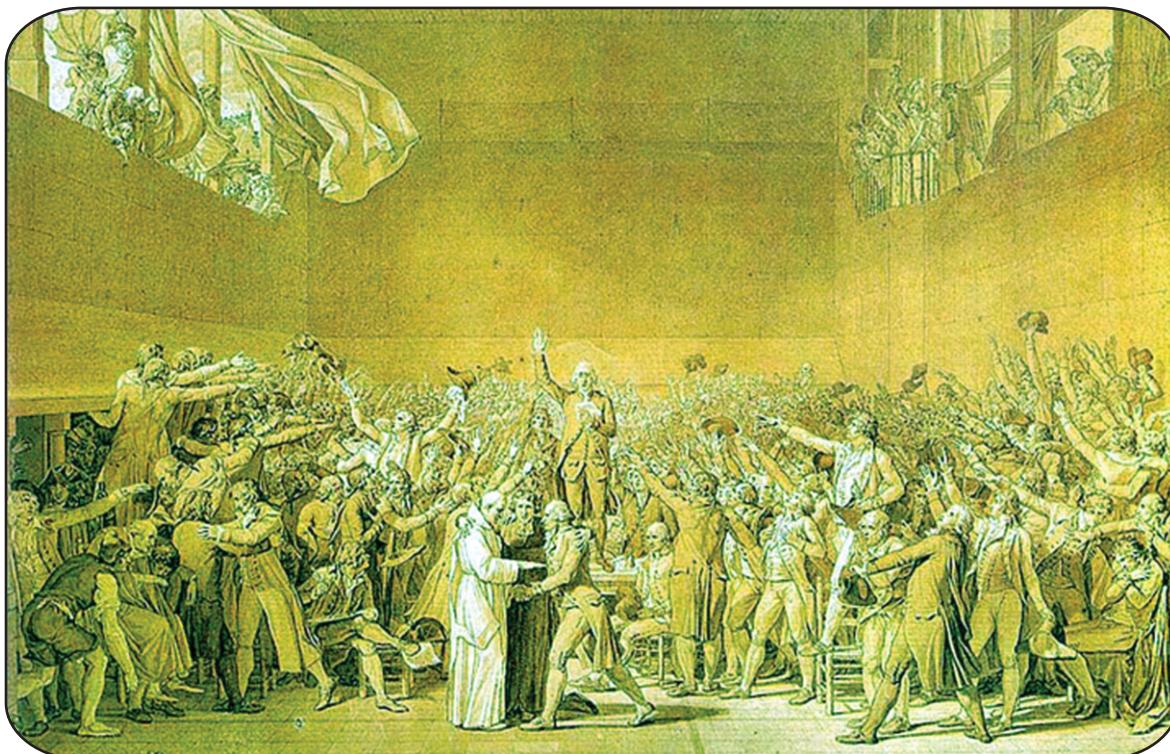
Always the first 2 estates got majority over the 3rd estate, $(1+1) = 2$ against 1.

The Tennis Court Oath

The third estate refused to give up and met at a tennis court close to the meeting chamber at the Palace of Versailles.

The 3rd estate took an oath that they would not disperse till they formed a National Assembly and a constitution. They also wanted to limit the powers of the king.

This was also known as "The Tennis Court Oath".



"Tennis Court Oath".

Storming of Bastille

The unruly mob in Paris stormed a medieval fortress – “Prison of Bastille” on July 14, 1789 which was a symbol of “royal despotism”. When the Swiss guards tried to prevent their entry, the unruly mob chopped off their heads, entered the prison and released the prisoners. Then they celebrated the day as the “Day of Liberty” for the whole nation.

The “Siege of Bastille” was a significant incident in the course of the French Revolution. The royal power was weakened. Then the revolutionaries established their own government called the “Paris Commune”.

Hungry women of Paris marched to the royal palace of Versailles and demanded bread. When there was no proper response, the mob entered the

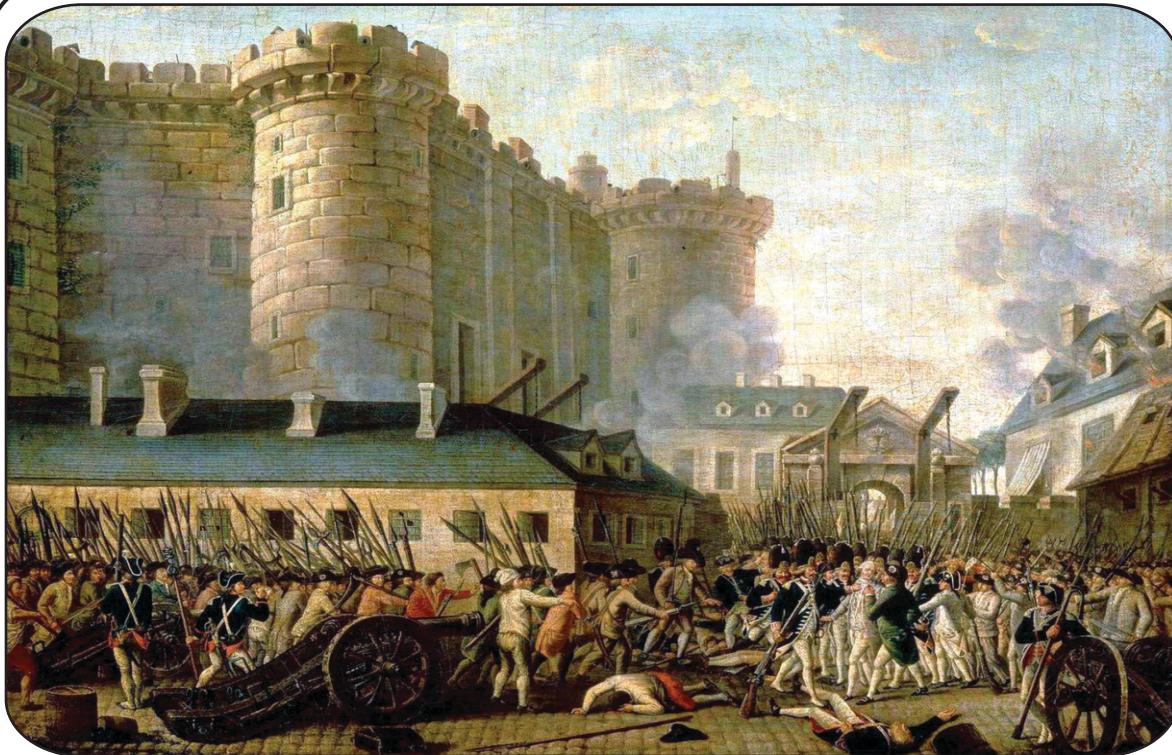
palace and ransacked it. They forced the king, queen and their children to live in Paris.

National Assembly

Meanwhile, the National Assembly was summoned and the famous “Declaration of the Rights of Man and the Citizen” was drafted on 12th August 1789. It is a very important document like that of the “Magna Carta or Glorious Charter” of England (1215 A.D.) and the “Bill of Rights” passed by the British Parliament in 1689 A.D.

Civil Constitution of the Clergy

The National Assembly began to draft the New Constitution for France in 1791. It reduced the powers of the king. Hereafter, laws were to be made by the Legislative Assembly. Religious toleration was assured. The church property was nationalized. Henceforth, the church officials were to be



"Siege of Bastille"

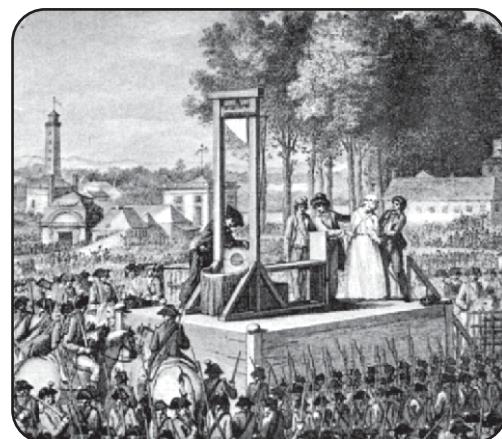
appointed by the government. The salaries of the higher church officials were reduced and that of the lower order slightly increased. The civil constitution of the clergy hurt the feelings of devout Catholics since it transferred the control of the church from the "Pope to the hands of the State". The Pope condemned the civil constitution. The Assembly insisted all church officials to take an oath of loyalty to the state. So the clergy split into two groups namely juring and non-juring clergy. The state supported the former and devout Catholics the latter. This resulted in the confrontation between the church and the state.

The king (a devout catholic) was unhappy over the civil constitution. But he was forced to sign the new constitution.

King's flight to Versailles

In June 1791, King Louis XVI attempted to flee the country with his

family but was caught at the border town of "Varennes". He was imprisoned and finally tried for treason, found guilty and executed before the public on January 21, 1793 by a cruel device called "**Guillotine**". Later Marie Antoinette and other royal followers were also guillotined. Again anarchy prevailed in France.



Guillotine



Guillotine



Guillotine

The Guillotine was an instrument for beheading, consisting of a heavy blade dropped between two grooved uprights. It was named after J.I. Guillotine, who advocated it.

Reign of Terror

The National Convention which met in September 1792 began to draft a new constitution. It abolished monarchy and declared France a "Republic" on September 21, 1792. It established a Committee of Public Safety which was headed by the extremist leaders like Danton and Robespierre. These leaders enjoyed unlimited authority. Their period in France from September 1792 to July

1794 came to be called "Reign of Terror". Thousands of nobles and innocent men who had supported monarchy were guillotined. This led to the downfall of the revolutionaries. The "**reign of terror**" came to an end with the execution of Robespierre at the guillotine in 1794.



Robespierre

The Directory

The moderate elements in the National Convention framed a new constitution for France in 1795. A "Directory" of five persons advised by a legislative body of two chambers ruled for five years from 1795 to 1799. They also failed to give a good administration for France. When there was royalist uprising in Paris against the new constitution troops were ordered to crush it. Thus the French Revolution came to an end.

Napoleon Bonaparte

A Corsican youth named "Napoleon Bonaparte" took charge of the command. After a "Whiff of grape – shot, he dispersed the unruly mob and captured power for himself. This young officer who was called the "Child of French Revolution" or "Product of

French Revolution" ruled France efficiently from 1799–1815. He reorganized the system of administration and gave France political stability after a chaotic period of revolution till his defeat at "Waterloo" in 1815.



Napoleon Bonaparte

Results of the French Revolution

The French Revolution of 1789 brought about far reaching changes. It inaugurated a new era in the history of mankind. The significant results of the French Revolution are listed below.

- 1) It abolished absolute monarchy and established a constitutional monarchy.
- 2) It destroyed feudalism and liberated the serfs.
- 3) The nobles and the church lost their property and their lands were distributed to the poor peasants.
- 4) Separation of the state and church in 1794 was brought about, and the concepts of secular government and secular legal system were introduced.
- 5) Slavery was abolished in the French colonies also.

6) The education system was built on secular foundations.

7) It created nationalist feelings and unity among the French people which was admired and followed later by the people of many countries in their struggle for freedom (e.g. India).

8) The French Revolution created a spirit of nationalism in Italy and Germany to achieve their unification against the foreign powers in the 19th century

9) The French Revolution spread the ideas of "Liberty, Equality and Fraternity not only in Europe, but also in many other countries of the world.

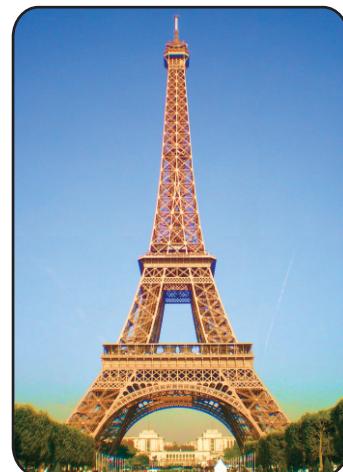
10) It proved to be the fore runner for the coming up of a new democratic and social order in Europe and elsewhere.

11) It gave to the world an efficient administrator Napoleon Bonaparte.

12) The out break of the French Revolution came like Manna from Heaven.

Do you know it ?

The Eiffel Tower was built for the International Exhibition of Paris of 1889 commemorating the centenary year of French Revolution of 1789.



Eiffel Tower

Do You Know ?

Until the French Revolution “The French People were more a Christian than a Citizen”.

Abraham Lincoln of U.S.A. and Mahatma Gandhi, the “Father of our Nation” were inspired by the ideas of French Revolution

EXERCISE**I) Choose the correct answer.**

- 1) The French Revolution took place in the year _____.
a) 1749 b) 1759 c) 1779 d) 1789
- 2) “States General” was the Parliament of _____.
a) England b) France c) Russia d) Italy
- 3) “Social Contract” was written by _____.
a) Voltaire b) Rousseau c) Montesquieu d) Danton
- 4) During the French Revolution the king of France was _____.
a) Louis XIII b) Louis XIV c) Louis XV d) Louis XIV
- 5) The _____ was the symbol of “Royal Despotism” in France
a) Prison of Versailles b) Prison of Bastille
c) Prison of Berlin d) Prison of Varennes
- 6) The “Reign of Terror” came to an end in _____.
a) 1790 b) 1791 c) 1792 d) 1794
- 7) _____ was called the “Child of the French Revolution”
a) Louis XVI b) Robespierre
c) Voltaire d) Napoleon Bonaparte

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1) The spirit of laws | Sep.1792 – July 1794 |
| 2) Second Estate | Voltaire |
| 3) Third Estate | Waterloo |
| 4) Reign of Terror | Rousseau |
| 5) Directory | Montesquieu |
| 6) Napoleon Bonaparte | Nobles
Commoners
1795 – 1799 |

III) Answer briefly.

- 1) Write a note on “Three Estates” of France.
- 2) What was the “Tennis Court Oath” ?
- 3) Write a note on – “Declaration of Rights of man and citizen”.
- 4) Write any two results of the French Revolution.
- 5) Who was Napoleon Bonaparte.

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1) Absolutism.

- a) What was the French system of absolute Monarchy dependent on?
- b) Who supported this theory ?
- c) What was the “States General” ?
- d) When was it convened last before the Revolution ?

2) Storming of Bastille.

- a) When was the prison of Bastille stormed ?
- b) What was the symbol of Royal despotism ?
- c) Which day was celebrated as the “ Day of Liberty” for the whole nation ?
- d) Which was the significant incident in the course of the French Revolution ?

3) Reign of Terror

- a) When did the National convention meet ?
- b) What was its declaration?
- c) Who headed the “committee of public safety” ?
- d) What was the period of “Reign of Terror in France ?

V) Answer in a paragraph.

- 1) What were the economic causes for the French Revolution ?
- 2) Describe the role of Philosophers in the French Revolution .
- 3) What were the results of the French Revolution ?

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Watch the movie 'A tale of Two Cities' and write a review on it.
2. Make a model of the guillotine.
3. Collect pictures of:
 - I. Marie Antoinette
 - II. The Palace of Versailles.
 - III. The Storming of Bastille
 - IV. The Eiffel Tower

Stick them in your scrap book and write a note on how each of the above had a part to play in the revolution.

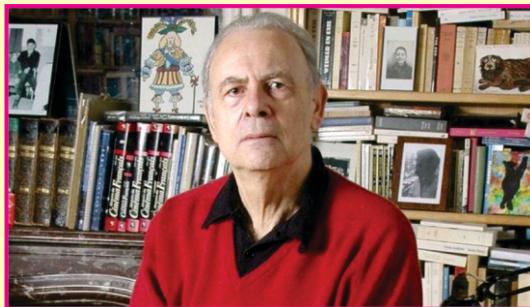
DO YOU KNOW?

NOBEL PRIZE



ALFRED NOBEL (1833-1896)

The Swedish dynamite inventor Alfred Nobel constituted the Nobel Prize in 1895. The Nobel Prize is awarded for outstanding contributions for mankind in Physics, Chemistry, Literature, Peace and Physiology or Medicine. It started its services from 1901. The Economic Sciences are also included for this award from 1969.



LITERATURE: PATRICK MODIANO (69), A French Writer & Novelist.

He received Nobel Prize 2014 "for the art of memory with which he has evoked the most ungraspable human destinies and uncovered the life-world of the occupation".

2 . Cultural Heritage of Tamil Nadu

In the Pre-Vedic India , a Dravidian Civilization flourished with its nucleus in the Indus Valley. Later with the coming of Aryans the nucleus was shifted to Peninsular India. The Tamil Language and culture are oldest surviving ones in the Dravidian family of civilizations. In the ancient Pali and Sanskrit literature the words Dramila and Dravida meant both Tamil and the Southern regions and distinguished these from Sanskritised northern region (Aryavartha).

The Tamil language and literature are noted for their antiquity. The Sangam poets like Mamulanar belonged to the age of Nandas and Mauryas i.e. 4th century B.C. Thus the present Tamil language has a continuous history of atleast 2500 years. It's antiquity, Versatility and it's distinct qualities has bestowed Tamil with a classical status. Unlike Sanskrit but similar to Chinese, Tamil has become the oldest, surviving, popular language of the Indian subcontinent and the eldest of the Dravidian languages of South India.

The political history of Tamil Nadu from 500 B.C to 1300 A.D is divided into three phases (1) The Sangam age (2) Kalabhras age (3) Age of Tamil empires.

During the Sangam age the political control of Tamil Nadu was divided between the crowned monarchs and petty chieftains. The Velians were the petty chieftains ruling over hilly tracts e.g. Aay of Podiyil hills, Adhiyaman of Kudhirai hills, Paari of Parambu hills. The fertile plains of river valleys were ruled by three crowned monarchs i.e. the Chera, Chola, and

Pandya. The petty chieftains and crowned monarchs patronized scholars and poets. Some of the kings themselves were excellent poets e.g. Ariyapadai Kadantha Nedunchezhan. The rulers were engaged in wars among themselves and with others like Sinhalese, Kadambas, Yavanas and Ariyas. Cheran Senguttuvan, Karikala Cholan, Ariyapadaikadantha Nedunchezian were a few of the prominent monarchs of the Sangam age.

The Kalabhras uprooted the Tamil Kingdoms in the second phase (3rd Century A.D.–6th Century A.D). However the Tamil literacy activities continued during their regime too. A Jain monk named Vajranandhi established a Dravida Sangha at Madurai. Achyuta Vikrantha was the most popular Kalabhras ruler who ruled from Uraiur.

The Kalabhras were replaced by the Pallavas of Kanchi in North Tamil Nadu and the Pandiyas of Madurai in South Tamil Nadu. The Pallavas were Simha Vishnu, Mahendravarman I and Narashimavarman I built a powerful empire by overcoming the challenges from Chalukyas, Rashtrakutas and Gangas. They became patrons of Saivism and Vaishnavism and built temples for Vaishnavite and saivite deities. In the South, the Pandiyas political unity patronised the Bakthi movement.

By the end of 9th century Vijayalaya and Aditya Chola of Tanjore revived the Chola power. Parantaka I, Rajaraja I and Rajendra Chola transformed Chola kingdom into an empire. They subdued

the Vengi Chalukyas, Pandyas, Chera and conquered the Sinhala kingdom. Rajendra sent expeditions to Bengal and Kadaram. The Cholas were ardent saivites who built many magnificent temples for Siva. The Brahadeeswarar temple, Gangaikondacholapuram and Darasuram are noteworthy among them.

Extensive trade contacts were established with far off countries like Sri Vijaya and China. By the end of 13th century the revival of Pandyas at Madurai and the emergence of Hoysalas of Dwarsamudra led to the decline and fall of the Chola empire.

Administrative System

The Sangam age had monarchical governments with an absolute monarch as the head, who had no checks on his authority. However the king was amenable to the advice of wise men of his court. the king's court known as Avai, Naalavai, Manram etc consisted of ministers, generals, high officials, chief queen, heir apparent (Komahan) and junior princes (Iango). The king had no standing army. Compulsory military service was imposed during the time of war. The royal army was categorised into four wings (a) Infantry (b) Cavalry (c) War elephant and (d) Chariots. Naval expeditions were also undertaken by Sangam kings e.g. Cheran Senguttuvan against Kadamba pirates and Karikala Chola against Sinhalese. Mandalam, Kottam, Ur were the administrative subdivisions. The village administration was carried on by assembly of elders. There was a regular system of revenue administration. Besides the loot from the wars excise, tolls, duties on salt, periodical gifts and tributes contributed to the revenue of the king. The kings especially the Pandyas and Cholas

encouraged extension of agriculture by deforestation, embankment of rivers and encouraging agrarian settlement in newly conquered regions.

During the phase of empires, the king's powers and responsibilities increased manifold. The number of ministers and officials increased. A powerful standing army including naval units was developed. A complex system of provincial administration emerged. The empire was divided into Mandalams and Mandalams into Nadus and Nadus into Kottams. Each Kottam consisted of a number of Perurs (large towns) Urs (villages) Nagarams (market towns) and Pattinams (coastal Towns). Autonomous local bodies like 'ur' or 'urar' for villages and Nattar for Nadus looked after the local administration.

The Villages endowed to the Brahmins (Brahmadeyam) were governed by the assemblies of local Brahmins. These Mahasabhas enjoyed complete freedom from external interference and exempted from regular taxes. The Chola age is known as the Golden age of the Mahasabhas. Forced labour was imposed for public works and even for building temples. Innumerable tanks, canals and reservoirs were created to increase food production.

Society

The 'Porulathikaram' in Tolkappiam describes the social conditions of the Sangam Tamils. The birth based caste and varna systems were absent among the Tamils Instead, the land based Tinai divisions were mentioned. The Tamil land was topographically divided into (a) Kurinji – hills and hilly region (b) Mullai – the Pastoral Slopes (c) Marudham – the

fertile cultivable plains (d) Neidal – the coastal or littoral region and (e) Paalai – the desert region.

The population was accordingly classified as

- i) Kuravar or Vedar of Kurinji
- ii) Idayar of Mullai
- iii) Uzhavar of Marudham
- iv) Minavar or Parathavar of Neidal
- v) Kallar of Paalai.

In the royal towns of Marudham region the people were classified as Arasar (princes) Anthanar (wisemen), Vanikar (traders) and Vellalar (agriculturists) Panar (bards), Viraliyar (dancers), Kuyavar (potters), Umanar (salt merchants), Vannar (washermen), weavers and other handicraft - men, poets and teachers were also mentioned. Names of women poets were found revealing the access of education to women. Love marriages were approved Chastity was considered the meritorious quality of women. There were very few instances of sati being committed by widows of royal families.

The 'Caste' system received royal recognition during the time of the Pallavas. The Brahmins were now given the highest status in the society. They emerged as religious leaders, political and social advisors and ultimate authority in legal issues. They were given land grants and tax concessions. All other castes were treated as Sudras. Untouchability became a menacing factor, these landless tillers were deprived of education, offices and access to temples. In the last phase of the Chola empire there emerged two groupings of castes; Valangai and Edangai which

led to Social tensions and regular clashes.

However it should be noted that Sangam ethical literature like Naladiyar and Thirukkural did not approve of caste. Sangam Tamils stressed more on ethical conduct than on faith and rituals. During the age of Tamil empires, the Bhakti movement, the Nayanmars and Alwars accommodated the Vedar, Putayar and Parayar as Bhakthas, yet they did not argue for their access to education, offices and temples.

Sangam literature

The Sangam literature, composed by poets belonging to different social segments including women, was secular in character and did not claim divinity. The Sangam literature includes Tolkappiam, (a grammar work) Ettuthogai, Pathupattu, Pathinen Keezh Kanakku and the two great epics Silapadikaram and Manimegalai. War and love are glorified in Ettuthogai and Pathupattu however most of the Pathinen Keezh Kanakku works were on morals. The 18 Minor works, 5 major epics (Silapadikaram, Manimekalai, Kundalakesi, Valayapathi and Seevaga sinthamani) and 5 minor epics (Neelakesi, Sulamani, Udayana Kumara Kaviyam, Yasodhara Kaviyam and Nagakumara Kaviyam) epics and grammatical works (Pingala Nigandu and Yapperumkalam) were produced during the Kalabra period. During the age of empires, Bhakti literature became abundant. Thevaram, Thiruvacakam, Divya Prabandham, Periapuranam Kambaramayanam propagated Saivism and Vaishnavism. Muvarula, Kalingathuparani, Nandikalambakam, Nannul and

Veeracholiyam are some of the noteworthy secular works. Tamil studies were supported by the chola grants (Pulavara Mutrool)

Though Sanskrit was the official language during Pallava period and sanskrit studies received royal patronage only few notable Sanskrit works were produced, for example, Mattavilasaprakasanam, kirtarjuniyam, Avanti Sundari Katha and Kavyadarsam. However Sanskrit succeeded in being accepted as the language of religious rituals of the temples. Sanskrit learning of the Brahmins were supported by tax free land grants (Bhatta Vritti and Veda Vritti)

Religion

The religious practices during Sangam age were Tinai based. The people were liberal in their religious out look and religion did not dominate socio political activities. Hero stones were worshipped, Seyon, Mayon, Vendan, Varunan, Valiyon and Kotravai were popular deities. Ganesa cult was absent. Singing and dancing (Kuravai and veriyattu) were associated with worship, offerings of flowers, grains and animals were made to deities. The Vedic yagnas of Brahmins attracted a few kings but had not become popular with the people. Jainism, Buddhism and Ajivikaism made inroads into Tamil society during Sangam age and became very popular during Kalabha period.

Bhakti movement gained momentum during the Pallava period. Nayanmars and Alvars carried on intensive propaganda against Jain and Buddhist. Siva, Thirumal and their consorts became important deities In the later phase of the Chola period

Murugan cult became popular. The Brahmins replaced local priests in temples and Sanskrit became the religious language. The Jains and Buddhists temples were either demolished or converted into Saivite or Vaishnavite temples. The Chola period witnessed Saivaite and Vaishnavite clashes. The Thillai Govindarajan idol was removed from Chidambaram temple, and the Vaishnavite Ramanuja was forced to seek asylum in Karnataka.

Virasaivism and Sri Vaishanvism raised their voice against social segregation. The Tamil Siddhars put a rational and powerful argument against caste discriminations, temple system, superstitions and rituals.



Ramanuja

Art and Architecture

The Sangam Tamils had their own system of music, dance and drama (Pann, Aadal and Koothu). The Panar and Viraliyar were professional



Five rathas

musicians and dancers. String instruments (Yaazh) wind instruments (Kuzhal) and drums (Muzhauu) were used in such performances. Festivals and worship were also associated with dance and music (Kuravai, Veriyattu) The Pallava inscription at Kudumianmalai refers to a great musician Rudracharya.



Brihadeeswarar Temple-Tanjore

The Devaram and Divya Prabandam were set to Ragas. The Puranic themes were enacted in the form of koothu or gaathas. The Devadasis or temple servants were excellent dancers.



Vaikuntha Perumal Temple
-Kancheepuram

In the field of architecture the Sangam age did not produce enduring structures with the advent of the Pallavas a new style in art and architecture appeared in Tamilnadu. At first Mandapams were excavated out of

rocks with excellent sculptural representations (Mahisasura Mandapam, varaha mandapam). Then single rocks were converted into ratha like temples(monolithic rathas at Mahabalipuram). They built structural temples by filling up stone`slabs. (Shore temple, Kailasanathar temple and Vaikuntha perumal temple). These temples were noted for their Vimanas. The imperial Cholas developed this style further. Elaborate campuses, protective walls, pillared halls, huge towers and multi shrines marked the Chola temple architecture. The Tanjore Brihadeeswaram, Gangai Konda Cholapuram and Darasuram are outstanding specimens of Chola architecture. All these temples have excellent sculptural representations. The Sittannavasal caves Kailasanathar temple and Brihadeeswarar temple have the best specimens of paintings. The Chola bronze images of Nataraja, Siva, Vishnu and other deities have earned global acclaim.

The Tamil had developed their own system of mathematics time calculation, astronomy, and medicinal systems.

The Sangam literature refers to “Enn” Kanakku Nazhigai Yamam Kaathom and Kol. They also refer to seasons as Elavenil, Elaiudir etc. References to native medicines like Elathi, Tirikadukam, Siru pancha Mulam etc reveal Tamil's versatile achievements. Kaniyans were both astronomers and astrologers. The Tamil Siddhas produced excellent treatises on Siddha system of medicine and these treatises elaborate diagnosis, treatment by herbs and chemicals and also provide pharmacological details.

To conclude with, it can be said that the Tamils had excelled in many fields

of human activity and philosophically they emphasised on a universal outlook. Their theism did not give too much room for superstitions. Like the Buddhists and Jains, the Tamils opined, that good or bad, nothing comes from

others and held the view that man is the maker of his own destiny. The legacy of Tamils is a glorious chapter in Indian history.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Tamil language has a continuous history of at least _____ years.
a) 3500 b) 2500 c) 1500 d) 400
- 2) The Kalabhras were replaced by the _____ at Kanchi in north Tamil nadu
a) Cheras b) Cholas c) Pandyas d) Pallavas
- 3) The Pallava inscription at _____ refers to a great musician Rudracharya.
a) Kudimian malai b) Utheramerur
c) Mamandur d) Mahendravadi
- 4) The Pallavas gave importance to _____
a) Tamil b) Telugu c) Sanskrit d) Malayalam
- 5) _____ describes the social condition of the Sangam Tamils
a) Manimegalai b) Tholkappiam c) Pathupattu d) Ettuthogai

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1) Pattinam | drama |
| 2) Panar | musician |
| 3) Koothu | coastal region |
| 4) Viralilar | Forest region |
| 5) Mullai | hilly region |
| | dance |
| | Plains |

III) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

- 1) Sangam literature
 - a) Name the two great epics of the Sangam literature ?
 - b) How many major epics are there in Sangam literature ?
 - c) What are the Tamil works that mention war and love ?
 - d) Write a note on Bhakti literature

2) Sangam society

- a) Who were the people of Kurinji region ?
- b) How was the coastal regions called?
- c) Which book throws light on the social condition of the Sangam Tamils ?
- d) What are the five Thinais ?

IV) Answer briefly.

- 1) Write a note on Tamil language
- 2) Name the important temples during the Chola Period.
- 3) What were the source of revenue for the kingdoms?
- 4) Write a note on Kalabharas.
- 5) What is the Siddha system of medicine ?
- 6) Write a note on Sangam Music.

V) Answer in a paragraph.

- 1) Explain the administrative system of the Sangam age.
- 2) Write a note on the cultural contribution of the Cholas.

VI) On the outline map of South India mark and shade the the Chera , Chola,Pandya and Pallava kingdoms.

FORMATIVE ASSESSMENT

1. Collect pictures of famous temples built during the Pallava and Chola periods. Write a note on their architecture.
2. Enumerate or make a list of the contributions of TamilNadu to Indian culture in terms of
 - I. Language and Literature
 - II. Society
 - III. Religion
 - IV. Art
 - V. Architecture
 - VI. Science

SHAKTHII ACADEMY

SOCIAL STUDIES - HISTORY

STANDARD - TEN

The image shows three book covers from Shakthii Academy:

- Quantitative Aptitude**: With Solution. Cover features a logo with a heart and the word "math". Price: Rs.200.
- Computer Awareness**: Cover features a globe and a laptop. Price: Rs.70.
- Banking Awareness**: Cover features three people at a computer with the word "BANK" in large letters. Price: Rs.70.

These books are available at Shakthiiacademy
Contact: 9176 448 448
Between 10 AM to 7 PM

HISTORY

1. Imperialism - Imperialism in India and China

a. Imperialism

In the late 19th century and early 20th century there was a great upheaval in Europe in their political and economic systems. These European upheavals forced the European nations to extend their authority over the political and economic life of other nations which we call it as imperialism. The word imperialism derives from the Latin word '**'Imperium'** meaning 'Power'.

The term imperialism refers to the policy of extending a country's rule over the others (or) the aggressive behaviour of one state against another (or) a country's domination over the political and economic interest of another nation to exploit its natural resources.

Colonialism and Imperialism

The policy adopted by the European countries from AD1492–AD1763 is known as Colonialism. During this period England, France, Spain and Portugal established their colonies in the Asian and American continents.

Colonialism refers to the policy of acquiring and maintaining colonies especially for exploitation. It also means that it is a relationship between an indigenous majority and a minority foreign invaders.

Imperialism is a state policy and is developed for ideological as well as financial reasons. Imperialism is the concept whereas colonialism is the practice.

Between A.D 1763 – A.D 1870 the European countries were involved in a number of wars and unification movements. After the unification, Italy and Germany began to establish their political and economic powers in Africa and Asia. This policy of imperialism followed by European countries from A.D.1870-A.D 1945 is known as New Imperialism.

The major forms

Imperialism took two major forms in the 19th century. It was typically enforced with either direct military intervention (total control by the mother country) or indirect control by establishing a protectorate (where the mother country served as a 'guide').

Military Imperialism

The USA's invasion against Iraq with its military power, forced it to have another sort of government favourable to the USA. This is called military imperialism.

Political Imperialism

British conquered territories in India and appointed their own officers and changed the existing political structure. This is called political imperialism.

Economical Imperialism

China was politically independent under the Manchu rule, but it was economically controlled by the European and American countries. This is called economical imperialism.

Causes for the rise of imperialism

Industrial Revolution

Industrial Revolution in European countries resulted in a great increase in production. So it created a great demand for raw materials and new markets in Asian and African continents where the industrial revolution had not yet spread. They could not find market in Europe as they followed '**Protective Trade Policy**'. The purchasing power of the people was also less due to capitalism. It also introduced a great progress in the means of transport and communication.

The telegraph system linked the whole world and reduced great distances. The development of railways speeded up the movement of goods between colonies and the mother country. So it was easier to bring raw materials and to take the finished goods to the markets in the interior parts of the colonies in Asia and Africa.

National security

The sense of national security and self-sufficiency among the European political groups instigated colonial imperialism. Often Presidents or Prime Ministers worked towards colonial imperialism owing to the influence of business or some other interest.

Nationalism

The later part of the nineteenth century saw extreme nationalistic ideals in Europe. Germany and Italy were unified. Many nations developed pride over their race, culture and language and started feeling superior to other countries. They felt that acquisition of colonies would enhance the prestige of their nations. Imperialism became the fashion of the

age. The Europeans felt that it was '**White Man's burden**' to civilize the backward and uncivilized native people of Africa and Asia. This was another cause for Imperialism.

Balance of power

The concept of Balance of Power was one of the driving factors. European Nations were forced to acquire new colonies to achieve a balance with their neighbours and competitors.

Discovery of New routes

The discovery of new routes to African and Asian continents promoted the spirit of imperialism. The discovery of sea routes paved the way for the traders and soldiers to exploit the abundant wealth of the countries.

Growth of Population

The population growth and its impact—unemployment, forced the Europeans to emigrate in search of new lands and careers abroad.

State of Anarchy

There was no international organization to enact and enforce laws for nations to maintain peace and security among countries before the First World War. This state of anarchy supported the colonial race.

Techniques of Imperialism

Several techniques were adopted by the imperialists in order to establish themselves.

Conquest and Annexation

In the early modern times, the Spaniards, the Frenchmen and the British used to send soldiers to distant lands. They overpowered the native chiefs, conquered their lands and established colonies. This is the method of Conquest and Annexation.

Concession or Franchise

Sometimes an aggressive agency, would acquire an exclusive right to exploit some economic resources, in a "backward" region and it was called a **concession or franchise**. A group of German bankers and engineers got a concession to build a long railroad called Bagdad Railway in Turkey.

Leasehold

When an exclusive right to exploit some economic resources was accompanied with the grant of lease to extend the territory and the actual exercise of political control over it, it was called leasehold. The German Empire acquired such leasehold of ninety-nine years over a part of the Shantung Peninsula in China.

Sphere of Influence

In some instances a state would acquire an exclusive or even a preferential right to exploit and develop a backward region economically, and not to allow other states to establish any form of control over it. This technique was called '**Sphere of influence**'. Thus in 1907, Great Britain and Russia, divided Persia into three zones:

- British (southern) sphere of influence., Russian (northern) sphere of influence, and
- Central or neutral sphere of influence.

This method was also adopted in China by the European countries.

Protectorate

It means that an indirect exercise of political control of a powerful nation over a weak and backward region through a native puppet ruler. Example in 1912 France established a protectorate over Morocco.

Economic or Tariff Control

In some other cases the powerful nation could take over the complete charge of the finances of a weak and backward region, or its tariff system. This method was called Economic or Tariff control. For example before World War I, the Turkish economic system was actually controlled by the Ottoman Public Debt Administration. This was an organization composed of mainly European officials.

Mandate System

This was the last form of the new imperialism. It emerged at the Paris Peace Conference(1919), at the suggestion of General Jan Smut of South Africa. Most of the former colonies and other backward regions were assigned to the League of Nations. The League delegated its authority, subject to some restrictions, to various states as its agents or "mandatories".

Effects of Imperialism

Positively speaking the powerful nations developed the transport and communication facilities in the weaker nations. The former gave the latter education. They improved medical care, and better methods of sanitation. They introduced new farming methods, to get increased food production. These changes meant less death in the colonies, and overall improvement in the standard of living. It promoted order, discipline and unity in countries.

- Negatively speaking, the colonies had no freedom. They were exploited and treated as slaves.
- Imperialism led to the exploitation of the natural resources of the colonies.

- The colonies were used as the suppliers of raw materials and markets for finished products.
- The colonies plunged into poverty and unemployment due to the disappearance of indigenous industries.
- The traditional pattern of agriculture was completely changed as the natives were forced to cultivate raw materials than food crops.
- The introduction of western culture and education led to the loss of traditional culture of the colonies.
- It also led to the extinction of some native races of Africa due to slave trade.
- The policy of racial discrimination was practiced in some colonies.

b. Imperialism in India

It is true that the political condition i.e. the rivalry among the native rulers rather than the motive of the British that instigated imperialism in India. The English East India Company was formed in 1600 in England and later it set up a trading post at Surat with the permission of Mughal Emperor, Jahangir. In the next few years the Mughals granted Britain the right to trade and to establish factories in exchange for English naval protection to the Mughal Empire, which faced Portuguese sea power.

In 1664, the French East India Company was established by Colbert, a minister of Louis XIV of France and opened trading centres in India. There started rivalry between France and Britain. It led to Carnatic wars resulting in the uproot of French influence in India.

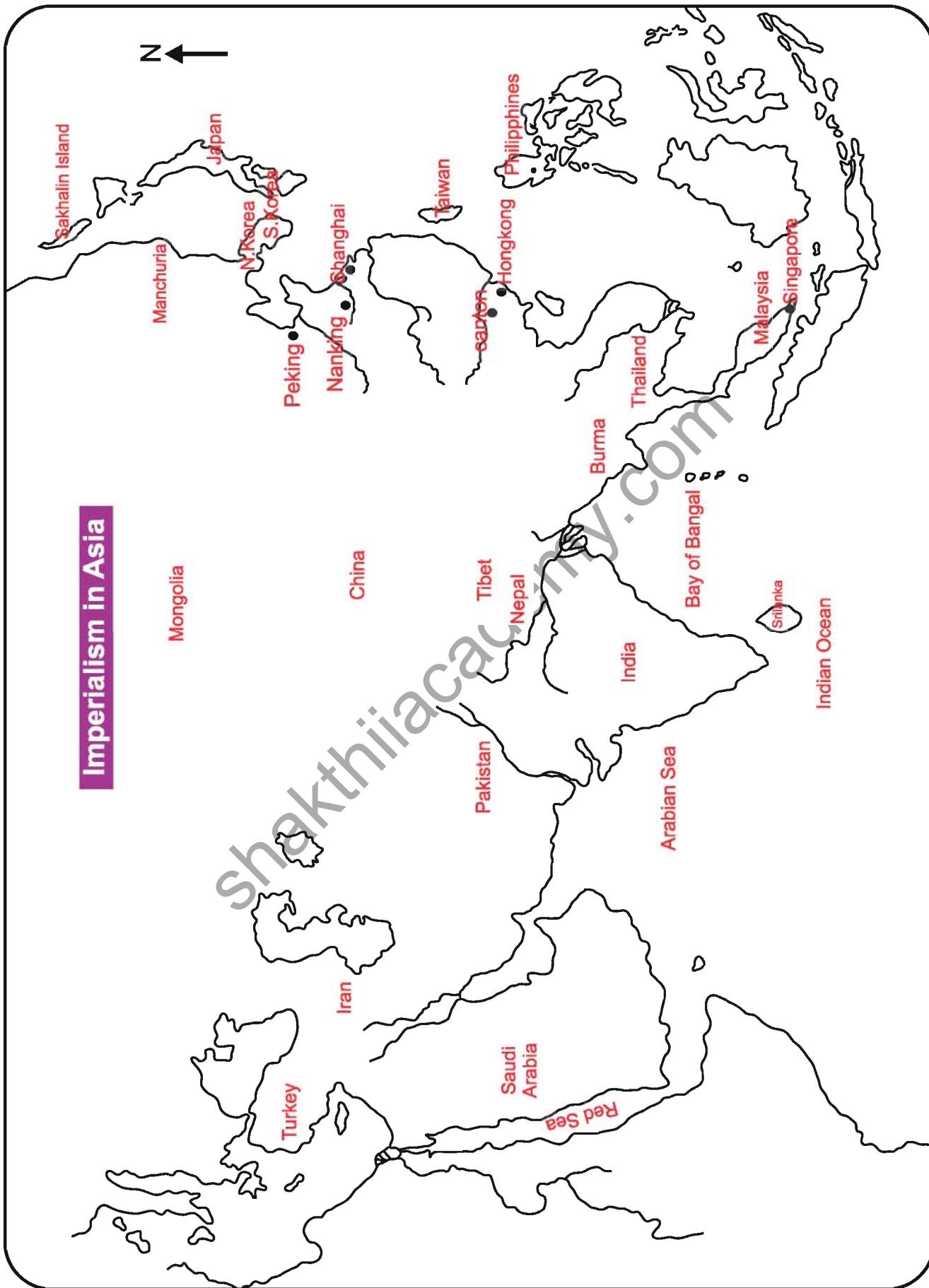
In 1757, the Nawab of Bengal Siraj-Ud-Daulah, opposed the British attempts to use Duty free Trade in Bengal. It resulted in the Battle of Plassey in 1757 led by Robert Clive. The East India Company was granted undisputed right to trade free of tax in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa and the 24 parganas near present Calcutta. The Company acquired the civil rights of administration in Bengal from the Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II after its success in the battle of Buxar in 1764. It marked the beginning of Company's formal rule in India. Lord Wellesley conquered number of states in India by his Subsidiary Alliance. Lord Dalhousie annexed many more states by his Doctrine of Lapse. In 1857, the Great Indian Revolt against the English East India Company's rule broke out and later it was suppressed. In 1858, the administration of India was passed to the British Crown by Queen Victoria's Proclamation. India continued to be under the rule of British Government till her independence in 1947.

c. Imperialism in China

Certainly it is an interesting thing to study about imperialism in China. The Chinese regarded themselves as superior, and the only truly civilized in the world. The other Asian traders adopted the Chinese culture but not the European traders. Hence the trade with these foreign powers was restricted to the cities of Canton and Macao from 1757 by the Chinese Emperor. But the Europeans were irritated by the Chinese behavior.

To India, the British imported sufficient British goods from England for Indian goods. It avoided them paying in gold. But the Chinese

Imperialism in Asia



restricted all trades to the specific ports under the supervision of government officials. The Chinese sold tea and coffee to the British but always wanted payment in gold. Over time, the British became worried that huge amounts of gold were ending up in China. So they found out a short cut.

First Opium War A.D 1839-A.D 1842

The British started to grow opium in India and sell it in China. They sold opium for Chinese goods, or even for gold. The Chinese thought that their peace was disturbed by the Europeans. On the other hand European traders were increasingly irritated by the high customs duties they had to pay and by the attempts to curb the growing import trade in opium. By 1800 its importation was forbidden by the imperial government. However, the opium trade continued to boom. The British, who had lions share in opium trade resorted to war in 1839. The war was called First Opium War.

The Chinese were defeated and forced to sign the Treaty of Nanking in 1842. According to the treaty China gave up the island of Hong Kong permanently to England. It also opened five ports to the British Traders. The English were also given extra territorial jurisdiction in criminal cases.

Taiping Rebellion - A.D 1854

The Americans, the French and other foreign countries signed similar treaties with China. The Chinese rebelled against the native Manchu kings and the foreigners in 1854. The rebellion was known as **Taiping Rebellion** and it was also suppressed.

Second Opium war A.D 1857-A.D 1860

The foreigners demanded more ports for trade. The Chinese government rejected the demand. The British and French bombarded and captured Canton in 1857. It was called as the Second Opium War. The Chinese were defeated and agreed to sign the Treaty at Peking in 1860. The Chinese gave up the port of Kowloon to Great Britain and opened more ports for other Europeans.

Boxer Rebellion

After Second Opium war, there prevailed peace and tranquility in China for some time. When China was defeated by Japan in the First Sino-Japanese war in 1894, China had to give the Island of Formosa to Japan.



Empress Dowager

The Chinese got angry with the Manchu ruler. But the Empress Dowager, known as **old Buddha** decided to divert the public anger against her. She made the Chinese youths turn their anger towards the foreign powers which led to the outbreak of Boxer Rebellion. The Boxers attacked the British, French, German, Japanese and U.S settlements and all the Christians in 1899.

The End of Imperialism

The combined army of the foreign powers defeated the Boxers and marched to Peking, the capital of China. Empress Dowager fled the capital. The U.S.A and England formulated the Open Door Policy or “Me too policy”. The Chinese territories

were partitioned among the foreign powers for trade rights. Thus China became an international colony. The lessons learnt in the Boxer rebellion paved the way for the Revolution of 1911 and the establishment of a Republic of China under Dr. Sun Yat Sen.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. Germany and Italy became unified countries in
 a) 1870 b) 1872 c) 1780 d) 1782
2. A great demand for the raw materials was created by
 a) Industrial Revolution b) IT Revolution
 c) French Revolution d) Agrarian Revolution
3. The policy of Imperialism followed by the European countries from 1870 - 1945 was known as
 a) Neo - Imperialism b) Political Imperialism
 c) New Imperialism d) Military Imperialism
4. China was politically independent under the
 a) Chin rule b) Shang rule c) Chou rule d) Manchu rule
5. The movement of goods was speeded up by the development of
 a) Railways b) Roadways c) Airways d) Waterways
6. The 'Sphere of influence' was adopted by the European countries in
 a) Japan b) China c) India d) Burma
7. The English East India company was formed in
 a) 1600 b) 1664 c) 1644 d) 1700
8. The French East India company was established by
 a) Louis XIV b) Colbert c) Louis XVI d) De Brazza
9. The second opium war came to end by the Treaty of
 a) Peking b) Nanking c) Canton d) Shantung

10. The policy formulated by England and USA for China.
- a) Open door policy
 - b) Doctrine of Lapse
 - c) Protective Trade Policy
 - d) Scorched Earth Policy
11. The Mughal emperor who gave permission to English East India Company to set up trading post at Surat
- a) Shahjahan
 - b) Jahangir
 - c) Aurangazeb
 - d) Humayun
12. The Republic of China was established under
- a) Dr. Sun Yat Sen
 - b) Chou – En –lai
 - c) Mao Tse Tung
 - d) Chiang Kai Sheik

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. The Carnatic Wars | Asia |
| 2. Protectorate | China |
| 3. Racial discrimination | England |
| 4. Island of Hong Kong | End of French Influence in India |
| 5. International colony | France |
| | Imperialism |
| | Africa |

III) Answer the following briefly.

1. Define Imperialism.
2. What is colonialism?
3. Write about Military Imperialism.
4. How do you say that the Industrial Revolution is an important cause for the rise of Imperialism?
5. What do you know about economic or tariff control?
6. Write a short note on Mandate system.
7. What were causes for the first opium war?
8. How did China become an International Colony?
9. Write a note on Taiping Rebellion.

IV) Answer all the questions given under each heading.

1. Causes for the rise of Imperialism.
 - a) What became the fashion of the later part of the 19th Century?
 - b) What was the "White man's burden"?
 - c) Why were the European Nations forced to acquire new colonies?
 - d) What promoted the spirit of Imperialism?
2. Battle of Plassey and Buxar.
 - a) Who was the Nawab of Bengal in 1757?
 - b) Who introduced the Subsidiary Alliance?
 - c) Name the policy of Lord Dalhousie.
 - d) When was Queen Victoria's proclamation issued?
3. Imperialism in China.
 - a) Why was the trade restricted to the city of Canton and Macao?
 - b) What were the goods sold by the Chinese to the British?
 - c) Name the Chinese Empress. How was she known as?
 - d) Who formulated open door policy?
4. Boxer Rebellion
 - a) What was the result of the Sino – Japanese war?
 - b) Name the Island ceded by China to Japan.
 - c) What led to the out break of Boxer – Rebellion?
 - d) What did the Boxers do?

V) Answer the following in a paragraph.

1. What were the causes for Imperialism?
2. Explain the techniques of Imperialism?
3. What were the effects of Imperialism?
4. Describe first and second opium wars?

VI) Activities.

Mark the following on the outline map of Asia.

Peking, Canton, Hong Kong, Formosa, Korea, Nanking, Manchuria, Shakalin Islands, Japan, Pacific Ocean.

2. First World War(A.D.1914 - A.D.1918)

League of Nations

The great war known as World War-I made a mockery of the peace and abundance prophesied by the statesmen and scientists of the 19th century. It was called as the **World War** as it engulfed all the countries of the world directly or indirectly. The war had its impact on the material and non-material resources of the entire world.

causes for the First World War

Ambition of Germany

The unification of Germany in 1870 made Germany industrially developed. She needed additional markets and raw materials. Her colonies in Africa were not potentially rich as possessed by England and France. Kaiser William II of Germany believed that his country alone was competent to rule the whole world. He could not tolerate the British saying that the sun never sets in the British Empire. Germany needed colonies not only as a sign of her world importance but also for her growing population. In order to protect Germany he increased the strength of the army and stationed a fleet at Heligoland in North Sea. The aggressive policy adopted by the German ruler led to the First World War.

Secret Alliances

The European powers allied themselves into opposing groups and signed several secret military alliances which led suspicion among the countries and finally resulted in the First World War. The two opposing groups were:

Triple Alliance-1882-Italy, Germany and Austria-Hungary.

Triple Entente-1907-France, Britain and Russia.

Lack of International Organization

There was no effective international Organization to reconcile conflicting interests of nations. There was anarchy in the International relations of the various countries. The Hague conference of 1882 and 1907 which tried to do some work of reconciliation failed to show any results.

Militarism

Militarism was a strong factor for war. European Statesmen often said "If you wish for peace prepare for war".

Germany, France and Russia adopted a new programme of arms expansion. Great Britain increased its, already large, naval expenditure. Germany, in fear of an anticipated attack from France initiated military expansion.

Colonial and Commercial Rivalry

Since Geographical discovery of the 15th and 16th century there was a race for colonies among the European countries. The Industrial revolution increased the demand for raw material and market for their manufactured goods. Asian and African countries were already colonized by the Europeans. Germany made a great progress after her unification. Her goods flooded in the international market which made Britain angry.

The Moroccan Problem

When France occupied Morocco it was recognized by Britain. But it was opposed by Kaiser William II of

Germany who wanted to declare Morocco an international colony. He sent two warships – Berlin and Panther to Morocco. When Britain intervened Germany withdrew her ships from Morocco. It wanted to revenge Britain.

The Balkan Problem

The Balkan countries like Serbia, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece and Montenegro proclaimed their independence from the Ottoman Empire due to its weakness. In 1912 the Balkan countries declared war on Turkey. This is known as First Balkan war. Turkey was defeated. The war came to an end by the Treaty of London. Dispute arose between Serbia and Bulgaria in sharing the spoils of the war. In 1913, the other Balkan countries declared war on Bulgaria. Bulgaria was defeated and Serbia gained more territories. Turkey and Bulgaria approached Germany to regain their territories. It resulted in the war.

French interest

France wanted to get back Alsace and Lorraine which she lost during the Franco - Prussian war to Germany. France thought that the industrial development of Germany was due to those territories. So she was waiting for a chance to get back those territories.

Immediate Cause

The Congress of Berlin, 1878 gave the right to Austria - Hungary to govern Bosnia and Herzegovina but not to annex it. These territories should have gone to Serbia since the inhabitants were Slavs as in Serbia. But in 1908, Austria annexed Bosnia and Herzegovina against the congress of Berlin. It created rivalry between Austria-Hungary and Serbia.

In June 28, 1914 Austrian crown prince **Francis Ferdinand** and his wife **Isabella** were assassinated by a Serbian lad at Serajevo, the capital of Bosnia. Austria sent an ultimatum to Serbia with humiliating terms. When Serbia ignored the ultimatum, Austria declared war on Serbia on 28th July 1914.

Russia moved her troops to support the cause of Serbia against Austria. Germany declared war on Russia. France by her alliance went to help Russia. So Germany declared war on France. When Britain joined France against Germany the First World War started.

Course of the War

The First World War began in July, 28, 1914 and lasted till November, 11, 1918. The countries which were on the side of Germany were called as the Central Powers and those on the side of Britain as the Allies. Artillery, Tanks and Submarines were used in the war.

War in the Western Front

Germany started the offensive and she invaded France by crossing Belgium. The British and French forces were not able to stop the advance of the German forces. But in the Battle of Marne, the Allies were able to hold them in check. Both the armies dug trenches and fought from them.

War in the Eastern Front

The Russian forces attacked both Germany and Austria. But Russia suffered a defeat at the battle of Tannenberg. When Austria was facing a crisis, Germany came to its aid. German forces inflicted heavy losses on the Russian forces and forced them



to withdraw from the Austrian territories.

War in the Near East Front

In October 1914, Turkey entered the war extending her support to the Central Powers. This was a terrible blow because communications between Russia and the Allies were cut off. The British made an attempt to capture Gallipoli Peninsula with a view of controlling the Dardanelles and capturing Constantinople. But the Dardanelles expedition was an utter failure.

Bulgaria and Rumania In the War

The failure of the British in the Dardanelles expedition emboldened Bulgaria to join the side of the Central Powers in 1915. Rumania joined the Allies in 1916.

War on the Sea

While the British navy commanded the North Sea, the Mediterranean sea was dominated by the French and Italian navy with the British support. In the battle of Dogger bank a German battle cruiser was destroyed by the British. In spite of the heavy losses sustained by both the parties in the Battle of Jutland in 1916, the German fleet retreated to the port. Since it could not break the naval blockade of Britain, it used submarines to sink the ships of the Allies.

Entry of US in the First World War

In 1917 Germany drowned four merchant ships of America, including Lusitania with her submarines. More than hundred Americans died in this incident which made the American president Woodrow Wilson angry. Hence, on the 6th April 1917 Woodrow Wilson declared war on Germany.



Lusitania, an American Ship

Withdrawal of Russia

Russia suffered major reversal in the war. She suffered heavily both in men and materials. The discontent of the Russian people found expression in the October Revolution of 1917. The Czarist government was overthrown by Lenin and Russia withdrew from the war. Russia made peace with Central Powers at Brest – Litovsk in 1918.

End of the war

In the beginning, the Central Powers had some victories but soon their defences began to break. The Germans began to retreat. The resistance of Turkey and Bulgaria began to crumble. Austria sued for peace. In November 1918, Kaiser William II of Germany abdicated and fled to Holland. Germany sued for peace on November 11, 1918.

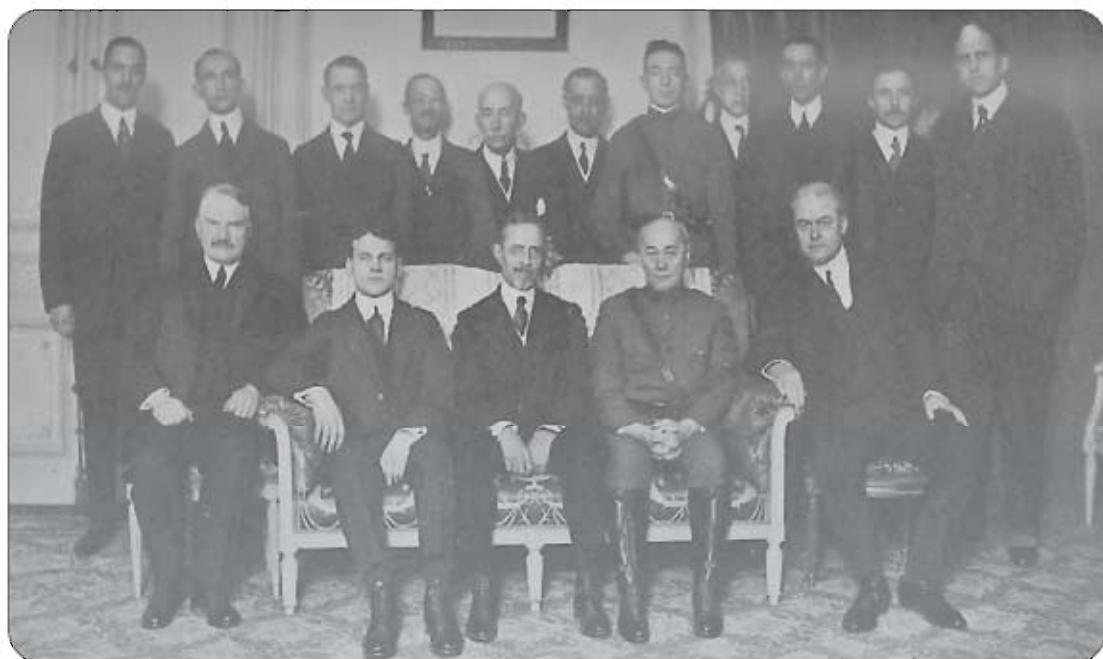
Results of the War

The First World War came to an end by the **Paris Peace Conference** of 1919. The main personalities of the conference were, Clemenceau of France, Lloyd George of Britain, Orlando of Italy and President Woodrow Wilson of America. The Peace Treaty with Germany was signed and it was called as **Treaty of Versailles**. Separate treaties were also concluded with other defeated countries. The **Treaty of St. Germaine** was concluded with Austria, the **Treaty**

of Trianon with Hungary, the Treaty of Neuilly with Bulgaria and the Treaty of Sevres with Turkey. It was on the Fourteen Points put forward by President Woodrow Wilson the terms of the treaties were drafted. The important terms of the treaties were the following.

- i) The covenant of the League of Nations was drawn up.
- ii) A huge war indemnity was imposed on Germany . Her army was reduced.
- iii) Germany surrendered Alsace and Lorraine to France. She also gave up the Saar coal field to be occupied by France for a period of 15 years.
- iv) The overseas possessions of Germany were divided among the victorious nations.

- v) Monarchy was abolished in Germany, Russia, Austria and Turkey.
- vi) In many countries Monarchies gave place to Democracies. New Republics of Czechoslovakia and Poland were born.
- vii) The Republic of Austria and Hungary was recognised.
- viii) The city of Danzig was internationalized.
- ix) Lithuania, Latvia and Estonia were granted Independence.
- x) The victorious nations forced the defeated nations with unfair treaties, it sowed the seeds for another world war.



STAFF OF THE INQUIRY AT THE PARIS PEACE CONFERENCE

THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS -1920

In the flames of World War I, Europe was consumed. It made the western countries to realize some international organization must be set up to prevent war in future.



Woodrow Wilson

On the initiative of Woodrow Wilson, the President of USA, in January, 1919 a Peace Conference was held in Paris and the representatives of forty two countries took part in it. A council of ten with two representatives each from America, Britain, France, Italy and Japan was formed. They worked hard to make the council function well. But Francis Clemenceau of France, Lloyd George of England, Woodrow Wilson of America and Orlando of Italy, played a major role in the conference. The League of Nations was founded on the basis of their ideas.

In the Paris Peace Conference a suggestion was given for the establishment of an organization of nations. It was thought that only such an organization could prevent any future wars in the world. Before the foundation of such an organization, other institutions also came up. They were:- **The League of Nations Society (1915), The world League for Peace (1917), and The League of free nations**

Association (1918) and the League of Nations Union.

On the 14th February, 1919 the Peace Conference examined a note on maintaining peace in the world. According to it on January, 20th 1920, the League of Nations was officially founded with its headquarters in Geneva, Switzerland.



Headquarters - Geneva

The Fundamental Principles of the League of Nations

The following were the fundamental principles of the League of Nations.

1. It should improve the unity among nations and keep peace and security in the world.
2. The member nations of the League should respect and safeguard the frontiers of the neighbouring nations without indulging in acts of aggression.
3. The member nations should solve the problems arising among themselves only through the League of Nations. They should wait atleast for three months to hear from the League of Nations.
4. If any of the member nations would indulge in war violating the conditions of the League, the affected nations would be saved, even by resorting to the weapons of war.

5. All treaties contrary to the principles of the League of Nations should be given up.

Organs of the League of Nations

1. The General Assembly
2. The Council
3. The Secretariat
4. An International Court of Justice
5. International Labour Organization.

Achievements of the League of Nations

The League of Nations succeeded in solving various problems during its existence for about 20 years which deserve appreciation.

- 1) It settled a problem between Finland and Sweden regarding the ownership of Aaland Island in Baltic.
- 2) It solved a boundary dispute in Silesia and prevented a war between Poland and Germany.
- 3) It settled a dispute between Greece and Italy over the island of Corfu.
- 4) It avoided a war between Greece and Bulgaria over the border disputes.
- 5) In 1926 Germany was admitted as a member of the League of Nations followed by Soviet Russia in 1934.
- 6) It solved a border issue between Peru and Columbia.
- 7) Through its other organs the League prevented the spread of many diseases.
- 8) It extended its helping hand in solving the problems of refugees and lepers. It whole heartedly promoted cultural co-operation among the nations.
- 9) It attempted to raise the standard of Education in various states.

10. The international Court of Justice handled more than thirty cases. It delivered judgments in some cases and in some others gave advisory opinions.

Causes for the failure of the League of Nations

The League of Nations did not succeed in its prime aim of settling disputes among nations through peaceful means. Its failure was not its fault. It was indeed the failure of the member nations because they were responsible for it.

- 1) The United States of America, whose President was responsible for founding the League of Nations, could not become a member. Hence the league looked like a building without deep foundation.
- 2) Whenever the member nations were not happy with the attitude of the League, they were permitted to go out.
- 3) In 1931 Japan captured Manchuria and renamed it Manchukuo and made it a puppet state. When the League protested against this, Japan resigned from the League. It weakened the League.
- 4) The League of Nations did not have a permanent force or army of its own to implement its policies.
- 5) The rise of dictatorship in Italy, Japan and Germany weakened the chances of success of the League.
- 6) The statesmen who dominated the League lacked practical wisdom. Their approach remained somewhat Utopian and it began to be called by some as "Geneva Conference of Fools".

The above factors were responsible for the failure of League of Nations. Yet it tried its level best to solve international problems and paved way for the formation of U.N.O after the second world war.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. 'Germany alone was competent to rule the whole world' said by

a) Bismarck	b) Kaiser William II
c) Hitler	d) Mussolini
2. Kaiser William II stationed a fleet at

a) Heligoland	b) Aaland	c) Jutland	d) Ireland
---------------	-----------	------------	------------
3. France wanted to get back

a) Alsace and Lorraine	b) Bosnia and Herzegovina
c) Austria and Hungary	d) Estonia and Latvia
4. Austrian crown prince was.

a) Francis Ferdinand	b) Francis Duke
c) Francis de Lesseps	d) Francis Baycon
5. Austria declared war on Serbia on

a) 28th July 1914	b) 28th June 1914
c) 28th March 1914	d) 28th August 1914
6. Germany invaded France by crossing

a) Nether land	b) Luxemburg
c) Rhineland	d) Belgium
7. Turkey extended her support to the

a) Allied powers	b) Axis powers
c) Central powers	d) Super powers

8. This expedition was an utter failure for the British
 a) German expedition b) French expedition
 c) Dardanelles expedition d) Cuban expedition
9. The famous American merchant ship sunk by Germany
 a) Luftwaffe b) Royal c) Lusitania d) Berlin
10. In Russia the Czarist government was over thrown by
 a) Lenin b) Karl mark c) Martov d) Stalin
11. German battle cruiser was destroyed in the battle of
 a) Jutland b) Dogger bank c) North sea d) Baltic sea
12. Germany sued for peace on
 a) Nov. 11, 1918 b) Nov. 21, 1918
 c) Nov.12, 1918 d) Nov. 22, 1918
13. The First World War came to an end by the
 a) London Peace Conference b) Rome Peace Conference
 c) Berlin Peace Conference d) Paris Peace Conference
14. The League of Nations was officially founded in
 a) March 7, 1930 b) March 2nd 1928
 c) Jan. 20, 1920 d) Jan. 20, 1924

II) Match the following.

A

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------|
| 1. Clemenceau | Britain |
| 2. Orlando | France |
| 3. Lloyd George | Germany |
| 4. Woodrow Wilson | Austria |
| 5. Kaiser William- II | Russia |
| | America |

Italy

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------|
| 1. Treaty of Versailles | Romania |
| 2. Treaty of Trianon | Turkey |
| 3. Treaty of Neuilly | Italy |

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------|
| 4. Treaty of Serveres | Hungary |
| 5. Treaty of Germaine | Austria |
| | Germany |
| | Bulgaria |

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. Why did Germany need colonies?
2. Write a note on Moroccan problem.
3. What was the immediate cause of the First World War?
4. Explain war in the Eastern Front.
5. Write a short note on war on the sea.
6. Why did America enter into First World War?
7. Mention any two terms of the Treaty of Versailles.
8. Write any two fundamental principles of the League of Nations.
9. What are the organs of the League of Nations?
10. List out any two causes for the failure of the League of Nations.

IV) Answer all the questions given under each Caption.

1. Ambition of Germany
 - a) Who was the ruler of Germany during First World War?
 - b) What did he believe?
 - c) What could not be tolerated by him?
 - d) Where did he station a fleet?
2. Balkan Problem
 - a) Name the Balkan Countries
 - b) How did the First Balkan war come to an end?
 - c) Why did the other Balkan Countries declare war on Bulgaria?
 - d) What was the result of the Second Balkan war?
3. Immediate cause
 - a) When did Austria annex Bosnia and Herzegovina?
 - b) Who was the Austrian crown prince?
 - c) What happened to him?
 - d) What did Austria do?

4. Course of the war.

- a) Give the duration of the First World War.
- b) Who were called central powers?
- c) Who were called the Allies?
- d) What were used in the war?

5. War in the Near East Front.

- a) When did Turkey enter the war?
- b) Why was it consider a terrible blow?
- c) Why did Britain want to capture Gallipoli Peninsula?
- d) What was the results of Dardanelles expedition?

6. Results of the war .

- a) How were the terms of the treaties drafted?
- b) What did Germany surrender to France?
- c) Where was monarchy abolished?
- d) Name the New Republics.

7. League of Nations

- a) Name the organisations which were found before the League of Nations.
- b) Where was the League of Nations headquarters situated?
- c) How should the Member Nations solve the problems?
- d) When did Japan capture Manchuria?

V) Answer in a paragraph.

1. How can we say that the Balkan problem led to the first world war.
2. What were the results of the first world war?
3. What were the achievements of League of Nations?
4. Enumerate the causes for the failure of the League of Nations.

VI) Mark the following in the given out line map of Europe.

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------|------------|
| a) Tannenburg | b) River Marne | c) Jutland |
| d) Dardnelles | e) Danzig | |

3. World Between The Wars (A.D.1919 - A.D.1939) – Economic Depression

The economic depression of early 1930s was one of the most important events of the world between the two wars. It is called 'Great' as it adversely affected almost all the great countries of the world except USSR. The Great Depression which began in USA extremely affected the European countries

Causes

The main cause of the depression was the collapse of American share market. The share market collapse was due to speculation on borrowed money.



Herbert Hoover

In 1929 Herbert Hoover became the President of America. During his period the share market reached its zenith. Share market was the greatest craze in America. People from all walks of life bought shares not for the dividend but for resale value .By that they wanted to become rich quickly.

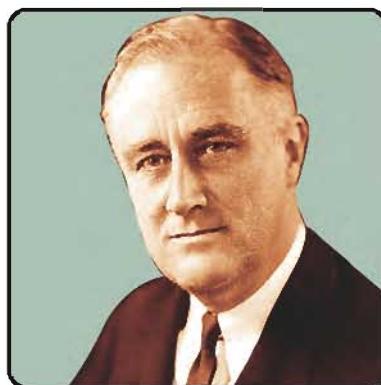
"The Great Depression" began on Oct 24, 1929 with the fall in the prices of shares.

It created panic and people began to sell their shares speedily which led to a further fall. This was followed by the failure of banks which led to the non availability of credit which affected industrial growth and agricultural produce.

Remedial measures of the American President Hoover

In 1932, Hoover, the American president adopted many remedial measures. He set up the Reconstruction Finance Corporation to lend money to banks and industries, but the people lost faith on Hoover.

When the Presidential election came in 1932. Franklin D. Roosevelt, commonly known as FDR became the President of U.S.A. In his election manifesto he said **"I pledge you, I pledge, myself to a New Deal for the Americans"**. He assumed office on March 4, 1933.



Franklin D Roosevelt

Franklin D Roosevelt

- The policy formulated to combat depression by FD Roosevelt is known as New Deal. It Includes Relief, Recovery and Reforms
- The Tennessee Valley Authority

was established for the promotion of construction of dams, power plants, navigation projects, flood control projects, soil conservation, and reforestation programmes.

- The Federal Emergency Relief Administration (FERA) was set up to provide with 500 million dollars to be given to the state and local governments.
 - Federal Reserve Bank was set up to provide loans to banking institutions and industries.
 - The Security Exchange Act 1934, issued license to stock exchange.
 - The National Industrial Recovery Act (NIRA) was passed to reform the conditions of the workers by raising wages and lowering their working hours.
 - The Agricultural Adjustment Act (AAA) was passed to provide compensation to farmers who curtailed agricultural production there by to raise prices.

Effects

- Despite few limitations, the New Deal strengthened the American economy.
 - It restored confidence among the people.
 - It laid a firm foundation for industrial prosperity and led to increased production.

Many ideas of the new deal like,

- a. Collective bargaining between the employee and the workers.
 - b. Regulation of stock exchange
 - c. Restriction on hours of work are now accepted as part of the American pattern of life.

New deal has become synonyms with reforms through out the world. By 1940 there was normal economic activities in the USA.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer

1. The Great Economic Depression began in
 - a) England
 - b) U.S.A
 - c) France
 - d) Germany
 2. In 1929, the American President was
 - a) Theodore Roosevelt
 - b) Woodrow Wilson
 - c) Herbert Hoover
 - d) F.D. Roosevelt.
 3. The greatest craze in America was
 - a) Trade
 - b) Gambling
 - c) Cinema
 - d) Share market
 4. FD Roosevelt assumed office on
 - a) March 4, 1933
 - b) March 4, 1993
 - c) April 6, 1933
 - d) April 6, 1943
 5. There were normal economic activities in the USA by
 - a) 1930
 - b) 1940
 - c) 1950
 - d) 1945

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Share market collapse | Banks and industries |
| 2. Reconstruction Finance Corporation | Loans |
| 3. Economic Depression | License to stock exchange |
| 4. Federal Reserve Bank | Compensation to formers |
| 5. The Security Exchange Act | Speculation on borrowed money |
| | Early 1930's |

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. What were the causes for the Great Economic Depression?
2. Write a note on National Industrial Recovery Act.
3. What do you know about Agriculture Adjustment Act?

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. Franklin D. Roosevelt
 - a) When was the Presidential election held?
 - b) How was Franklin .D. Roosevelt commonly known as?
 - c) What was his election manifesto?
 - d) Name the policy formulated by him.
2. Effects of Relief Measures
 - a) What did it restore?
 - b) What did it lay?
 - c) Mention the ideas accepted by the Americans as part of there life?.
 - d) What has become synonymous throughout the world?

V) Answer the following in a paragraph.

1. Write a paragraph about Relief, Recovery and Reforms introduced by Franklin. D. Roosevelt.

4. Fascism in Italy (A.D.1922 - A.D.1945)

Meaning of Fascism

The term "Fascism" is derived from the Latin word 'Fasces' means a bundle or group. Mussolini of Italy, who is associated with Fascism, organized in the beginning groups of young persons or gangs called the 'fasces', to create terror among the people who were considered enemies of the nation.

Fascism rests on four pillars of charismatic leadership, single party rule under a dictator, terror and economic control.

Mussolini believed in the efficacy of these slogans and their accompanying action : "Believe, Obey, Fight" and "The More Force, The More Honour".

Reasons for the emergence of Fascism

The prevailing economic, social and political conditions were very favourable to the rise of fascism in Italy.

Economic crisis

Italy faced with a great economic crisis on account of the huge expenditure incurred on the war. The national debt increased manifold. There was social unrest and economic distress in the country, the prices of essential goods shot up. Cost of living rose very high. Socialism gathered new strength.

There was great dismay and frustration after the Treaty of Paris. Although a victor and constitute of the Allies, Italy did not gain substantially from the spoils of war. Italy won the war but lost its peace.

Disruptive activities of the socialists

On account of the revolutionary ideas of the socialist, unrest had spread in the country.

Need for a charismatic leader

The situation demanded a bold leadership and the same was supplied by the fascist leader Mussolini.

Mussolini, Benito (1883 - 1945)

Benito Amilcare Andrea Mussolini was born on July 29, 1883 at Romagna in East-Central Italy. His father was a blacksmith and mother was a elementary school teacher.



Mussolini

Mussolini graduated in 1902 and became a school teacher. He gave up that post and came to Switzerland. He came into contact with Lenin and learned his ideology. He became an editor of Italian socialist paper in Austria. He was expelled from Austria and returned to Italy. He edited a socialist paper called *Avanti*, the official voice of Italian Socialism. During the first World War, he gave up his policy and joined the military. After the war he

gathered round him a band of young enthusiasts who came to be known as Fascists. With the help of the fascists, he organised the **National Fascist Party** in November 1921.

Seizure of Power by the Fascists

On October 30, 1922, the Fascists organized a march to Rome and showed their strength. The government surrendered. The emperor Victor Emanuel III, invited Mussolini to form the Government. Thus the Fascist revolution became a spectacular success as the Fascists seized power without blood shed. But the after math of revolution was marked by suppression, murder and exile. Fascist dictatorship under Mussolini came into existence. He remained power from 1922 to 1945.

Fascist Party

The followers of Mussolini were called Black Shirts. He was called by his followers as "**Duce**". His secret police was known as OVRA (**Voluntary Organisation for the Repression of anti-Fascists**).

Aims of Fascism

'Exaltation of the State
Protection of Private property
and
Spirited Foreign Policy'

Motto of Fascism

'Everything within the state
Nothing against the state
Nothing outside the state'

Achievements of Italy under Mussolini

Mussolini was a great leader. He wanted to make Italy a powerful nation. So, he adopted various methods. Mussolini established peace and order and he provided a stable government.

Mussolini brought order and discipline in the industrial field. The "**Charter of Labour**" issued by him provided great relief to workers. Industries were freed from the strike epidemic. Mussolini took several measures to increase production. Marshes were drained. Canals were dug. Reclamation projects were launched. Hydroelectric schemes were undertaken. Railways and other means of transportation were improved. A fair degree of self sufficiency was achieved.



Hitler With Mussolini

As a realistic administrator, Mussolini patched up with the Pope. A conflict that had been going on for nearly 60 years between Papacy and the Italian government came to an end by the Latern Treaty of 1929, signed between the Pope and Mussolini. By this treaty Mussolini recognized the papacy of the pope in the Vatican city and in turn the Pope recognised the sovereignty of the king in Rome. The reconciliation with the Pope was a great victory and it increased the power and prestige of Mussolini.

Aggressive foreign policy that ends in disaster

Mussolini began to follow the vigorous and forward foreign policy. He was determined to raise the prestige of Italy in the eyes of the other powers of the World. Mussolini's slogan before the nation was "**Italy must expand or perish**". In 1936, he annexed Ethiopia.

He left the League of Nations in 1937. He captured Albania in 1939. Mussolini made common cause with Hitler, another war monger. He joined the **Rome-Berlin-Tokyo axis**. The Second World War (1939-45) brought disaster to Italy. In 1941, Italy lost its territories in Africa. Mussolini failed to cope up with the financial burden of the war.

The Allied forces heavily bombarded Sicily and landed in the island in 1943. Mussolini was shot dead by his own country men in 1945. After his fall, Italy became a Republic, Fascism died out along with the death of its founder, Mussolini

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The founder of the Fascist Party was
a) Adolf Hitler b) Benito Mussolini c) Stalin d) Lenin
2. Mussolini organized the National Fascist Party in
a) Nov. 1921 b) Dec. 1921 c) Jan. 1921 d) Feb. 1921
3. Mussolini provided a
a) Democratic government b) Communist government
c) Stable government d) Republican government
4. The great relief was provided to the workers by
a) ILO b) Factory Act c) Charter of Labour d) Trade Unions
5. Mussolini made common cause with
a) Churchill b) Hitler c) Stalin d) Lenin
6. Mussolini left the League of Nations in
a) 1931 b) 1932 c) 1935 d) 1937

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Duce | Secret Police of Mussolini |
| 2. Black Shirts | 1922 |
| 3. Ovra | 1924 |
| 4. March to Rome | Mussolini |
| 5. Albania | Mussolini's followers |
| | Slogan of Mussolini |
| | 1939 |

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. What does the term “Fascism” mean?
2. What were the four pillars of Fascism?
3. Trace the reasons for the rise of Fascism.
4. How did Mussolini seize power?
5. Write any two achievements of Mussolini.
6. How did he put an end to the conflict between the Pope and King?

IV) Answer all the questions given under each Caption.

1. Fascist Party
 - a) Who was the founder of Fascist party?
 - b) Give the slogans of Mussolini.
 - c) What were the aims of Fascism?
 - d) What was the motto of Fascism?
2. Achievements of Fascism
 - a) What did Mussolini bring in the Industrial field?
 - b) What do you know about the “Charter of Labour”?
 - c) What were the measures taken by Mussolini in the agricultural field?
 - d) When was Latern Treaty signed?
3. Aggressive Foreign Policy of Mussolini
 - a) What was Mussolini's slogan before the Nation?
 - b) When did he Capture Albania?
 - c) Name the island bombarded by the Allied Forces.
 - d) What was the end of Mussolini?

V) Answer the following in a paragraph.

1. What were the achievements of Fascism under Mussolini?
2. Write a paragraph on Mussolini's aggressive foreign policy.

5. Nazism in Germany(A.D.1933 - A.D.1945)

Germany, a powerful empire in the early years of the 20th century, fought the First World War (1914–1918) against the Allies (England, France and Russia). Germany made initial gains by occupying France and Belgium. However the Allies, strengthened by the US entry in 1917, defeated Germany and the Central Powers in November 1918.

Defeat of Germany

The defeat of Imperial Germany and the abdication of the Emperor William II gave an opportunity to parliamentary parties to recast German polity. A National Assembly met at Weimar and established a democratic constitution with federal structure. This republic, however, was not received well by its own people.

The Peace Treaty at Versailles with the Allies was a harsh and humiliating one. Germany lost its overseas colonies and one tenth of its population. The Allied Powers demilitarized Germany to weaken its power. Germany was forced to pay war compensation amounting to £6 billion. The allied armies also occupied the resources rich Rhine land. Many Germans held the new Weimar Republic responsible for not only the defeat in the war but also the disgrace at Versailles.

The 1929 Great Economic Depression also affected the economy of Germany. The Germans were expecting a great leader to save Germany from this agony. At this juncture there emerged a great leader, Adolf Hitler.

Adolf Hitler(1889-1945)

Adolf Hitler was born in 1889 in Austria. His father was a custom officer. He lost his parents from his earlyhood. He went to Vienna for job.



Adolf Hitler

He was a painter for sometime. He joined the army during the first world war and fought bravely for which he was awarded the Iron cross. After the war, he did not get any job, He turned a politician. He organized a group of men called the National Socialists in 1919, which became **Nazist Party**. He gave his group a programme, a Symbol and Uniform. The followers of Hitler were called '**Brown Shirts**' and he was called '**Führer**' (Leader). His party emblem was **Swastika**(卐) His secret police was **Gestapo**.

Hitler began his political career as an agitator. In 1923, he made an attempt to capture power. It was known as '**Beer Hall Revolution**'. But he failed and was arrested for high treason and sentenced to 5 years imprisonment.

While he was in prison he wrote a book called '**Mein Kampf**' (My Struggle), which became the bible of Nazis. Soon he was released.

Capture of Power

Under the inspiring leadership of Hitler, the Nazi Party grew in power and number. In the election of 1932, the Nazi party became the 2nd largest group in the **German Parliament (Reichstag-Lower House)**. In 1933, the Nazis became the largest party in the German Parliament, and Hitler became the Chancellor and Hindenburg as President. On the death of President Hindenburg in August 1934, Hitler made himself President and Chancellor. He abolished the Weimar Republic and proclaimed **Third Reich** (Empire) with himself as dictator. Thus Hitler became the **Führer** (Leader) of Germany. Hitler declared,

'One People'

'One State'

'One Leader'

Achievements of Hitler

The Nazis glorified the German State, Hitler boasted about the superiority of the Nordic race which stood for the rise of all the great culture and had almost contempt for the Semitic Jews. He wanted to maintain a German race with Nordic elements. He ordered the Jews to be persecuted.

Hitler believed in action, force and terrorism. There was no scope for public liberty. Nazism was an one party state and all other parties were outlawed. Parliamentary Institutions were suppressed and the fundamental rights of the people were denied. He gave a new status and position to Germany. Federal Nature of the

Constitution was set aside. He created a strong, unified and highly centralized despotic state.

In the economic field, his work was commendable. The war had completely shattered the economic system of Germany. But Hitler put the country on the path of prosperity. He replaced Trade Unions by the **Labour Front** which consisted of the representatives from both the Employers and the Employees. It looked after the general welfare of the workers. Strikes and lock-outs were outlawed. He made Germany economically self-sufficient in food-stuffs, raw materials and industrial goods. More lands were brought under cultivation. Scientific methods were introduced. Defence Industries and Rearmament programme of Hitler gave employment to many people. Many schools were opened and illiteracy was eradicated. The children were trained in the Nazi culture. Nazi men alone appointed as teachers and Nazi books alone prescribed for study. Women occupied a degraded place and they were treated as child-bearing machines. All kinds of social organizations were dissolved.

Hitler's Aggressive Policy

Hitler followed a forward and aggressive foreign policy. His aggressive Imperialist policy brought danger and destruction to his country, sufferings and difficulties to the people all over the world. Hitler introduced conscription and rearmed Germany from toe to head. He followed the policy of aggression and conquered territories to accommodate the growing population and to accumulate resources. He pulled Germany out of the League of Nations in 1933. In 1936, he reoccupied Rhine land, the

demilitarized zone and violated the Locarno treaty of 1925. In November 1937 Hitler formed an Alliance with Italy and Japan known as Rome–Berlin–Tokyo Axis. He annexed Austria in 1938. When he went on seeking Sudetenland from Czechoslovakia an agreement was signed between Germany and Neville Chamberlain, the then Prime Minister of Great Britain at Munich in 1938. By the Munich pact Germany was allowed to annex the Sudetenland but not to conquer any more territories. In 1939, Hitler violated the Munich agreement by annexing the whole of Czechoslovakia. It greatly alarmed Britain and France.

Hitler demanded the right to construct a military road connecting

East Prussia with Germany through Poland and also the surrender of Danzig. Hitler sparked the Second World War by declaring war on Poland on 1st Sept. 1939 when Poland refused to consent to the demands of Hitler.

In 1941, Hitler invaded Russia, breaking the Non-aggression pact with Stalin. This invasion failed to achieve the quick triumph that Hitler wanted. In 1945 the allied forces entered Berlin, Hitler having lost all hopes of success had committed suicide in his Bunker. After the death of Hitler, the second world war came to an end and the Nazi party was also fizzled away.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. A democratic constitution with the federal structure was established by a National Assembly met at
 - a) Berlin b) Weimar c) Frankfurt d) Finland
2. The Allied armies occupied the resources rich
 - a) Rhineland b) Sudetenland c) Greenland d) Finland
3. Hitler's anti-Semitism grew to the extent of killing the
 - a) Aryans b) Mongolians c) Jews d) Australians
4. For some time Hitler was a
 - a) Painter b) Tailor c) Teacher d) Banker
5. In 1941, Hitler invaded
 - a) Russia b) France c) Prussia d) Persia
6. The Allies were strengthened by the entry of
 - a) Austria b) America c) Finland d) Poland

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Brown shirts | Nazi Emblem |
| 2. Fuhrer | My struggle |
| 3. Swastika | Leader |
| 4. Gestapo | Chancellor |
| 5. Mein Kampf | Followers of Hitler
Governor
Hitler's Secret Police |

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. What did Hitler declare?
2. What did he do in 1923? What was the result?
3. How did Hitler become a chancellor of Germany?
4. Write a brief note on Munich Agreement.
5. How did Hitler maintain the policy of the Nordic race?

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. Adolf Hitler
 - a. Where was Adolf Hitler born?
 - b. What was his father?
 - c. What did he organize?
 - d. Name the book written by Hitler.
2. Hitler's Aggressive policy
 - a. Why did Hitler Conquer territories?
 - b. How did he violate the Locarno Treaty of 1925?
 - c. What did he demand from Poland?
 - d. When did he declare war on Poland?

III) Answer the following in a paragraph.

1. How did Hitler establish Nazi rule in Germany?
2. Explain Hitler's aggressive policy.

6. Second World War (A.D.1939 - A.D.1945)

Second World War was a global military conflict lasting from 1939 to 1945. The great powers of the world, split up into two opposing military alliances the Allies and the Axis and involved in the war. It was the most widespread war in history. In a state of '**total war**' the major participants placed their entire economic, industrial and scientific capabilities at the service of the war effort, erasing the distinction between civilian and military resources. The Treaty of Versailles left many countries dissatisfied. Adverse conditions such as, repartition and unemployment led to new radical ideas, which led to the second world war.

Causes for the Second World War

Treaty of Versailles

The first world war ended by the **Treaty of Versailles**. It was vindictive in nature and many countries were dissatisfied. According to the treaty, Germany was stamped as an aggressor and levied a huge war indemnity. She had been deprived of several territories which included Alsace and Lorraine. The rich Saar coal mine was given to France for 15 years under free lease license.

Her army was reduced. All these humiliating terms against Germany resulted in the Second World War.

Spirit of Nationalism

The concepts like Germany for Germans, Italy for Italians which emphasised nationalism in a manner led to tension. Germany boosted the superiority of German race on the earth. Nationalism is indeed to develop love for one's country and to rise above

regionalism but when it crosses all limits it assumes alarming proportion.

Failure of League of Nations

League of Nations was founded after the first world war to prevent wars in future and to maintain international peace and security. The big powers which dominated the League of Nations did not obey the terms and conditions of the League. Hence the League failed in its prime duty of preventing the race for armament and preserving peace.

Rise of Japan

Japan emerged as a World power after the First World War. The industrial development and economic growth forced Japan to follow the policy of imperialism. It signed Rome-Berlin-Tokyo Axis with Italy and Germany and sowed the seeds for Second World War.

Rise of Dictatorship

After the First World War, the World was witnessed the rise of new ideologies such as Democracy, Communism, Fascism and Nazism. The newly formed Republican governments in many European countries failed and gave way to dictatorship of Hitler and Mussolini. These dictators glorified the principles of war and conquest which ended in the second world war.

Problems of Minorities

After the First World War, a number of new nations had been created but the principle of nationality was not followed. Several countries like Poland, Austria and Czechoslovakia were formed by

neglecting the interests of the minority groups.

Policy of Appeasement

The statesmen of the major world powers ignored and evaded their responsibility and followed to the policy of appeasement. But appeasement did not satisfy. The great powers increased steadily and it resulted in the Second World War.

Formation of the Axis Coalition

Adolf Hitler, the Leader of the German National Socialist (Nazi) party, preached a racist brand of Nazism. Having denounced the disarmament clauses of the Versailles Treaty, he created a new air force, and reintroduced conscription. Hitler in collaboration with Italy and Japan signed the **Rome-Berlin-Tokyo Axis** in 1937. This resulted the war.

German Aggression in Europe

In September 1938 Hitler threatened Czechoslovakia. The British Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain initiated talks and signed the Munich Pact, Hitler promised not to take any more Czech territory. Chamberlain believed that he had achieved "peace for our time," but Hitler within six months seized the remainder of Czechoslovakia which resulted the second world war.

Immediate Cause

In 1939, Hitler demanded from Poland the right to construct a military road connecting East Prussia and Germany through Polish Corridor. He also demanded the surrender of Danzig. When Poland refused, Hitler made a lightning attack on Poland known as Blitzkrieg on 1, September 1939. As Britain wanted to protect Poland declared war on Germany on

September 3rd 1939 and France was also joined with Britain. Thus started the Second World War.

Opening Events (1939)

The World War II officially began on September 1, 1939, when Hitler declared his Blitzkrieg, (lightning war) against Poland. Britain and France much to Hitler's surprise, immediately declared war upon Germany.

Soviet Aggression(1939-1941)

As Hitler's forces conquered Poland, the Soviet Union was acting out guarantees of territory under a secret part of a Non-Aggression pact between the USSR and Germany. This Treaty gave Stalin free reign to take the Baltic republics of Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania, as well as Eastern Poland, all of which would remain in Soviet possession after the war.

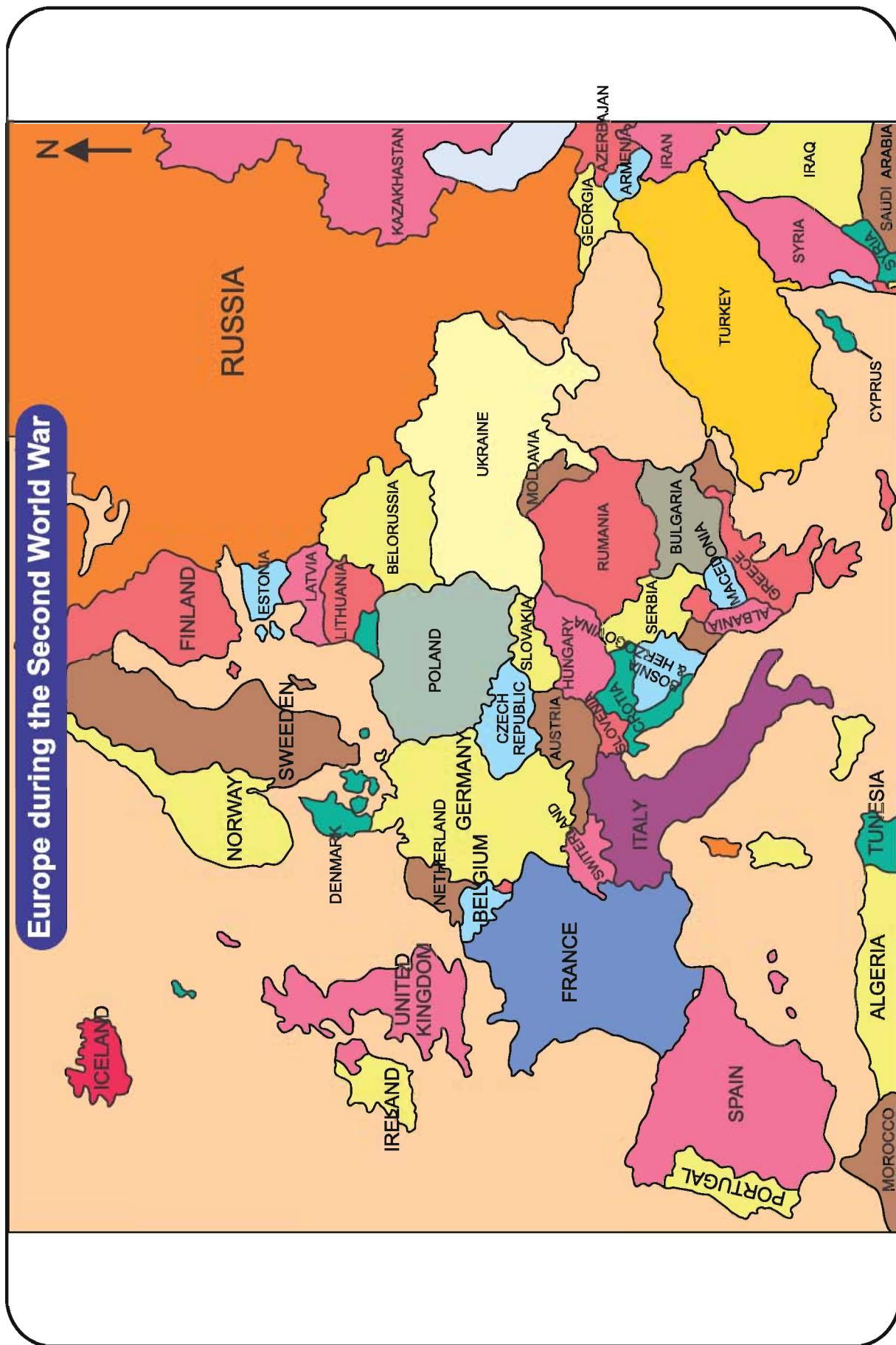
At this moment, Mussolini declared war on the Allies to occupy a few hundred yards of French territory.

The Battle of Britain 1940

Hitler turned his attention to Britain. He sent his Luftwaffe (Air force) to drop bombs on Britain. His 'U' boats(Sub marines) torpedoed many British ships. During the month of August and September in 1940, Luftwaffe continuously bombed London and other cities daily. This is called the **Battle of Britain**. Though the British suffered heavy losses at first, eventually, it managed under the Prime Ministership of Winston Churchill and turned the air strike against Germany.

Operation Barbaressa (1941)

Hitler, after his defeat over the skies of Britain, turned his attention towards the Soviet Union. Despite having signed the non-aggression pact with Stalin, Hitler despised



communism and wished to destroy it in the land of its birth. Hitler ordered a large attack on the Yugoslavia and Greek. The Italian and German armies quickly swept across Yugoslavia. In Greece, there was tougher resistance, but the Axis forces proved too powerful and by the end of April the Balkans were under Axis control.

Soviet Attack

On June 22.1941, Hitler invaded Russia. At this critical moment, the Russian winter, which began early that year, stalled the German (army) to a halt at the gates of Moscow. Stalin had planned to evacuate the city, and had already moved important government functionaries, but decided to stay and rally the city.

Russians followed the **Scorched Earth Policy**. They abandoned the villages and set fire to crops, roads, railways, factories and even houses. So that Germans could not gain anything. After a long besiege of five months, the Germans were able to capture the empty city of Moscow. After suffering a crushing defeat in Russia they retreated in January, 1944.

Atlantic charter

In August 1941 the British Prime Minister Winston Churchill and US President F.D Roosevelt met on the



Pearl Harbour Attack

board of the battle ship Augusta and signed the Atlantic charter, and agreed to launch a massive attack against the common enemy Germany.

America Enters the war

Meanwhile, the Japanese had attacked American fleet stationed at Pearl Harbour on December 7, 1941. This disastrous attack forced the Americans to enter into the war. The very next day the USA declared war on Japan.

Mussolini's Aggression in Africa (1940 - 1942)

Mussolini had seized Ethiopia and launched attack on Kenya, the Sudan and British Somaliland. The British counter attacked and captured Eritrea in February, Somalia in March and Addis Ababa, capital of Ethiopia.

End of the War

The Allied troops planned an invasion of France from England. In May 1944, a big American and British force landed in Normandy. They were joined by the secret underground French forces.



Atom bomb blast

Germany was attacked on all sides. From the East the Russian forces chased German troops. When Hitler came to know about the advance of the

armies from the two sides reaching Berlin, he committed suicide.

Italian army was defeated and Allies occupied Italy and Mussolini was killed. The Allied army entered Germany and it surrendered on May 7, 1945. After the fall of Germany, America dropped atom bombs on the cities of Hiroshima on August 6, and Nagasaki on August 9, 1945 which caused a great destruction. As the result Japan surrendered unconditionally. Thus the second World War came to an end.

Results of the war

1. The destruction to life and property was on a much larger scale than the First World War. Over 50 Millions were lost their lives.

2. It sounded the death knell to dictatorship in Germany and Italy. Germany was occupied by the Allied forces and later it was divided into two parts. The West Germany was controlled by Britain, France and America and the East Germany by

Russia. At the end of the war Japan was occupied by American forces under General **McArthur**.

3. The war weakened Britain and France. America and Russia emerged as **Super Powers**. The war did not end totalitarianism in Russia. A cold war started between Russia and America.
4. The war quickened the phase of national movements in Asia and Africa. India, Burma, Egypt, Ceylon and Malaya fought for their freedom and won their freedom from Britain. Philippines from America. Indo-china from France and Indonesia from the Dutch got their independence.
5. The European countries gave up the policy of Colonialism and Imperialism.
6. The United Nations Organisation was set up to maintain International peace and harmony. The organization worked hard to maintain international co-operation and for the promotion of human welfare.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. This treaty contained the seeds of the Second World War

a) Treaty of Versailles	b) Treaty of Rome
c) Treaty of London	d) Treaty of Aix -la- chappale
2. The coal mines given to France were

a) Jharia	b) Saar	c) Bokaro	d) Raniganj
-----------	---------	-----------	-------------
3. The country emerged as a World Power after the First World War was

a) China	b) Japan	c) India	d) Korea
----------	----------	----------	----------
4. The principles of war and conquests was glorified by

a) Moderates	b) Extremists	c) Dictators	d) Revolutionaries
--------------	---------------	--------------	--------------------

5. In September 1938 Hitler threatened a war on
 - a) Yugoslavia
 - b) Poland
 - c) Finland
 - d) Czechoslovakia
6. Hitler demanded the surrender of
 - a) Tannenburg
 - b) Danzig
 - c) Jutland
 - d) Estonia
7. Blitzkrieg means a
 - a) Lightning war
 - b) Trench war fare
 - c) Sub maraine warfare
 - d) Guerilla warfare
8. The British Prime Minister during the Second World War was
 - a) Sir Winston Churchill
 - b) Clement Atlee
 - c) Margaret Thatcher
 - d) Lloyd George
9. Hitler signed the Non- Aggression Pact with
 - a) Gorbachev
 - b) Borisyeltin
 - c) Stalin
 - d) Lenin

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Scorched Earth Policy | Germany |
| 2. 'U' Boats | Theodore Roosevelt |
| 3. Luftwaffe | England |
| 4. Royal Air Force | China |
| 5. Atlantic Charter | Russia |
| | F.D Roosevelt |
| | German Submarines |

III. Answer the following in brief.

1. How do you say that Spirit of Nationalism is one of the causes for Second World War?
2. How did Japan sow the seeds for Second World War?
3. Has Munich Pact brought peace for some time? How?
4. What was the immediate cause of the Second World War?
5. Write a note on the Scorched Earth Policy.
6. Write a note on Battle of Britain.
7. Why did America declare War on Japan?

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. Causes of the Second World War
 - a) Name the treaty signed by Japan, Italy and Germany.
 - b) Mention some of the ideologies that emerged after the First World War.
 - c) What was the policy followed by the statesmen of the major world powers?
 - d) What did Hitler violate?
2. Operation Barbaressa
 - a) Mention the year of operation Barbaressa.
 - b) What was the wish of Hitler?
 - c) What did he order?
 - d) When did the Axis countries bring the Balkans under their control?
3. End of the war
 - a) Where did a big American and British force land?
 - b) With whom did they join?
 - c) What did Hitler do?
 - d) When did America drop atom bomb on Hiroshima and Nagasaki?
4. Results of the war
 - a) Who occupied Japan?
 - b) Name the two super powers that emerged after the Second World War.
 - c) Mention some of the countries which got independence after the war.
 - d) Why was UNO set up?

V. Answer the following in a paragraph.

1. Write any five causes for the out break of Second World War.
2. Write a paragraph on Soviet attack and the Battle of Britain.
3. What were the results of the Second World War?

VI) Activity.

Mark the following in the given outline map of Europe.

- i) Axis countries - Italy, Germany
- ii) Allied countries - England, France and Russia
- iii) Neutral countries - Portugal, Spain, Switzerland

7. The United Nations Organization

The United Nations Organization, an international organization was established in 1945. During the Second world war (in 1941) the American president **F.D.Roosevelt** and the British prime minister **Winston Churchill** met on a battle ship and concluded the **Atlantic charter**. This charter was discussed in various conferences.



UNO-Head quarters- New York

It was finally discussed in the San Francisco conference of 1945. The UN charter was signed at San Francisco on 26th June 1945. As the result UNO came into existence on **24th October 1945**. At present UNO has 192 members with its head quarters at **New York**.

Main Objectives

To maintain international peace and security.

To develop friendly relations among nations.



United Nation Symbol

To settle international disputes by peaceful means.

To be a centre for helping nations to achieve these goals.

Organs of the UNO

The UNO has six major organs. They are,

- 1.The General Assembly .
- 2.The Security Council.
- 3.The Economic and Social Council.
- 4.The Trusteeship Council.
- 5.The International Court of Justice.
- 6.The Secretariat.

The General Assembly

The General Assembly is the UNO's main organ and deliberative body. It has the right to discuss and make recommendations on all matters within the scope of the UN charter. It consists of representatives of all member countries.

Each member country can send five members with one vote. Generally it meets once in a year.

Mrs.Vijayyalakshmi Pandit of India was elected as the President of the General Assembly in 1953.

The Security Council

The Council has five Permanent members – The USA, the UK, France, the Russian Federation and China and ten non-permanent members. The non- permanent members are elected by the General Assembly for two years term. The Permanent members have the right to veto (Negative vote) for any Council decision. Its main responsibility is to maintain International Peace and Security.

The Economic and Social Council

It consists of 54 members for a period of 9 years, one third of its members are retiring every three years. It Co-ordinates the economic and social work of the United Nations and the specialized Agencies.

The Trusteeship Council

The Trusteeship Council looks after certain Territories placed under the Trusteeship of the UNO. Every member nation can send one qualified representative to the Council.

International Court of Justice



The Principal judicial body of the UNO is the International Court of Justice. It is located at **the Hague** in Netherlands. It consists of 15 Judges, elected by the General Assembly and the Security Council. It tries the cases of the member countries which are brought before the court. It acts as an advisory body for the General Assembly, Security Council and other organs of the UNO

The Secretariat

The Administrative functions of the UNO are performed by the secretariat. The UN Secretariat carries out the day to day works of the organization and implements the programmes and policies laid down by the organs of the UNO.

The Secretary General is the Chief Administrative Officer of the UNO. He is appointed by the General Assembly on the advise of the Security Council for a period of five years. The present Secretary General is **Mr. Ban ki Moon** from South Korea.



Ban ki Moon

Specialized Agencies

The specialized agencies of the UNO are many. A few are mentioned below.

1. The World Health Organisation (WHO)
 2. The United Nations Educational, Scientific and cultural Organisation (UNESCO)
 3. The United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund (UNICEF)
 4. The International Labour Organisation (ILO)
 5. Food and Agricultural Organisation (FAO)
 6. The World Bank (IBRD)
- These Organisations develop the economic and social aspects of the member countries.

Official Languages

The Official languages of the UNO are Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish. However its working languages are the English and the French.

Flag

The White UN Emblem-on a light blue background. Two bent Olive branches opening at the top and in between them is the World map.

Finance

UNO gets its financial aid mainly from USA and from other member nations.

Major Achievements of the United Nations

- UNO has rendered a great service in establishing peace and security by solving various problems- generally political disputes by Security Council, Legal disputes by International Court of Justice and others by special agencies.

- The UNO has solved many international disputes and preserves peace in the world through peaceful negotiations.

- It settled disputes between Israel and Palestine, Iran and Iraq and withdrawal of Soviet troops from Afghanistan.

- It has signed many Nuclear Test Ban treaties like NBTB in 1963 and CTBT (Comprehensive Test Ban Treaty) in 1996.

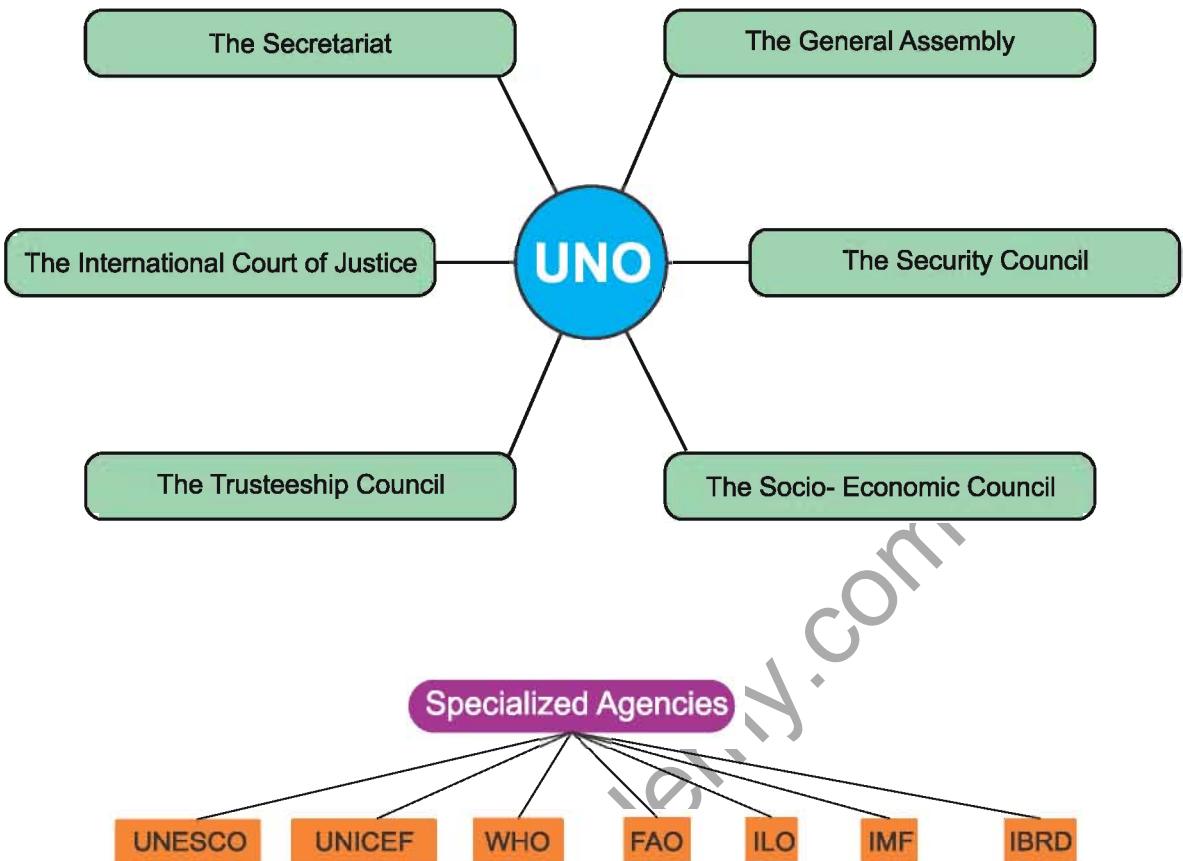
- In the UN Conference on Environment and Development held in Rio de Janeiro in 1992, all countries adopted "Agenda 21" - a blueprint to promote sustainable development or the concept of economic growth while protecting natural resources.

- The UN Development Fund for Women (**UNIFEM**) and the International Research and Training Institute for the Advancement of Women (**INSTRAW**) have supported programmes and projects to improve the quality of life for women in over 100 countries.

- The UNO played a vital role in the Suez Canal crisis of 1956. It made France, Britain and Israel to withdraw troops from Egypt. The UNO also settled the Korean War and Vietnam War.

Overview of the United Nations 50th Anniversary Celebration

In 1995 the United Nations celebrated its 50th Anniversary of service to the global community. An overall theme of the celebration, "**We The People of the United Nations. United for a Better World,**" was endorsed by the General Assembly in October 1993. In November 1995 the UN flag was carried into outer space by the astronauts of the Space Shuttle Atlantis, to salute United Nations work for the world peace.



EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The UNO was established in
a) 1955 b) 1945 c) 1965 d) 1975
2. The UNCharter was signed at
a) New York b) Geneva c) San Francisco d) California
3. UNO's main deliberative body is
a) The General Assembly b) The Secretariat
c) The Security Council d) The Trusteeship Council
4. The Seat of International Court of Justice is at
a) The Hague b) Berlin c) Rome d) Tokyo
5. The United Nations celebrated its 50th Anniversary in the year
a) 1985 b) 2005 c) 1995 d) 1975

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. New York | Negative vote |
| 2. Veto | 1963 |
| 3. Present Secretary General of UNO | 1969 |
| 4. NBTB | Head quarters of the UNO |
| 5. CTBT | Mr. Kofi Annan |
| | 1996 |
| | Mr. Ban Ki Moon |

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. What are the main objectives of the UNO?
2. Write a brief note on Security Council.
3. Mention any two major achievements of the UNO.
4. Describe the 50th Anniversary celebration of the UNO.
5. Mention some of the specialized agencies of the UNO.

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. Organs of the UNO.
 - a) Name the major organs of the UNO.
 - b) Who was elected as the president of the UN General Assembly in 1953?
 - c) What is the function of the Trusteeship Council?
 - d) How is the Secretary General of the UNO appointed?
2. Major achievements of the UNO
 - a) Name the treaties signed by the UNO.
 - b) Where was the UN Conference on Environment and Development held?
 - c) What was adopted by all the countries?
 - d) How did UNO tackle Suez Canal crisis?

V) Answer in paragraph.

1. Explain the functions of the organs of the UNO.
2. What are the major achievements of the UNO?

8. European Union

At the end of the Second World War, European Economic and political unity was seen as an important element of post war reconstruction. **Jean Monnet**, a French politician revealed that the war between France and Germany must never again disrupt politics and prosperity of the continent. Italy and the three Benelux states (Belgium, Netherlands, Luxemburg) joined the ensuing negotiations.

Founding members

Belgium, France, Italy, Luxemburg, Netherlands and West Germany are the founding members of the European union.

Formation

The European Union traces its origin from the **European Coal and Steel Community (ECSC)** formed among six European countries in 1951 which was proposed by Robert Schuman, the French foreign minister on May 9, 1950.



**The Treaties of Rome
Signing Ceremony on March 25th 1957**

European Economic Community (EEC) and the **European Atomic Energy Community (EURATOM)** were established by the Treaty of Rome. In 1967 the Merger Treaty created a single set of institutions for the three communities, or **European Union (EU)**.

Principal Objectives

To establish European citizenship, ensure civil rights of European citizens, promote social progress, protect European security and ensure justice.

MOTTO: United in diversity

Organs of the EU

There are five European institutions which are as follows.



Symbol of EU

European Parliament

Council of the European Union

European Commission

Court of Justice

Court of Auditors

European Parliament



European Parliament

It is the legislative body of the European Union. Its members are elected directly by the citizens of the member countries. In 1979 the first direct democratic elections to the European Parliament was held. It

meets in Strasbourg (France). It currently consists of 736 members elected for five years term (soon to be 751). It forms one half of the EU's legislature.

Key Power of the Parliament

Approving or amending the EU budget submitted by the commission.

The council of the European Union

It is also called the 'Council' and sometimes referred to as the 'Council of Ministers'. It forms the other half of the EU's legislature. It comprises one representative per member state. On 19th November 2009, Herman Van Rampay was chosen as the first permanent President of the European Council. He assumed office on Dec. 1 – 2009.

The European Commission

It acts as the EU's executive arm and it is responsible for initiating legislation and the day to day running of the EU. It drafts proposals for new European laws and presents to the European Parliament and the Council.

Court of Justice

It is located in Luxemburg. It has fifteen judges. It determines whether treaties in the European Union are being implemented and are in accordance with Union law. Its judgements and EU law as a whole are binding on all member states.



Court of Justice

Court of Auditors

It manages the EU budgets. It works closely with the Parliament to appropriately allocate funds and resources

The European Central Bank

It is an independent body to maintain stable prices and governs the Eurozone's monetary policy. It is also responsible for foreign exchange operations and managing foreign reserves in the Eurozone.



European Central Bank

Achievements of the EU

Single market

The EU has developed a single market through a standardized systems of laws which apply to all member states, and ensures the free movement of people, goods, services and capital including the abolition of passport controls.

It maintains common policies of trade, agriculture, fisheries and regional development.

Common Foreign and security policy

As a legal personality EU is able to conclude treaties with countries and enacts legislation in justice and home affairs.

Permanent diplomatic missions of the EU are established around the world and representation at the world Trade organization, G-8, G-20 major economics and at the United Nations is maintained.

Single currency

The Euro is the name of the single European currency that was put into circulation on January 1, 2002. The symbol of the Euro is €. In the interim period transactions are carried out with the former national currencies of the member state. Euro eliminated foreign exchange hurdles encountered by companies doing business across European border and promotes free trade policy.

Enlargement of EU

The Unions membership has grown from the original six founding states to the present day 27 by successive enlargements as countries acceded to the treaties and by doing so, pooled their sovereignty in exchange for representation in the institutions.

Scientific Research

Scientific development is facilitated through the EU's frame work programmes. The aims of EU policy in this area are to co-ordinate and stimulate research. The independent European Research Council allocates funds to European or national research projects.

The EU has established a strong relationship with the UNO. Co-operation takes place on a broad range of areas: development, addressing climate change, peace building in conflict ridden countries, humanitarian assistance in crisis, global health concern, labour issues and culture. Co-operation is based not only in the form of the policy dialogues, but also goes further by generating financial support on UN programmes and projects. The EU is the largest contributor of foreign aid in the world. In 2006 its budget amounted to € 671 million, 48% of which went to the African, Caribbean and Pacific countries. More over, Unity was brought by the EU in the Eurozone.

27 Member States of European Union

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Austria | 2. Belgium | 3. Bulgaria |
| 4. Cyprus | 5. The Czech Republic | 6. Denmark |
| 7. Estonia | 8. Finland | 9. France |
| 10. Germany | 11. Greece | 12. Hungary |
| 13. Ireland | 14. Italy | 15. Liberia |
| 16. Lithuania | 17. Luxembourg | 18. Malta |
| 19. The Netherlands | 20. Poland | 21. Portugal |
| 22. Romania | 23. Slovak Republic | 24. Slovenia |
| 25. Spain | 26. Sweden | 27. United Kingdom |

EXERCISE**I) Choose the correct answer.**

1. European Union traces its origin from the
a) ECSC b) EEC c) EURATOM d) ETC
2. EURATOM was established by the
a) Treaty of Nanking b) Treaty of London c) Treaty of Rome
d) Treaty of Versailles
3. The Council of the European Union is sometimes referred to as the
a) Council of traders b) Council of farmers
c) Council of consumers d) Council of Ministers
4. The first permanent President of the European Council is
a) Ramsay Mac Donald b) Herman Van Rampay
c) Mrs. Vijayalakshmi Pandit d) Bismark
5. Euro zones monetary policy is governed by
a)European Central Bank b) Reserve Bank c) State Bank
d) Swiz Bank
6. The name of the single European currency
a) Dollar b) Yen c) Euro d) Pounds
7. The EU has established a strong relationship with the
a) USA b) USSR c) UNO d) UAE

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Merger Treaty | French foreign minister |
| 2. EURO | Court of Auditors |
| 3. Robert Schuman | 2002 |
| 4. Jean Monnet | Court of Justice |
| 5. EU budgets | French politician |
| | 1967 |
| | 2007 |

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. Mention the initial member countries of the EU.
2. What are the principal objectives of the EU?
3. What are the organs of the EU?

4. Write a brief note on European Parliament.
5. Mention the main functions of the court of Justice.
6. What is the significance of the EURO?

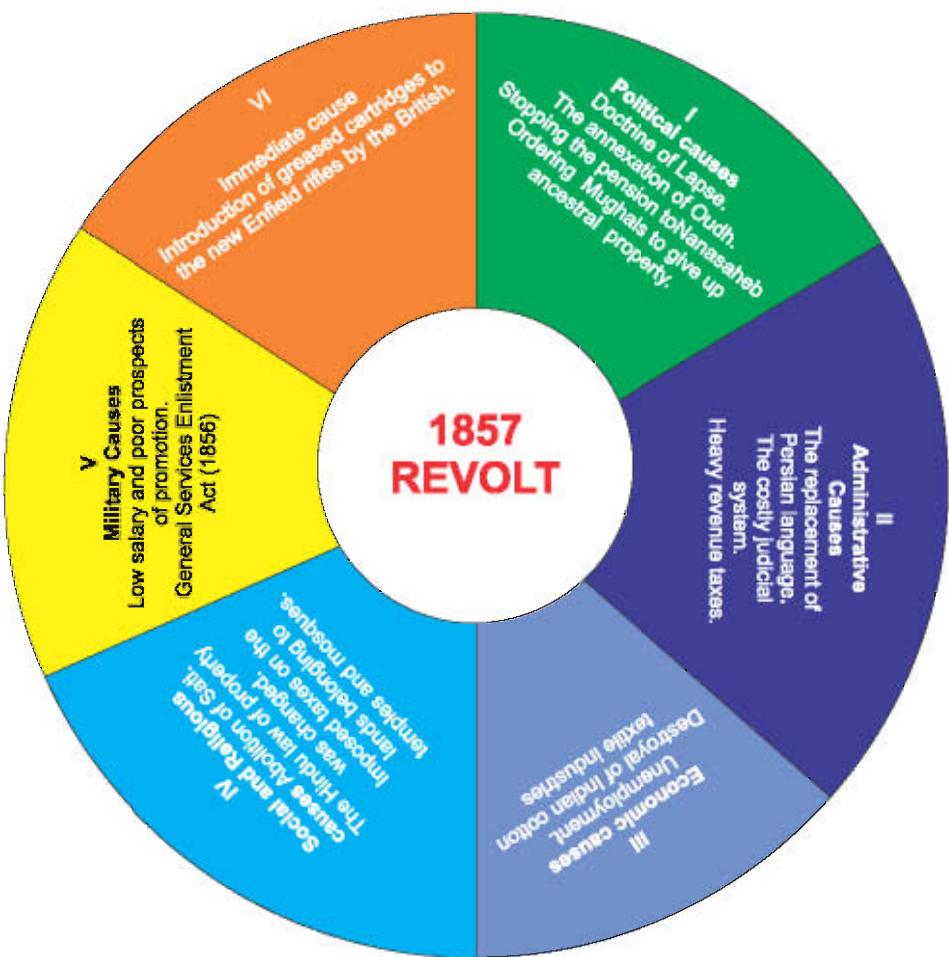
IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. Organs of the EU.
 - a) Which is the Legislative body of the EU.
 - b) What is the function of the European Commission?
 - c) Where is the seat of the Court of Justice?
 - d) Who is responsible for the foreign exchange operation?
2. Achievements of EU
 - a) What is the symbol of the Euro?
 - b) What did the Euro Eliminate?
 - c) How many members are there in the EU at present?
 - d) Who allocates funds to European research projects?

V) Answer the following in a paragraph.

1. What are the achievements of the European Union?

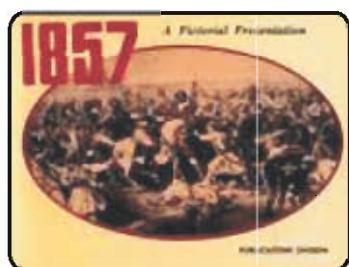
9. The Great Revolt of 1857



The year 1857 holds a great importance in the history of India. In that year there was a major revolt in India which shook the very foundation of the Company's rule in India. The British historians call it a **purely military revolt** while the Indians regard it as the **First war of Indian Independence**.



Lord Canning



The events of 1857 were the culmination of people's hatred and the sufferings caused under the oppressive British rule. Lord Canning was the Governor-General of India at that time.

Causes for the revolt

Political Causes

The annexation policy of British was one of the major causes for the revolt. The **Subsidiary treaties** signed by Wellesley with different rulers were never honoured unless it suited the British interests. Lord Dalhousie's '**Doctrine of Lapse**', had created fear and uneasiness throughout India.



Lord Dalhousie

The annexation of Hindu states like Satara, Nagpur and Jhansi were resented by the Hindus. The annexation of Oudh whose ruler had been a friend and an ally of the English East India Company for about a century was resented not only by the Muslims but also by the other rulers of India. The British Government had ordered that on the death of the last Mughal Emperor Bahadur Shah II, his successor had to give up their ancestral palace, and Red fort. By stopping the pension to Nana Saheb, the adopted son of the Peshwa Baji Rao II, the British made him their deadly enemy. Besides, the Muslims were in general dissatisfied with the British. They felt that they had lost their political power.

Administrative Causes

The Indians disliked and distrusted the administration of the British. For example, the replacement of Persian language by English as the court language was not liked by the people. The judicial system of the British was costly, mechanical and involved much time. The people always felt insecure of their property, life and honours. The most affected part of British administration was the revenue system. Under the British the peasants and the landlords suffered equally. The peasants had to pay heavy taxes. The British excluded the Indians from all high civil and military jobs. So the educated Indians who expected to get gainful employment in the service of the company were disappointed.

Economic Causes

The economic exploitation of the country, the huge drain of wealth and the disappearance of the native industries dislocated the economic life of the people in India. The British imposed heavy protective duties on imported goods in Britain while British goods were imported into India at a nominal duty. The Indian weavers and craftsmen were forced to work according to the desires of the servants of the company. They in return received very little wages. Naturally they lost their interest. It destroyed the cotton textile industry of India which was the largest and most beneficial industry. Loss of employment affected others who were dependent on those employees for their livelihood. Lord Bentinck's resumption of rent-free tenures reduced the land owners to poverty. The out break of seven famines in the first half of the nineteenth century

made the economic distress more acute.

Social and Religious Causes

The conservative section of Indian population was alarmed by the rapid spread of western culture in India. The abolition of '**Sati**' and female infanticide and legalizing remarriage of widows were considered to be an interference in the customs and tradition of the Hindus. The Hindu law of property was changed to enable a Christian convert to receive his share of ancestral property. Obviously it was to encourage the Hindus to convert into Christianity. Religious sentiments were aroused when the British imposed taxes on the lands belonging to temples and mosques.

Military Causes

A feeling of discontent developed among the Indian sepoys. The highest pay given to an Indian sepoy as Subedar was less than the minimum pay of a raw European recruit. Generally, there was no promotion for Indian soldiers. The Sepoys were also insulted very badly. The feeling of discontent was intensified by Lord Canning's **General services Enlistment Act** (1856) ordering all recruits of the Bengal army to be ready for service both within and outside India and even overseas. The proportion of the Indian troops to the British troops was very high. The number of Indian soldiers was five times more than that of the British. Further, places of strategic importance like Delhi and Allahabad were wholly held by the Indian soldiers. These factors emboldened the Sepoys to rise against the British.

Immediate Cause

The greased cartridges supplied for the new Enfield Rifles was the immediate cause for the mutiny. The cartridges had to be bitten off before loading. Believing that the fat of Cow and Pig had been used to grease these cartridges, both Hindus and Muslims refused to use them as the cow is sacred to the Hindus and pig is detestable to the Muslims.

On 29 March, 1857 at **Barrackpore**, near calcutta, (Kolkatta) **Mangal Pandey**, a young Indian Brahmin sepoy from Bengal Regiment refused to use the greased cartridge. When he was forced by his sergeant he shot him down. He was arrested, tried and executed. British officers transferred Barrackpore infantry to Meerut. When this news spread many sepoys started the revolt.

Spread and Suppression of the Revolt

The first sign of unrest appeared early in 1857 at Barrackpore in Bengal. But it was suppressed and the rebels were punished. The sepoys broke out into open revolt at Meerut in May 1857. They broke open the prison and released their imprisoned comrades. Then they galloped to Delhi and brought it under their control. The revolt then spread to Lucknow, Bareilly, Kanpur, Agra, Jhansi, Benares, Central India, Bundelkhand and to other places.

The important leaders of the mutiny were Rani Lakshmi Bai of Jhansi, Tantia Tope, Nana Saheb and Kunwar Singh. The mutiny chiefly centered on three cities-Kanpur, Delhi and Lucknow.

Centres of Revolt in 1857



Revolt at Kanpur

When the revolt broke out at Kanpur, Nana Saheb the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II joined the rebels with his able commander Tantia Tope and declared himself to be the Peshwa. The English there surrendered to the rebel forces. The English men, women, and children were mercilessly massacred. Nana Saheb was finally defeated by Sir Colin Campbell and he fled to Nepal, where he died after a few years. By the middle of November 1857 Kanpur was brought under the control of the British.

Revolt at Delhi

Sir Archdale Wilson, Nicholson and Sir John Lawrence were the Military officers who freed Delhi from the rebels. The city was sacked by the British soldiers and the people were massacred mercilessly. Bahadur Shah II, the powerless Mughal Emperor in Delhi was tried for treason and exiled to Rangoon, where he died at the age of eighty seven.

Revolt at Lucknow

Lucknow was another centre of rebellion. The Chief Commissioners Sir Lawrence and Colonel Neil were killed. Begum Hazrat Mahal, the wife of Nawab of Oudh had also joined the rebels. Finally Lucknow was recaptured by Sir Colin Campbell in March 1858.

Revolt at Central India

In Central India the great rising was led by Rani Lakshmi Bai of Jhansi and Tantia Tope who came from Kanpur. Both fought very bravely. The Rani dressed in male attire fought very bravely and captured Gwalior. She was killed in the battle in June 1858. Tantia Tope escaped but was captured and put to death.



Rani Lakshmi Bai

Revolt at Barailley

At Barailley, the capital of Rohilkhand, the sepoys revolted. They declared Rohila Chief as the Governor.

Revolt at Bihar

The revolt was led by Kunwar Singh, an 80 year old land lord of Jagdishpur. He fought bravely till his death in 1858 and then his brother Amarsingh took the lead, but this revolt collapsed soon.

Causes for the Failure of the Revolt

- Disunity among the Indians was the first and the foremost cause.
- The revolt was not widespread among the people. It did not extend beyond North India. South India, Punjab, Sind and Rajasthan kept quiet.
- A large number of rulers of the Indian states and the big Zamindars did not join the movement.
- The rulers of the Indian states, who did not support the movement, remained neutral.
- The educated Indians did not support the movement in general.
- The possessions of a wide spread Telegraph and Postal Communication proved very helpful to the British for

proper military actions and sending their reinforcements at the earliest time.

- The rebellious soldiers were short of modern weapons and other materials of war. They had to fight with traditional weapons which were no match to the modern weapons possessed by the British forces.
- The Indian leaders like Nana Saheb, Tantia Tope, Rani Lakshmi bai were no match to the British generals.
- The revolt was planned throughout the country on May 31, 1857 but it broke out prematurely. Obviously, preparations for the revolt remained incomplete.
- The organization and the planning of the rebels was very poor. The Indian leaders were brave and selfless but they lacked unity of command and discipline.
- The Revolutionaries had no common idea. The Muslims wanted to revive Mughal rule and the Hindus wanted to revive the Peshwa Raj.
- The British, through their diplomacy of 'Divide and Rule' prevented most of the Indian rulers to join together for a common cause.

Results of the Revolt

Though the Great Revolt failed to achieve its aim, it certainly produced far reaching results. It put an end to the Company's rule in India in 1858 and the administration of India was directly taken over by the British Crown. By passing a special Act on 1858, both the Board of Control and the Court of Directors were abolished and the office of the Secretary of State for India was created. He was assisted by an Indian Council of 15 members. The Governor

General of India was designated as Viceroy of India. It meant the representative of the Crown. The policy of ruthless conquest in India was given up and the Indian princes were given the right of adoption. Full religious freedom was guaranteed to Indians- Indians were also given assurance that high posts would be given to them without any discrimination. The Indian army was thoroughly re-organized. The number of the European forces were increased. The Artillery was put under the charge of the British. The Great rising of 1857, sowed the seeds of that tree which bore fruit in 1947 when India became free from the foreign yoke.

Queen Victoria's Proclamation of 1858



Queen Victoria

A Royal Durbar was held at Allahabad in November 1, 1858. The proclamation issued by Queen Victoria is described as the '**Magna Carta**' of India. It was read by Lord Canning, who was the last Governor General and the First Viceroy of India. It confirmed the earlier treaties of the East India Company with the Indian Princes. It promised to pay due regard to the ancient rites and customs of India and granted general pardon to all

offenders except those who had directly taken part in the murder of the British subjects.

The revolt aroused national feelings among the people and paved way for the rise of the national movement. It served as a source of inspiration in the later struggle for freedom and consequently India won freedom in 1947.

Leaders of the Revolt

Delhi	- Bhadur Shah - II
Central India	- Rani Laxmi Bai
Lucknow	- Begum Hazarat Mahal
Kanpur	- Nana Saheb, Tantia Tope

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The British historians call the revolt of 1857 as
 - a) Military revolt
 - b) The great revolt
 - c) War of Independence
 - d) Freedom struggle
2. Indian historians describe the Revolt of 1857 as
 - a) Sepoy Mutiny
 - b) The great revolt
 - c) First War of Indian Independence
 - d) Military revolt
3. During the great revolt of 1857 the Governor General of India was
 - a) Lord Lytton
 - b) Lord Ripon
 - c) Lord Canning
 - d) Lord Wellesley
4. The peasants had to pay heavy
 - a) duties
 - b) tariffs
 - c) revenue taxes
 - d) service taxes
5. Resumption of rentfree system was introduced by
 - a) Lord Linlithgow
 - b) Lord Dalhousie
 - c) Lord Bentinck
 - d) Lord Mount Batten.
6. General Services Enlistment Act was passed in
 - a) 1856
 - b) 1865
 - c) 1586
 - d) 1685
7. The first sign of unrest appeared at
 - a) Meerut
 - b) Barailley
 - c) Barrackpore
 - d) Lucknow
8. The Sepoys broke out into open revolt at
 - a) Meerut
 - b) Barrackpore
 - c) Barailley
 - d) Kanpur
9. The wife of Nawab of Oudh was
 - a) Mumtaj Mahal
 - b) Fathima Begum
 - c) Begum Hazarat Mahal
 - d) Sultana Razia

10. After 1857 revolt the Governor General of India was designated as

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| a) Viceroy of India | b) Ruler of India |
| c) Governor of India | d) Minister of India. |

II) Match the following.

1. Mangal Pandey	Kanpur
2. Bahadur Shah II	Lucknow
3. Nana Saheb	Central India
4. Begum Hazarat Mahal	Arrah
5. Rani Lakshmi Bai	Barrackpore
	Oudh
	Delhi
1. Rani Lakshmi Bai	Mughal Emperor
2. Bahadur Shah II	Colin Campbell
3. The Great Revolt	Jhansi
4. Lucknow	Magnacarta
5. Queen Victoria's Proclamation	1856
	1854
	1857

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. What were the Social and Religious causes for the Great Revolt of 1857?
2. Name the important leaders and centres of the mutiny.
3. Write a note on the Revolt at Delhi.
4. Mention the importance of Queen Victoria's Proclamation?
5. How did the British Cripple Indian trade?
6. What was the immediate cause for the Revolt of 1857?
7. Why was not the revolt widespread?

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. Political causes for the Revolt of 1857.
 - a) Who introduced Subsidiary Alliance?
 - b) Name the policy introduced by Lord Dalhousie.
 - c) What was the order issued by the British against the Mughal emperor?
 - d) Why did Nana Saheb develop a grudge against the British?

2. Revolt at Kanpur

- a) Who joined the rebels at Kanpur?
- b) What happened to the English?
- c) Who defeated Nana Saheb?
- d) When was Cawnpore brought under British control?

3. Revolt at Central India.

- a) Who led the revolt at Central India?
- b) Name the place captured by Rani Lakshmi Bai.
- c) What was her end?
- d) What did Tantia Tope do?

V) Answer the following in a paragraph.

1. What were the Administrative and Military causes of the Great Revolt of 1857?
2. Enumerate the causes for the failure of The Great Revolt of 1857.
3. Mention the results of the Great Revolt of 1857.

VI) Activity.

Mark the following in the given outline map of India.

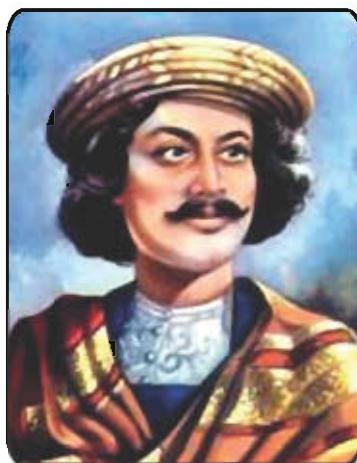
- a) Delhi b) Meerut c) Barailley d) Lucknow e) Kanpur
- f) Jhansi g) Gwalior h) Barrackpore i) Arrah j) Allahabad

10. Social and Religious Reform Movements in the 19th century

In the 19th century India witnessed a strong wave of reformation activities in religion and society. The Indians were inspired by the western ideas of reason, equality, liberty and humanity. They wanted to revive the past glory and started various social and religious reform movements and tried to remove the social evils. These socio-religious reform movements were called as the Indian Renaissance movements.

Brahmo Samaj—1828

Raja Rammohan Roy, the pioneer of reform movement was born in a well to-do Brahmin family of Bengal. He learnt Arabic, Sanskrit and Persian. Later on he learnt English, French, Latin, Greek and Hebrew languages and wrote a number of books in Bengali, Hindi, Sanskrit, Persian and



Raja Rammohan Roy

English. "Precepts of Jesus Christ", "The Guide to Peace and Happiness" were some of them. He got knowledge of various religions of the world. He joined the service of East India Company in 1805 and continued the same up to 1814. He went to England

to the cause of the Mughal Emperor Akbar II for an enhanced allowance. He died in 1833 at Bristol. He was given title of 'Raja' by the Mughal Emperor. He was called as 'Herald of New Age' in India.

Contributions

Raja Rammohan Roy tried to cure Hindu Society and Religion from all its evils and set it on right footing. He founded 'Atmiya Saba' (1815) which later developed into **Brahmo Samaj** in 1828. The Brahmo Samaj believed in a '**universal religion**' based on the principle of one supreme God. The Samaj condemned idol worship, costly rites and rituals, caste distinctions, untouchability and the practice of sati. It was because of Raja Rammohan Roy's hard work **Lord William Bentinck** passed **Sati Prohibition Act** in 1829, declaring the practice of sati as an offence, punishable with death sentence. He also fought against polygamy and child marriage and supported intercaste marriage and widow remarriage. He tried to obtain a respectable position for Women in the Indian Society. He encouraged the study of English language and the Western Science in India. By the Western Studies the various superstitions, blind-faiths and the like were removed from India.

After the death of Raja Rammohan Roy, the work of the Samaj was carried by great men like Keshab Chandra Sen and Devendranath Tagore. Due to the efforts of Keshab Chandra Sen, an act was passed in 1872. It abolished polygamy and child marriage.

Prarthana Samaj-1867

Prarthana Samaj was founded in Bombay in 1867 by **Dr. Atmaram Pandurang**. This Samaj advocated various social reforms. It advocated inter-dining, inter-caste marriage, widow re-marriage, improvement of women, downtrodden classes and the abolition of Purdha System and Child marriage. The Samajis founded night schools, Asylum and Orphanages and other such institutions for the downtrodden people. Mahadeva Govinda Ranade devoted his whole life to the promotion of the Samaj.

Arya Samaj-1875

Swami Dayananda Saraswathi founded the Arya Samaj in 1875. His original name was Mul Shankar. He was born in a well to do family in Morvi



Swami Dayananda Saraswathi

state in Kathiawar. Early in his childhood, he took up sanyas and wandered from place to place and studied Sanskrit and became a great Scholar. He mastered the Sanskrit and became the disciple of Swami Virjanand.

Dayanda Saraswathi found out that the Vedas contained all the truth and he devoted his life to the propagation of Vedas. So his motto was '**Go back to Vedas**'. He put before the people some of the attractive elements of Ancient Vedic Society and in this way he created the feeling of self-confidence and self-respect.

The Arya Samaj condemned animal sacrifice, idol worship, ritualism and the idea of heaven and hell and the concept of fatalism. He started the '**Suddhi Movement**' a ritual to reconvert the Hindus who had been converted to other religions earlier.

The Arya Samaj opposed child marriage, Polygamy, Purdha system, casteism and sati and advocated women education, intercaste marriage and inter-dining. It insisted on education of the women and upliftment of the depressed classes. The Samaj started a number of schools all over the country to impart English and Vedic education, called **Dayananda Anglo-Vedic (DAV)** schools and Colleges.

His followers were Lala Lajpat Rai, Lala Hansraj and Pandit Guru Dutt. His principles and philosophy deeply influenced the great leaders like Bala Gangadhara Tilak and Gopala Krishna Gokhale. He was the first Indian who Preached the gospel of '**Swadeshi**' and '**India for Indians**'. He was often described as the '**Martin Luther of Hinduism**'.

The Theosophical Society-1875

It was founded by Russian Lady Madame Blavatsky and an American Colonel Henry S. Olcott in USA (New York) to preach about God and Wisdom (Theos-means God and Sophos means wisdom).

The main principles of the Theosophical Society were to develop the feeling of fraternity, to study ancient religions, philosophy and science, to find out the laws of Nature and development of divine power in man. **Mrs. Annie Besant** became the President of this society in 1893 and devoted herself to the revival of Hindu religion and Indian education. She founded the **Central Hindu College** at Benaras .Later it developed into the **Benaras Hindu University**.



Annie Besant

Annie Besant started a newspaper called '**New India**' and spread the Theosophical ideas. She threw herself into politics, started the Home Rule Movement to attain Self government for the Indians. The headquarter of this Society is at Adyar in Chennai where she had a big library in which she preserved the rare books of Sanskrit. Thus Theosophical society has played a leading role in the Indian Renaissance.

Ramakrishna Mission - 1897

The Ramakrishna Mission was named after **Sri Ramakrishna**

Paramahansa. The Ramakrishna Mission is a philanthropic, volunteer organisation founded by Swami Vivekananda, the chief disciple of Shri Ramakrishna, on May 1, 1897. The mission conducts extensive work in health care, disaster relief, rural management, tribal welfare, elementary and higher education and culture. The mission's headquarter is at Belur Math near Kolkata in India.

Ramakrishna was born in an orthodox Brahmin family in Bengal in 1836. He married Saradhamani Devi. He was a devotee of Goddess Kali. He was a priest in the Dakshineswar Kali Temple. He had visions of Rama, Shiva, Kali, Allah and Jesus. This convinced him that there is only One God and the different forms of God are only but different manifestations. He died in 1866.



Ramakrishna Paramahansa

Narendranath Dutta popularly known as **Swami Vivekananda** became his disciple and a wandering monk. He spread the Divine Message of Ramakrishna all over the World. In 1893, he was a delegate to the Parliament of the World's Religions at Chicago in the USA. His speech here,

beginning with "Sisters and Brothers of Universe" became very famous and brought him widespread recognition.



Swami Vivekananda

The aims and ideals of the mission are purely spiritual and humanitarian and has no connection with politics. Vivekananda proclaimed "Renunciation and service" as the two fold national ideals of modern India and Ramakrishna Mission strives to practise and preach these ideals. The service activities are based on the message of "Jeeva is Shiva" form. According to Swami Vivekananda 'Service to poor is Service to God'.

The activities of Ramakrishna Mission cover the following areas:

Educational work, Health care, Cultural activities, Rural upliftment, Tribal welfare, and Youth movement.

The Ramakrishna Mission has its own hospitals, charitable dispensaries, maternity clinics, tuberculosis clinics, and mobile dispensaries. It also maintains training centres for nurses. Orphanages and homes for the elderly are included in

the Mission's field of activities, along with rural and tribal welfare work.

In educational activities, the Ramakrishna Mission has established many renowned educational institutions in India, having its own university, colleges, vocational training centres. The Ramakrishna Mission has also involved in disaster relief operations during famine, epidemic, fire, flood, earthquake, cyclones and communal disturbances.

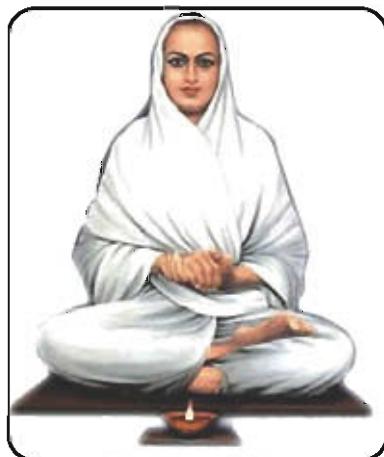
The Ramakrishna Mission played an important role in the installation of Photovoltaic (PV) lighting system in the Sundarbans region of West Bengal. The PV lighting was used to provide electricity to the people who were traditionally depending on kerosene and diesel.

In a speech made in 1993, Federico Mayor, Director-General of UNESCO, stated, "I am indeed struck by the similarity of the constitution of the Ramakrishna Mission which Vivekananda established as early as 1897 with that of UNESCO drawn up in 1945".

Samarasa Sudha Sanmarga Sangam - 1865

Samarasa Sudha Sanmarga Sangam was started by Ramalinga Adigal popularly known as Vallalar. St.Ramalinga of Vadalur was born at Marudhur near Chidambaram in 1823. He played a prominent role in the social and religious reform movement in Tamil Nadu during the 19th century. Being spiritual, his songs and works were a harmonious blend of social reforms and religious sentiments. He tried his best to find solution to the social evils by inculcating spiritual awareness.

St. Ramalinga led to unity and solidarity of the Tamils. In that sense alone, he favoured the creation of a casteless society to be guided by God whom he believed to be in the form of '*Arul Perum Jothi*'.



Ramalinga Adigal

He condemned the inequalities based on birth and promoted universal love and brother-hood.

Ramalinga Adigal believed that hunger and poverty are the evils of the society. He advocated that feeding the poor is the highest form of worship. As a result he founded **Sathy Dharma Salai** in 1867 at Vadalur for feeding the poor. On the inaugural day he lit the fire of the stone stove with a declaration that the fire is ever alive and the needy shall be fed for ever. As per the declaration it provides food to every one irrespective of caste and creed through out the year.

St. Ramalinga had the view that love is the "**Master key to spirituality**". Vallalar showed his compassion and mercy not only on human beings but also on plants, insects, birds and animals. This is called '**Jeeva Karunya**' (**Mercy to life**). That is why he said, "**Vaadiya Payirai Kandapodhellam Vaadinaen**". He opposed the

superstitious beliefs and rituals. He emphasized on '**being vegetarian**'. He forbade the killing of animals for the sake of food.

One of the primary teachings of Vallalar is '**Service to mankind is the path of Moksha**' God is the personification of mercy and knowledge. The path of compassion and mercy are the only path to God. In 1872, he established '**Sathy Gnana Sabai**', Hall of True Wisdom Forum and ensuring it was entirely Secular. His devotional songs are compiled in a volume called '**Thiru Arutpa**'.

Aligarh Movement

The Aligarh movement was started by **Sir Syed Ahamed Khan**, a judicial officer under the British government. This was the first and the most important movement for the spread of modern education and social reforms among Muslims.

He started a school at Ghazipur in 1864. It was called as the scientific society which translated many scientific works into Urdu and published them. His greatest achievement was the establishment of the Mohammadan Anglo Oriental College at Aligarh in 1875. Later it developed into Aligarh Muslim University. The reform movement started by sir Syed Ahmed Khan, was called the **Aligarh Movement**. He reformed the Muslim Society through his writings. He was in favour of the abolition of purdha system and education of women. He propagated his views and ideals of his society through the news paper called Tahzil-ud-Akhlaq (Reform of Morals). He said that the Hindus and the Muslims are 'two eyes of the beautiful bird that was India'. He did yeoman service for uplifting the muslims.

Other Reformers

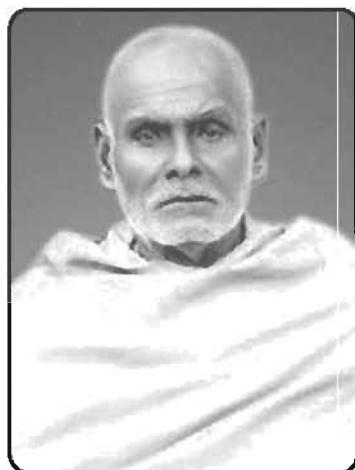
Jyotiba Phule

Jyotiba Phule was one of the prominent social reformers of the 19th century in India. He led the movement against the prevailing caste-restrictions in India. He revolted against the domination of the Brahmins and for the rights of the peasants and other low caste people. Jyotiba Phule was believed to be the first Hindu to start an orphanage for the unfortunate children.

In 1873, Jyotiba Phule formed the **Satya Shodhak Samaj** (Society of seekers of truth). The purpose of the organisation was to liberate the people of lower caste from the suppression by Brahmins. In order to give the lower caste people more powers Jyotiba Phule decided to construct a common bathing tank outside his house. He also wished to dine with all, regardless of their caste. He revolted against the tyranny of the upper castes.

Sree Narayana Guru

Sree Narayana Guru was a great social reformer from Kerala. In 1903 **Sree Narayana Guru Dharma Paribalana Yogam** was started to work



Sree Narayana Guru

for the social economic and educational development of the Ezhava Community and other backward people. He condemned animal sacrifices, casteism and other social evils.

Sripade B V Sadhu Maharaja

Sripade B.V. Sadhu Maharaja belonged to the Royal family of Mungir became a Vaishnava, even though his family had previously been devoted to worshipping Lord Shiva. He constructed a temple in honour of Sri chaitanya, called the Prema Mandir in Mungir. He started many Ashramas to serve humanity.

Dr.B.R.Ambedhkar



Dr.B.R.Ambedhkar

Dr.B.R.Ambedhkar is viewed as messiah of dalits and downtrodden in India. He was the chairman of the drafting committee that was constituted by the Constituent Assembly in 1947 to draft a constitution for the independent India. Bhimrao Ambedhkar was also the first Law Minister of independent India. For his yeoman service to the nation, B.R.Ambedhkar was bestowed with **Bharath Ratna** in 1990.

Dr.B.R.Ambedkar was born on April 14, 1891 in Mhow (presently in Madhya Pradesh). In July 1924, he founded the **Bahiskrit Hitkaraini Sabha** (Outcastes Welfare Association). The aim of the Sabah was to uplift the downtrodden socially and politically in the Indian society. In 1927 he led the Mahad March near Bombay, to give the untouchables the right to draw water from the public tank the 'Mahad' publicly.

Thanthai Periyar

Another great social reformer from South India was Periyar E.V.Ramaswamy Naicker. He dedicated his whole life for the uplift of the downtrodden. The social reforms introduced by Periyar greatly influenced the social reforms of the 20th century.

Impact of Social and Religious Movements

The social and religious reform movements brought about remarkable changes in the society and religion. These movements greatly helped to abolish some of the evils like sati, child marriage and untouchability. It promoted education, encouraged widow remarriage, inter-caste marriages and inter-dining. It instilled social awakening and spirit of nationalism in the minds of Indians. It made the people to be proud of their culture and glory. Last but not the least it helped the Indians to face problems with scientific approach and outlook.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer.

1. The pioneer of the reform movements was
 - a) Raja Rammohan Roy b) Swami Dayanandha Saraswathi
 - c) Keshab Chandra Sen d) Devendranath Tagore
2. Lord William Bentinck passed an Act in 1829 to abolish Sati due to the efforts of.
 - a) Mrs. Annie Besant b) Swami Vivekanandha
 - c) Raja Rammohan Roy d) Lala Hansraj
3. Swami Dayanandha Saraswathi started the
 - a) Brahma Samaj b) Arya Samaj
 - c) Prarthana Samaj d) Aligarh movement
4. The headquarters of the Rama Krishna Mission is at
 - a) Kanchipuram b) Belur c) Melur d) Hampi
5. Vallalar's devotional songs are complied in a volume called
 - a) Devaram b) Thiru vasagam c) Ettuthogai d) Thiru Arutpa

6. Sir Syed Ahamed Khan started the
 a) Aligarh movement b) Theosophical Society
 c) Samarasa Sudha Sanmarka Sangam d) Muslim League
7. Sir Syed Ahamed Khan started a school at
 a) Alipore b) Alleppey c) Ghazipur d) Kanpur
8. A great socialist reformer from Kerala is
 a) Sree Narayana Guru b) Guru Prasad
 c) Guru Nanak d) Guru Sai

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Herald of New Age | Swami Dayanandha Saraswathi |
| 2. Martin Luther of Hinduism | Ramakrishna Mission |
| 3. New India | Mrs. Annie Besant |
| 4. Photo Voltoic Lighting System | Ramalinga Adigal |
| 5. Vallalar | Dr. Dharmambal |
| | Raja Rammohan Roy |

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. Write a note on Prarthana Samaj.
2. What are the services rendered by the Arya Samaj?
3. Mention the main principles of the Theosophical Society.
4. What are the teachings of Vallalar?
5. What was the aim of Outcastes Welfare Association?
 (Bahiskrit Hitkaraini Sabha)
6. Point out the impacts of Social and Religious Reform Movements in the 19th Century.

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. Brahmo Samaj
 - a) Who founded Brahmo Samaj?
 - b) What were the languages learnt by Raja Rammohan Roy?
 - c) Name the books written by Raja Rammohan Roy.
 - d) What did Brahmo Samaj believe?

2. Arya Samaj

- a) What was the original name of Swami Dayanandha Saraswathi?
- b) Who was his guru?
- c) What was his motto?
- d) What did the Samaj advocate?

3. The Theosophical Society

- a) Who was the founder of the Theosophical Society?
- b) Why was it founded?
- c) Who was the President of this Society in 1893?
- d) Where is the headquarters of this Society located?

4. Ramakrishna Mission

- a) Who was Ramakrishna Paramahansa?
- b) Who founded the Ramakrishna Mission?
- c) When and Where was the Parliament of Religions held?
- d) Who represented the Hindu religion at the Parliament of religions?

5. Aligarh Movement

- a) Name the first religious movements of the Muslims.
- b) What did Sir Syed Ahmed Khan Strongly believe?
- c) What was his greatest achievement?
- d) Name the newspaper published by him.

6. Dr. B.R. Ambedkar

- a) Who is the messiah of dalits and downtrodden?
- b) Who was the first Law Minister of India?
- c) How was he honoured by the Government of India?
- d) Why did he lead the Mahad March near Bombay?

V. Answer the following in a paragraph.

1. Write a paragraph on Brahmo Samaj.
2. Explain the activities of the Ramakrishna Mission.
3. “Ramalinga Adigal played a prominent role in the Social and Religious Reform movements” – Justify.

11. Freedom Movement in India - Phase - I

Pre-Gandhian Era(A.D.1885 - A.D.1919)

The Indian national awakening witnessed in the great revolt of 1857 was the beginning of long struggle for freedom which culminated in the achievement of independence in 1947. The Indian nationalism arose out of the conditions created by the British rulers. Various causes contributed for the rise of national awakening.

A. FACTORS LEADING TO THE RISE OF NATIONALIST MOVEMENT

British Imperialism

The most important factor which lead to the rise of national movement was the British imperialism. By bringing the whole of India under their domination the British brought about the unification of the country. Before the advent of the British, there was no unity among the Indians. The British imperialism made the people of the whole of India as one nation.

Contact with the European countries

As a result of British supremacy, India came into close contact with various European countries. English language became the language of the educated Indians. Indians came into contact with the ideas and culture of western countries. Moreover the Indians were motivated by the unification of Germany and Italy. Hence, they wanted to fight for their freedom.

Modern methods of Transport and Communication

Modern means of transport and communication greatly helped the Indian leaders to carry on their ideas to every nook and corner of the country. The frequent meeting of the leaders

and their personal contact with the people in different parts of the country gave a momentum to the nationalist movement in the country.

The Great Leaders of India

The Great Scholars, poets and National leaders played an important part for the development of national awakening. Reformers like Raja Rammohan Roy, Vivekananda and leaders like Tilak, Nehru, Gandhi, Patel contributed a lot. They inspired the people with the ideas of self-respect and self-confidence. They against the foreign rule

The Indian Press and Literature

The Indian press and literature accelerated the spread of national consciousness among the masses of India and stamped their minds with ideals of freedom. Newspapers like the Indian mirror, Bombay Samachar, the Amrit Bazaar Patrika, the Hindu, the Kesari and Maratha echoed the public opinion and developed a national outlook among masses. The writings of Bankim Chandra Chatterjee, Rabindranath Tagore, Subramania Bharathi and other patriotic writers brought national awakening among Indians. The Vernacular Press Act of 1878, curbed the freedom of the press. It led to agitation and unrest among people.

The Revolt of 1857

The English ruthlessly crushed the Great Revolt. The Indians were completely shaken by the atrocities done by the English. They were humiliated and so they hated the rule of

the British. The revolt was not completely suppressed. It began to spring out and developed into the national awakening, which finally led to the freedom of India.

Racial Discrimination

The British followed the policy of '**'Divide and rule'**'. They followed a policy of racial superiority and openly insulted Indians. All high posts were reserved for the English and the Indians were debarred from them. The British considered the Indians as inferior and uncivilized. The controversy over the Ilbert Bill made it clear that the Indians could not expect justice and fair play from the English.

B. FREEDOM MOVEMENT IN INDIA- PHASE-I PRE-GANDHIAN ERA- 1885 – 1919

In order to give higher posts to Indians, the Charter Act of 1833 and Act of 1853 were passed. But no Indians were appointed in any higher post. It ended in failure. The British followed the policy of repression and discrimination which added the fuel to the fire. The political consciousness had dawn and the people wanted more and more power in their hands. The Arms Act of 1878 and the Vernacular Press Act of 1878 added the freedom spirit among Indians. The Ilbert bill of 1883 failed to fulfill the aspirations of the Indians.

Foundation of Indian National Congress (1885)

The Indian National congress was founded in 1885 on the advise of Allan Octavian Hume, a retired British civil servant. The first session of the Congress was held at Bombay. W.C.Bannerjee chaired the first session. 72 delegates from all parts of the country including Dadabai Naoroji,

Surendranath Banerjee, Madan Mohan Malavia, Mahadev Govind Ranade, Gopala Krishna Gokale, Pheroze Shah Mehta, G.Subramaniya Iyer and other liberal minded leaders attended the meeting.

Aims of the Indian National Congress

The aims of the Indian National Congress were: 1. Greater representation and expansion of legislative councils, 2. More facilities for the spread of Education, 3. Freedom of press, 4. Holding of Indian Civil Service (I.C.S) examination in India, 5. Reduction of military expenditure 6. Taxation should be made lighter. 7. More Indians should be employed on higher posts and 8. Indian Council at London should be abolished.

The Moderates

The congress leaders in the early stage came from the educated middle class. They were called as moderates. They believed in peaceful approach to the government, to redress the grievances and asking for major reforms. They believed in giving petitions to the government and requesting it for reforms. They were loyal and true to the British government. **Surendranath Banerjee, Dadabai Naoroji, Pheroze Sha Mehta, Gopala Krishna Gokhale and M.G. Ranade** were some of the important moderate leaders. The demands of the moderates were described as "**Political Mendicancy**".

In the beginning the British Government showed a friendly attitude towards the congress. When the congress began to ask for more reforms there was a change in its attitude towards the congress and it did

not pay any attention to the demands of the congress.

Extremists

A section of the congress began to loose faith in the methods of the congress. The leaders of this section were **Lokmanya Bal Gangadhar Tilak (Bal)**, **Bipin Chandra Pal (Pal)**, **Lala Lajpat Rai (Lal)** and **Arabind Ghosh**. They had a strong determination to fight for Indian independence. They advocated a radical way of the political agitation. They did not want to depend on the mercy of the government for independence, on the contrary they believed, it was their right. Due to their radical ideas they were called "Extremists".

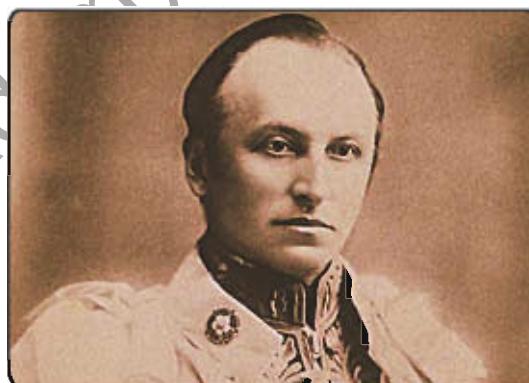


Bal Gangadhar Tilak

Tilak declared, "**Swaraj is my Birth Right and I shall have it**". He had started a newspaper "**Kesari**" in Marathi through which he contributed a lot in arousing nationalism and anti British sentiments. He revived the celebration of "**Ganapathi**" and "**Shivaji**" festivals to arouse national feelings. Thus the militant nationalists desired to change not only the aim of the congress but also the means to attain it.

Partition of Bengal - 1905

In 1905 Lord Curzon made the Partition of Bengal. He divided Bengal into two parts—East Bengal and Assam on one side West Bengal and Bihar on the other side. Lord curzon made a statement that the partition was purely on administrative grounds but the Indians thought that it was to break the unity of the people and to flare up confrontation between the Hindus and the Muslims. This angered not only the extremists but also the moderates. They called it as an introduction of the policy of "**Divide and Rule**". Due to violent criticism and agitation, the partition was revoked in 1911. It paved the way for the birth of the Swadeshi Movement, an economic boycott.



Lord curzon

Swadeshi, literally means of "**One's own country**". It encouraged the progress of Indian industries and boycott of foreign goods. The congress adopted the slogan "**Vandemataram**" composed by Bankim Chandra Chatterjee.

Formation of the Muslim league - 1906

Muslims had participated in the 1857 uprising, but in course of time the activities of the Indian National Congress created fear in the minds of the Muslims. They felt the need for a

separate organization to champion the cause of the Muslims. The British who followed the policy of "Divide and Rule" accepted the demand of the Muslims. In 1906 the all India Muslim League was formed under the leadership of Salimullah Khan, the Nawab of Dacca. The aim of the Muslim League was to protect the rights of the Muslims, to keep the Muslim masses away from the Congress, to remain loyal to the British Government and to make a demand for a separate electorate.

Surat Split -1907

Meanwhile, the relation between the moderates and extremists reached a breaking point. The congress session held at Surat in 1907, was a battle ground between the moderates and the extremists. A rift arose between them over the election of the congress president. The congress was divided and the extremists left the congress. **Bala Gangadhar Tilak** became the leader of Extremists and **Gopala Krishna Gokhale** became the leader of Moderates.

The Minto Morley Reforms of 1909

The Minto Morley reforms or the Indian Council Act of 1909 was passed to appease the sentiments of the Muslims in India. The Minto Morely reforms introduced separate electorate for the Muslims. The moderates criticized the reforms.

The First World War - 1914-1918

The First World war broke out in 1914. During the war, Britain, France, and Russia were on one side. As India was a part of the British Empire, Indian soldiers actively participated in the war. The Indian National Congress supported the British hoping that at the

end of the war, they would be rewarded with self government.

The Home Rule Leagues -1916

Bala Gangadhar Tilak formed the Home Rule League in Bombay (Mumbai) in 1916. Mrs. Annie Besant also started a Home Rule League in Madras (Chennai). Mrs. Annie Besant created tremendous enthusiasm among the people by her speeches and writings. Her paper "New India" was banned. The two leagues carried on propaganda in favour of Home Rule or Self Government for India. Motilal Nehru and C.R.Das supported the movement led by Mrs. Annie Besant.

Lucknow Pact -1916

Two important historic developments took place in the Lucknow session of the Indian National Congress in 1916.

- The moderates and the extremists joined together.
- The Congress and the Muslim league signed a pact agreeing to co-operate with each other in order to achieve self government.

○ It was at this session Jawaharlal Nehru met Gandhiji for the first time.

August Declaration -1917

The August declaration of 1917 promised responsible government to the people of India by stages, so that the Indians would learn the art of governing their own state. Hence the Home Rule Movement was slowly withdrawn.

Montague Chelmsford Reforms of 1919

During the first world war, India co-operated with the British for their success. In return, the British passed the Montague – Chelmsford reforms in

1919. It expanded the Legislature at the centre and in the provinces. It introduced Dyarchy in the provinces. It further encouraged the communal, racial and religious interest by allowing the Sikhs, Anglo-Indians and Europeans to send their own separate representatives. However the congress rejected this reform and decided to revolt against it. Mrs. Annie Besant described this act as "ungenerous for England to offer and unworthy for India to accept".

Rowlatt Act of 1919

In order to face the revolutionary movement in a successful manner, the British government passed the Rowlatt Act in 1919. It empowered the British Government to arrest any one without warrant, and imprisoned without trial. The Indians under the leadership of Gandhiji opposed it. There was country wide hartal on April 6, 1919.

Jallian Wala Bagh Tragedy 1919

Two prominent leaders of Punjab Dr. Satyapal and Dr. Saifuddin Kitchlew were arrested on April 13, 1919. More than 10,000 people had gathered in Jallian Wala Bagh at Amritsar to protest peacefully against the arrest of their leaders. The British troops, commanded by General Dyer surrounded the Bagh on all sides. The park had only one entrance which was blocked by the armed men. General Dyer, the Military commander of Amritsar ordered his men to shoot on the peaceful unarmed crowd without giving any warning. The crowd included many women and children. Hundreds of people were killed and wounded. Martial law was imposed. Great atrocities were committed on the

people. The Jallian Wala Bagh massacre horrified the Indians. Rabindranath Tagore renounced his knighthood in protest against this incident.



Jallian Wala Bagh-Amritsar

Khilafat Movement 1919

The Muslims of India had their grievances against the British. The first World War ended with the defeat of Germany along with the allies including Turkey. The Ottoman Empire under the Turkish Sultan was broken up and the territories were shared by Britain and France. The Muslims in India protested against the humiliation of the Turkish Caliph, who was also their religious head. The Ali brothers – Mohammed Ali and Shaukat Ali and Maulana Abul Kalam Azad organized a mass movement of the Muslims known as the Khilafat Movement.

Gandhiji whole heartedly supported the Khilafat cause, as he felt that the Indian Muslims were genuinely aggrieved over the wrong done to Turkey. In the Khilafat Movement Gandhiji saw an opportunity of Hindu-Muslim unity.

Centres of Nationalist Movement



EXERCISE**I) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The Unification of the country was brought by the British
 - a) Imperialism
 - b) Politics
 - c) Conquests
 - d) Negotiations
2. The language of the educated Indians was _____.
 - a) French
 - b) English
 - c) Hindi
 - d) Bengali
3. The religious and social reformers prepared the ground for the rise of
 - a) Nationalism
 - b) Revolution
 - c) Mutiny
 - d) Rebellion
4. The policies of the moderates were described by the Extremist as
 - a) Political mendicancy
 - b) Subsidiaries
 - c) Mandatories
 - d) Open door policy
5. Open split in the Congress occurred in the sessions held at
 - a) Surat
 - b) Lahore
 - c) Tripura
 - d) Madras
6. The Minto – Morley reforms introduced separate electorate for the
 - a) Hindus
 - b) Muslims
 - c) Sikhs
 - d) Christians
7. Home Rule League in Bombay was formed by
 - a) Nehru
 - b) Mrs. Annie Besant
 - c) Tilak
 - d) Bharathiar

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Iswar Chandra Vidhya Sagar | Patriotic writer |
| 2. Subramania Bharathi | 'Of one's own country' |
| 3. Swadeshi | Bala Gangadhar Tilak |
| 4. New India | Religious and Social Reformer |
| 5. Kesari | Mrs. Annie Besant |
| | Young India |
| | Bipin Chandra Pal |

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. How did Indian press and literature paved the way for the rise of nationalist movement?
2. What were the aims of Indians National Congress?
3. Name some of the important moderate leaders.
4. Write a note on the formation of the Muslim League?

5. Mention the importance of Lucknow Session of the Indian National Congress in 1916.

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. Factors leading to the rise of Nationalist Movement.
 - a) How did the national leaders inspire the people?
 - b) When was the Vernacular Press Act passed?
 - c) What was the policy of the British?
 - d) How did the British consider the Indians?
2. The Indian National Congress
 - a) When was the Indian National Congress founded?
 - b) On whose advice was it founded?
 - c) Where was the first session of the congress held? Who was the chair person?
 - d) Name some of the leaders who attended the first session of the Congress.
3. Extremists.
 - a) Name the extremists leaders.
 - b) What did Tilak declare?
 - c) Name the festivals revived by Tilak.
 - d) What was the desire of the militant nationalists?
4. Jallian Wala Bagh Tragedy.
 - a) Who were the prominent leaders arrested?
 - b) Where did the people gather?
 - c) Who was the British Military commander of Amritsar?
 - d) What did Rabindranath Tagore do?

V) Answer the following in a paragraph.

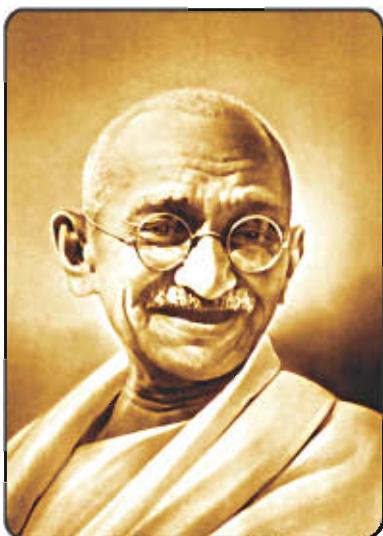
1. Write any five factors that promoted the rise of Nationalist Movement.
2. Write a paragraph on Partition of Bengal.

VI) Draw a Time Line chart for the historical events between the years 1885 and 1919.

12. Freedom Movement in India - Phase - II

Gandhian Era (A.D.1920 - A.D.1947)

In 1920, B.G. Tilak died. Gandhiji became the leader of the congress. The second phase of our freedom movement saw a new beginning and awakening among the people of India. The advent of Gandhiji to Indian politics brought a great enthusiasm and pride among the people. Gandhiji, who is known as "Father of our Nation" advocated a new technique in our freedom struggle called "Sathyagraha", a movement based on Truth and Non-violence.



Mahatma Gandhi

Non-Co-operation Movement - 1920-1922

In order to show their opposition for the Rowlatt Act, Jallian Wala Bagh Massacre and Montague Chelmsford Reforms, Gandhi decided to start non-co-operation movement at Calcutta Conference. The Movement was started in 1920. The movement was observed in three stages. Firstly, Indians who received titles and honours from the British renounced them in protest. Secondly, there were large scale demonstrations including

hartals. All government institutions including schools, colleges, offices and legislatures were boycotted. Important leaders were arrested and imprisoned.

The most important and final stage of the movement was non-payment of taxes. The congress session held in 1921 at Ahmedabad called upon the people not to pay taxes to the Government till their demands were met. The non-co-operation movement was in its full swing, hartals and lock-out were all over the country.

The Chauri Chaura Incident -1922

When the Non co-operation movement was in full swing, Gandhiji advised his followers not to involve in violence. But at Chauri Chaura (Gorakhpur) in Uttar Pradesh, On February 5, 1922 a procession of 1000 peasants was organized. The police fired at the peasants. In retaliation the angry peasants attacked and burnt the police station killing 22 police men. Gandhi was upset and suspended the Non Co-operation movement immediately but very soon Gandhi was arrested, the activities of the national movement were suspended for some years. During this period, Gandhi worked for Hindu Muslim Unity, removal of untouchability and uplift of women.

The Swarajya Party 1923

In order to lead the National Movement a section of the nationalist leaders like C.R.Das and Motilal Nehru formed the Swarajya Party in 1923. Instead of boycotting the Assemblies, these leaders wanted to oppose the British Government from within the

Legislature. It passed a resolution demanding the establishment of a responsible Government in India. It also appealed for a Round Table Conference to consider their demands and needs. But with the death of C.R.Das in 1925 this party became actionless and then it was dissolved.

Simon Commission -1927-1928

The British Government appointed a seven member Commission under the leadership of Sir John Simon to enquire into the working of the Act of 1919 and to suggest further measures to improve Indian administration. All the members of this commission were English men. It did not have any Indian member. The fact that no Indian was included to review the conditions and plans for the future of their own country was an insult to the Indians. There were wide spread protests all over the country. When Simon came to India in 1928 he was met with Black Flag demonstrations and placards carrying the words, "Go Back Simon".



Simon commission - Protest

The leaders and the people were lathi charged. Lala Lajpat Rai "The Lion of Punjab" who led a demonstration against the Simon Commission at Lahore, died out of police lathi charge. Bhagat Singh and

other revolutionaries sought to avenge his death.

The Lahore Congress -1929

The Congress met at Lahore under the Presidentship of Jawaharlal Nehru in 1929. It declared Purna Swaraj or Complete Independence for India as its goal. At mid night on 31, December 1929, the tri colour flag was unfurled on the bank of river Ravi amidst the Slogans **Vande Mataram**. Consequently, January 26, 1930, was celebrated as Independence Day all over the country. The Indian Constitution was formally adopted on January 26 1950 to make this day memorable in our history. This day is now celebrated as Republic Day.

Civil Dis-obedience Movement or The Salt Satyagraha of 1930



Dandi March

In order to achieve complete Independence for India, Gandhi started civil dis-obedience movement in 1930. The British Government levied tax on common salt used by millions of people. It hit the poor hard. The Civil Disobedience Movement was started on 12th March, 1930. Gandhiji and 78 chosen followers including Sarojini Naidu left Sabarmathi Ashram in Ahmadabad to Dandi, a village on the Gujarat Sea Coast to break the Salt laws. It covered nearly a distance of 400kms. This march is popularly known as 'Dandi March'.

Gandhiji and thousands of Indians who had joined him during the course of the March, reached Dandi on 6th April, 1930. The slogan "**Vande Matharam**" echoed everywhere. Gandhiji broke the salt laws on the same day by preparing salt from sea water.

In Tamil Nadu C. Rajagopalachari (Rajaji) organized a march from Trichy to Vedaranyam on Tanjore Coast to break the salt laws.

Round Table Conferences 1930 -32 The First Round Table Conference 1930

The British could not suppress the Civil Disobedience Movement. In order to solve the political dead lock, the British called the First Round Table Conference at London in 1930. It was not attended by the congress, since the civil dis-obedience movement was going on in full swing. It ended in failure. The failure of the first round table conference made the British to send Lord Irwin to negotiate with Gandhiji. An understanding was reached between Gandhiji and Lord Irwin.

Gandhi-Irwin Pact-1931

As a result in 1931, the Gandhi-Irwin Pact was signed. According to this pact, the Civil Disobedience movement was suspended and the Congress decided to attend the next round table conference on the condition of release of all political prisoners and withdrawal of the Salt Law.

The Second Round Table Conference -1931

The second Round Table conference was held in London in 1931. As per the Gandhi – Irwin pact, Gandhiji attended the Second Round Table Conference in England. As no

decision could be reached regarding the communal question and constitutional changes, Gandhiji returned to India without any settlement. When he landed in India, he was arrested and the congress was banned. The Civil Disobedience Movement was once again revived.



Second Round Table

The Communal Award and Poona Pact of 1932

At the end of second round-table conference British Prime Minister Ramsay Mc. Donald announced a scheme known as the "**Communal Award**" in 1932. It provided separate electorates for the minorities and the Depressed classes. Dr.B.R.Ambedkar the leader of the depresses classes accepted it. Gandhiji protested against this and went on a fast unto death. His fast ended with the signing of an agreement known as Poona Pact in 1932 by which the depressed communities agreed to have joint electorates with adequate representation. In this way the device of British Government to separate Depressed classes from the Hindus had failed.

Third Round Table Conference - 1932

In November 1932, the Third Round Table conference was held in

London . It ended in failure without the participation of the congress leaders.

The Government of India Act 1935

On the basis of the Simon Commission report and the proposals of the three round Table Conferences, the government act of India 1935 was passed. It introduced the following changes. This act (1) introduced provincial autonomy, (2) Abolished dyarchy in the provinces, (3)Established Federal Government at the Centre, (4) Provided for the establishment of a federal court to decide the conflicts between the provinces and the centre and (5)Provided for the establishment of a **Federal Reserve Bank**.

The Second World War 1939 – 1945

According to the government of India Act of 1935, provincial elections were held in 1937. Congress won in seven provinces out of eleven. The administration of the Congress in the provinces was highly successful and it implemented many progressive policies. The work was going on smoothly until the outbreak of the Second World War in 1939. India was dragged into the war without her consent. The congress, ofcourse, condemned the aggression of the Axis countries and demanded the establishment of a National Government in India. When there was no satisfactory reply from the British, the Congress ministries resigned in 1939. When the congress ministry resigned, Mohamad Ali Jinnah, the leader of Muslim League became so much over enjoyed and he celebrated this as '**the day of deliverance**' on 22 December 1939. After this he began to preach that the Hindus and the Muslims were not one but the two separate nations.

Demand for Pakistan -1940

In March 1940, at the Lahore session of the Muslim League, the demand for a separate nation of Pakistan was made. Muhammad Ali Jinnah put forth the "**Two Nation Theory**", that is, two different Nations namely India and Pakistan for the Hindus and Muslims respectively. He addressed that the Muslims wanted a separate home-land styled as Pakistan. It comprised of those provinces where the Muslims were in majority.

The August Offer -1940

The British Viceroy Linlithgow was responsible for involving Indians in the Second World War which was opposed by congress. He made some offer to satisfy the congress. Dominion Status for India, after the war, was promised. It was promised that a committee would be set up for framing the Indian Constitution. And an Indian Would be appointed in the Council of the Viceroy. These offers were made in the month of August 1940. So it is called the August Offer. The congress totally rejected it.

Cripp's Mission -1942

During the second World War, Japan joined the war against Britain. In order to get India's support, the British government decided to solve the political deadlock in India. So in March 1942, **Sir Stafford Cripps** was sent to India to negotiate with Indian leaders. Cripps offered Indians Dominion Status after the Second World War and allowed them to frame a new constitution. But he did not mention any thing about giving independence to India. Gandhiji rejected the assurance and called it as a **post-dated cheque on a crushing bank** The crippe's mission ended in failure.

Quit India Movement -1942

The failure of Cripps Mission, brought about a change in Gandhiji's attitude. He felt that non-violent methods so far followed did not yield the desired effect. Therefore he asked for the complete withdrawal of the British from India.

During the second world war, Japan got victory over victory. The Congress leaders felt that the presence of English in India would naturally invite Japan to invade India. So the Congress Working Committee passed a resolution on 8th August, 1942, demanding the immediate withdrawal of the British from India. The historic Quit India resolution was passed at Bombay. Gandhiji's Memorable speech. "I am not going to be satisfied with anything short of complete freedom. We shall do or die. We shall either free India or die in the attempt." It was indeed a clarion call for unarmed revolt on a mass scale.

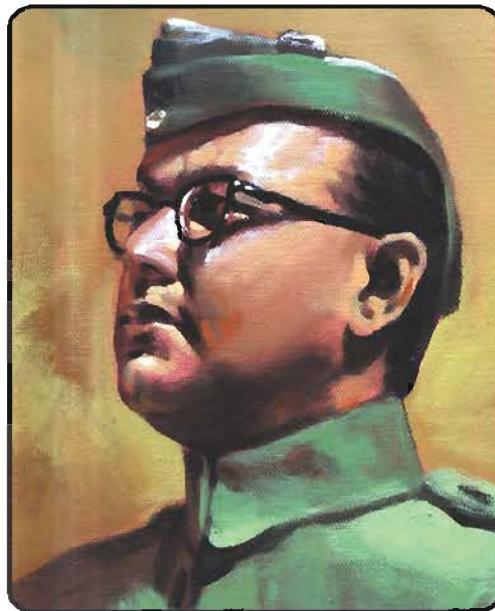
On the very next day Gandhiji, Nehru, Abul Kalam Azad and other prominent leaders of the Congress were arrested. Due to lack of proper leadership violent riots took place everywhere.

The Second World War came to an end in 1945. After the war the Labour Party under Clement Attlee came to power in England. He was the supporter of Indian freedom struggle. He became the Prime Minister of England. He withdrew all the prohibitory orders imposed on the Congress by the British. Attlee deputed a mission to find a solution for India's problems.

Subash Chandra Bose and the Indian National Army (I.N.A) 1942

Subash Chandra Bose popularly

known as Netaji was one of the greatest patriots. He joined the Indian National Congress in 1927. He worked with Jawaharlal Nehru. Netaji was the source of inspiration for the youth and the masses. He made several youth to join the national movement. He was elected as the President of the Indian National Congress in 1938. He started the Forward Bloc Party in 1939. He toured many countries and earned their sympathy for India. He was kept under house arrest for some time. Disguised as an Afghan, he escaped from India and reached Germany. He met Hitler, and sought his help.



Subash Chandra Bose

Then he went to Burma in 1942. Burma had been then occupied by the Japanese. The Japanese had captured a large number of Indian prisoners who served under the British. More than 20,000 released by the Japanese. In collaboration with Japanese government, Subash Chandra Bose formed the Indian National Army of Indians. In 1943 Subash went to Singapore. There the Presidency of the Indian

Independence League was handed over to Subash by **Rash Behari Bose**.

Subash became the Supreme commander of the **INA** or **Azad Hind Fauj**. From then onwards, Subash Chandra Bose was popularly called Netaji. Netaji means the leader. A women's regiment named after the Rani of Jhansi was organized under the captaincy of **Lakshmi** from Tamilnadu. The INA gave a tough fight against the British and played a great role in the freedom struggle of India.

Netaji's slogan '**Jai Hind**' echoed through out India and it became the popular form of salutation. '**Delhi Chalo**' was another famous slogan of Bose.

In 1945 Japan was forced to surrender. Indian soliders were arrested. Netaji hurried back to Tokyo from Bangkok. It is believed that Bose was killed in an aircrash on the way.

The Cabinet Mission (1946)

In March 1946, the cabinet mission under **Pethick Lawrence**, **A.V.Alexander** and **Sir Stafford Cripps** visited India to negotiate with Indian leaders about the transfer of power. The committee recommended Federal Government. A Constituent Assembly should be elected to draw up the future constitution of India. Till the Constitution was ready, an Interim Government of all the parties should be set up at the Centre.

The Interim Government (1946)

An Interim Government was set up at the centre under the leadership of Nehru. Nehru sought the help from Jinnah to form interim government. But Jinnah refused to Co-operate with Nehru. He became adamant in his



Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru

demand of Pakistan. Hence partition of India became inevitable.

The Mount Battern Plan 1947

In 1947 Lord Mount Battern became the Viceroy of India. He was the last British Viceroy. He tried to resolve the political deadlock of our country. So he made an important announcement on June 3rd 1947. It was called Mount Battern Plan or June 3rd Plan.



Lord Mount Battern

According to this plan India had to be divided into two independent countries namely Indian Union and the Pakistan Union. The Princely States were given the option to join either of the two new nations or to remain independent. Both the Congress and the Muslim League accepted this plan.

The Indian Independence Act of 1947

On the basis of the Mount Batten plan, the British Government passed the Indian Independence Act in July 1947.

India was partitioned in 1947. Powers were transferred to the two states, India and Pakistan. The new State Pakistan comprised of West Punjab, Sind, North West Frontier Province and East Bengal and Sylhet district of Assam. These provinces had majority Muslim population. All the remaining provinces remained with the Indian Dominion.

India became free on 15th August 1947. Tricolour Indian flag was hoisted in the place of British Union Jack on the Historic Red Fort at Delhi. Lord Mount Batten became the first Governor – General of free India and Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru became the first Prime Minister. Later C.Rajagopalachariar became the first and last Indian Governor – General of free India.

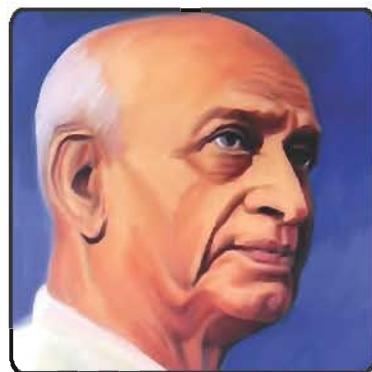
We are greatly indebted to many national leaders who sacrificed their life for the freedom of our country, but, there is none that can be compared with Mahatma Gandhi. The announcement about the partition led to riots in many places. Gandhiji tried his best to maintain peace and unity among the Hindus and Muslims. When he was assassinated on January 30th, 1948, Jawaharlal Nehru remarked, 'The Light has gone out of our lives and there is darkness everywhere.'

The Integration of the princely states

The Integration of Indian states was the greatest achievements of

Patel. On the eve of Indian Independence there were nearly 565 princely States in India. They were ruled by the native Nawabs, kings and Nizams. The task of unifying them was undertaken by Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel. Patel invited them to join the Indian union. Many responded promptly to his appeal. About 562 princely states were merged with the Indian union. But states like Kashmir, Hyderabad and Junagath were reluctant to join.

When Jawaharlal Nehru was the Prime Minister Patel, by his diplomacy and stern action integrated them with Indian union and earned the name, the Iron man of India or "Bismarck of India".



Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel

Accession of French possessions 1954

With the consent of the French Government, Pondicherry, Karaikal, Mahe, Yenam and Chandranagore became the parts of the Indian Union in 1954.

Accession of the Portuguese possessions 1961

Goa, Diu and Daman were the Portuguese settlements in India. The people of these places wanted to merge with India. So the Government of India had to resort to military action

Partition of India in 1947



over these areas in 1961. They became finally a part of the Indian Union.

Building New India

The Constituent Assembly had set itself the task of preparing a new constitution for free India. **Dr. Rajendra Prasad** was appointed as

the President of the Constituent Assembly. The Drafting Committee under the Chairmanship of Dr.B.R Ambedkar completed the work in November, 1949. The constitution of India came into force on January 26, 1950, when India became a Republic. **Dr. Rajendra Prasad** became the first President of independent India.

Time Line Chart

- 1885 - Birth of Indian National Congress
- 1890 -
- 1895 -
- 1900 -
- 1905 - Partition of Bengal, Swadeshi Movement
- 1906 - Birth of Muslim League
- 1907 - Surat Split
- 1908 -
- 1909 - Minto - Morley Reforms
- 1910 -
- 1911 - Cancellation of Bengal Partition
- 1912 -
- 1913 -
- 1914 - Out break of First World War
- 1915 -
- 1916 - Home Rule Movement, Lucknow pact
- 1917 - August Declaration
- 1918 - End of First World War
- 1919 - Montague - Chelmsford Reforms, Rowlatt Act, Jallian Walabagh Massacre
- 1920 - Non-Co-operation Movement
- 1921 -
- 1922 - Chauri Chaura Incident, Suspension of Non-Co-operation Movement

- 1923 - Swarajya Party
- 1924 -
- 1925 -
- 1926 -
- 1927 - Formation of Simon Commission
- 1928 - Arrival of Simon Commission
- 1929 - Lahore Congress
- 1930 - Salt Satyagraha, First Round Table Conference
- 1931 - Gandhi - Irwin Pact, Second Round Table Conference
- 1932 - Communal Award, Poona Pact, Third Round Table Conference
- 1934 -
- 1935 - Government of India Act
- 1936 -
- 1937 -
- 1938 -
- 1939 - Beginning of Second World War
- 1940 - Demand for Pakistan, August offer
- 1941 -
- 1942 - Arrival of Cripp's Mission, Quit India Movement
- 1943 -
- 1944 -
- 1945 -
- 1946 - Arrival of Cabinet Mission
- 1947 - Mount Batten Plan, Indian Independence Act
- 1948 - Assassination of Gandhi
- 1949 -
- 1950 - Indian Constitution came into force - India became Republic

EXERCISE**I) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Gandhiji advocated a new technique in our freedom struggle .
 - a) Sathyagraha b) Gasnost c) Long March d) Violence
2. C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru formed the _____ party.
 - a) Khadar b) Indian National Congress c) Swarajya d) Akalidai
3. The Indian Constitution was formally adopted on
 - a) January 26, 1950 b) February 26, 1950 c) August 26, 1950
 - d) March 26, 1950
4. In 1932, the British Government announced a scheme known as
 - a) Mid-day Meals b) Open University c) Adult Education
 - d) Communal Award
5. The British Viceroy responsible for involving Indians in The Second World War was
 - a) Canning b) Dalhousie c) Linlithgow d) Litton
6. To form the interim Government Nehru sought the help of
 - a) Abul Kalam Azad b) Jinnah c) Salimullahkhan
 - d) Khan Abdul Ghaffarkhan
7. First and last Indian Governor General of India is
 - a) Lord Mount Batten b) Nehru c) C. Rajagopalachari
 - d) Kamaraj
8. The task of unifying Indian states was undertaken by
 - a) Dr. B.R.Ambedkar b) Rajendraprasad c) Rajaji
 - d) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
9. First President of India is
 - a) Dr. Rajendra Prasad b) Gandhiji c) Dr. Radhakrishnan
 - d) Sathyamoorthy

II) Match the following.

A)

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel | Dutch territories |
| 2. Pondicherry | Drafting committee |
| 3. Goa | First Governor general of free India |
| 4. Dr. B.R. Ambedkar | Bismarck of India |
| 5. Lord Mount Batten | Portuguese Possession |
| | French Possession |
| | British territories |

B)

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Motilal Nehru | Uttar Pradesh |
| 2. Chauri Chaura | Swarajya Party |
| 3. Lion of Punjab | Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan |
| 4. Communal Award | Lala Lajpat Rai |
| 5. Frontier Gandhi | Ramsay Mac Donald |
| | Bhagat Singh |
| | Muslim League |

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. What are the changes introduced by the Government of India Act of 1935.
2. What is the importance of the Lahore session of the Muslim League
3. What was the resolution passed in the Lahore session of the Congress in 1929?
4. Write a short note on the Cabinet Mission.
5. Name the states comprised of Pakistan.

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. Simon Commission.
 - a) Why was Simon Commission appointed?
 - b) Why was it an insult to the Indians?
 - c) How was Simon Commission greeted?
 - d) Name the Indian leader who died during the Simon Commission agitation.

2. The August Offer

- a) When was the August offer announced?
- b) What was promised for India after Second World War?
- c) Why was the committee set up?
- d) Who would be appointed in the war council of the Viceroy?

3. The Mount Batten Plan

- a) Who became the Governor General of India in 1947?
- b) Who was the last British Governor General?
- c) What was Mount Batten Plan?
- d) What was the reaction of the Congress and Muslim League?

V) Answer the following in a paragraph.

1. Explain the stages of Non-Co-operation Movement of 1920 -22. Why was it suspended?
2. Write a short note on Salt Satyagraha.
3. What is the importance of Three Round Table Conferences?
4. Write a paragraph on Quit India Movement.
5. Write about the role of Subash Chandra Bose and the Indian National Army in our freedom struggle.

VI) Draw a time line chart from 1930 -1950.**VII) Activity.**

Mark the following on the given outline map of India.

- 1) a) Amritsar b) Lahore c) Lucknow d) Chauri chaura
 e) Surat f) Dandi g) Tuticorin h) Vedaranyam
 i) Chennai j) Poona
- 2) a) Portuguese territories-Diu, Daman, Goa
 b) French territories- Pondichery, Karaikal, Yenam, Mahe
 c) West Pakistan d) East Pakistan e) Hyderabad
 f) Junagath g) Kashmir

13. Role of Tamil Nadu in the Freedom Movement

Tamil Nadu played a remarkable part in the struggle for freedom in India. The great leaders like Puli Thevar, Kattabomman, Maruthu brothers, Velu Thambi played major role in the revolt. They were all noted for their patriotism, courage, self respect and sacrifice. During the British rule, the great leaders, poets and the Social reformers like G. S. Subramania Iyer, V.O. Chidambaram Pillai, Subramanya Bharathi, C. Rajagopalachari, Periyar E.V. Ramasamy, Thiruppur Kumaran, K. Kamaraj and many others had contributed a lot towards the success of our freedom struggle.

Vellore Mutiny (1806)

The British administration prohibited the Hindu soldiers from smearing religious marks on their foreheads and ordered the Muslims to shave their beard and trim their moustache. This created a strong resentment among the soldiers. They were also instigated by the sons of Tipu Sultan, to revolt against the British.

It was on July 9, 1806, one of Tipu Sultan's daughter was to be married in Vellore. The revolting soldiers gathered at the fort under the pretext of attending the wedding. Two hours after the midnight, on July 10, the soldiers surrounded the fort and killed most of the Europeans and unfurled the flag of the Tipu over the fort. Tipu's second son Fateh Hyder was declared as the ruler. However, the British crushed the revolt.

Madras Mahajana Sabha

The first organisation in the Madras Presidency to agitate for the rights of people was the **Madras Native**

Association. It was established by Harley, Lakshminarasu Chetty and Srinivasa Pillai in 1852. The Association criticized the policies of the East India Company. In 1884, the Madras Native Association was merged with the Madras Mahajana Sabha established by S. Ramaswami Mudhaliar, P. Anandacharlu and P. Rangaiah Naidu. The Sabha functioned at the office of 'The Hindu', Ellis Road Junction, Mount road.

P. Rangaiah Naidu was elected first President of the Sabha. The Sabha adopted a moderate policy in its early days. However, its aims and the objectives were considered seditious. In Dec 1895, on his visit to Madras, the Viceroy of India, Lord Elgin refused to receive the welcome address from the Madras Mahajana Sabha.

Madras Mahajana Sabha was considered to be a unique one that paved the way for our national freedom. The Sabha voiced out the fundamental rights of our countrymen. It had developed very close relationship with the Indian National Congress since 1920 onwards. Consequently in 1930, the Sabha organized the Salt Satyagraha movement on April 22nd in Madras George town, Esplanade, the High court and beach areas. The members were attacked savagely by the British Police. As the Sabha insisted on a legal enquiry about the injustice done towards the participants of the Satyagraha, a three-men commission under the leadership of Justice T. R. Ramachandra Iyer has

enquired thirty people and submitted its report to the government.

When the British Government banned the Congress party, Madras Mahajana Sabha conducted numerous exhibitions to instigate the patriotic feelings in the hearts of our countrymen such as All India Khadi Exhibition and Swadeshi Exhibition.

The father of our nation- Mahatma Gandhiji had delivered a speech at the meeting of Mahajana Sabha on Oct 24th 1896. Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru also had participated in the golden Jubilee celebrations of the Sabha.

V.O. CHIDAMBARAM PILLAI

V.O Chidambaram Pillai is remembered by the Tamils as **Sekkilutta Semmal, Kappalotiya Tamizhan**. He was born in Ottapidaram on September 5, 1872. He started his career as a lawyer at Tirunelveli.



V.O. Chidambaram Pillai

He encouraged the formation of Trade Guilds and Worker's Association. He was the founder of the **Swadesi Dharma Sanga Weaving Association** and **Swadesi Co-operative Stores** at Tuticorin. He formed the **Swadeshi Steam Navigation Company** and ran the service between Tuticorin and

Colombo. The Partition of Bengal in 1905 had drawn him into politics. He organized Coral mill Strike in the town near the sea shore that resulted in the increase of workers' wages and reduction of working hours. In 1907, he attended the Congress sessions held at Surat; where the Congress split into Moderates and Extremists. He followed the militant leader Bala Gangadhar Tilak and preached his philosophy. Charged with sedition, he was sentenced to forty years of imprisonment. His right leg was chained and he was used as a bullock in pulling the oil press (chekku).

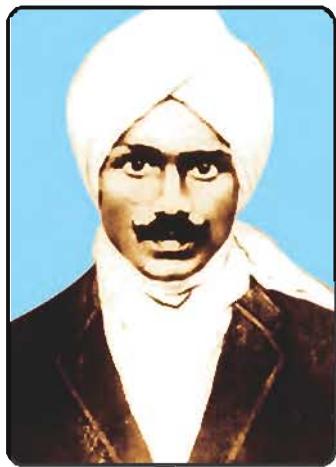
SUBRAMANIYA SIVA

Subramaniya Siva was born in Vathalagundu in Dindugal district. He was a freedom fighter and a creative writer. He was arrested many times between 1908 and 1922 for his anti-imperialist activities. While serving his last prison term, he was affected by leprosy and was ordered to be shifted to Salem jail. When Siva was unable to walk due to the severity of disease, the British Government enacted a law for Siva, stating that leprosy patient should not travel by rail. As a result of this, Subramaniya Siva travelled the whole length of Madras province on foot though his whole body was covered with sores. Then he eventually died of the disease on 23rd July 1925.

SUBRAMANYA BHARATHIYAR

Subramaniya Bharathi was born on Dec. 11, 1882 at Ettayapuram in Tirunelveli District. He worked as Tamil Teacher in 1904 at Madurai. He also served as Assistant Editor of Swadeshimithran in 1904. In 1907 Bharathi participated in the Surat Conference, supported the demand for Swaraj along with Tilak and Aurobindo.

In April 1907, he became the editor of the Tamil weekly '**India**'. At the same time he also edited the English newspaper '**Bala Bharatham**'.



Subramanya Bharathi

In Madras, in 1908, he organized a huge public meeting to celebrate 'Swaraj Day'. His poems 'Vande Matharam', 'Achamillai, Achamillai', 'Enthaiyum, Thayum' Jaya Bharatham were printed and distributed free to Tamil people.

In 1908, he gave evidence in the case which had been instituted by the British against '**Kappalotiya Thamizhan**', V.O. Chidambaram Pillai. Hence, British ordered to arrest Bharathi. Faced with the prospect of arrest, Bharathi escaped to Pondicherry which was under the French rule. From there he edited and published the dailies, weekly and monthly. But the British banned them in India in 1909.

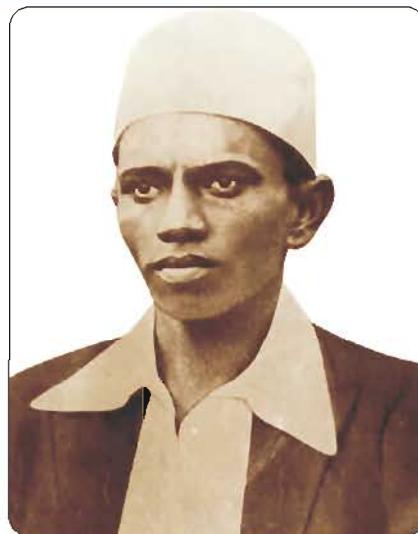
After the World War I, Bharathi entered British India near Cuddalore in November 1918. He was arrested and released after three weeks in custody. Those were the years of hardship and poverty. Bharathi resumed editorship of *Swadeshamithran* in Madras. He passed away on September 11, 1921.

Today, more than 90 years later, Subramanya Bharathi stands as an undying symbol not only of a vibrant Tamil nationalism but also of the unity that is India.

VANCHINATHAN

Vanchinathan was under the service of the State of Travancore. The activities of the extremists greatly alarmed the British. So the collector Ashe, shot down and killed four persons in Thirunelveli. So Vanchinathan wanted to take revenge against the Collector. He secretly went to Maniyachi Railway Station and shot dead Ashe on 17th June 1911, and he himself committed suicide. A letter was found in his pocket describing that the act of murder of collector Ashe was the first rehearsal to assassinate King George V who was expected to Madras.

THIRUPPUR KUMARAN



Tiruppur Kumaran

Tiruppur Kumaran was born on 1904, in chennimalai, Erode District in Tamilnadu. He was a great revolutionary. He participated in the march against the ban on the national flag and he died from injuries sustained from a police assault. Kumaran died

holding the flag of the Indian Nationalists. Kumaran is revered as a martyr in Tamil Nadu, as is known by the epithet Kodi Kaththa Kumaran. The government has erected his statue in a park near the railway station in Tiruppur.

S. SATYAMURTHI

Satyamurti was an Indian Politician and patriot. He was the political mentor of K.Kamaraj. Rajagopalachari nominated Satyamurti to succeed him as the President of the Indian National Congress in Tamil Nadu in 1930. He served as Mayor of Madras in 1939, leading a campaign to restore public education, improved water supply and improve the life of the citizens.



S.Satyamurti

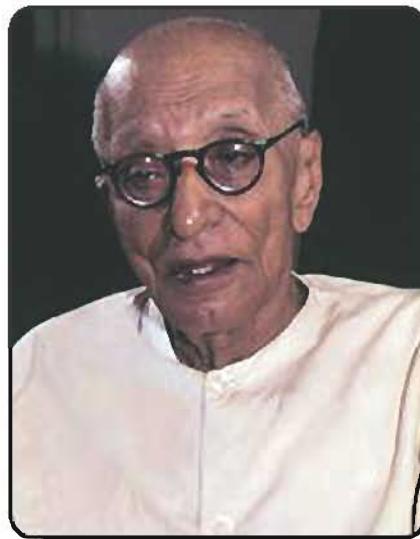
S.Satyamurti was born in Tirumayyam, Madras presidency on August 19, 1887. He started practising as an advocate prior to his initiation in the National Movement. He plunged into politics at an early age and eventually emerging as one of the foremost leaders of the Indian National Congress. In 1919, the Congress selected him as its representative to the Joint parliamentary committee to

protest the Montagu-Chelmsford reforms and the Rowlatt Act.

When Sathyamurti became the Mayor of Madras in 1939, the city was in the grip of an acute water scarcity and it was left to him to impress upon the British Governor for building Reservoir in Poondi about 50 Kms west of the city to augment the water supply position. The reservoir was commissioned by Kamaraj and named it as Satyamurti Sahar. To honour this great man, the Headquarters of the Tamilnadu Congress Committee was named after him as, **Satyamurti Bhavan**.

He participated in the Swadeshi Movement and Quit India Movement and imprisoned for several times. He was a highly regarded politician of rare abilities, who had dedicated his life to bring freedom and justice to the people. He passed away on 28th March 1943.

C. RAJAGOPALACHARI



C. Rajagopalachari

C. Rajaji was born on December 10th 1878 at Thorappalli. He became a lawyer at Salem in 1898. Rajagopalachari joined the Indian

National Congress and participated in the Calcutta session in 1906. He became the staunch follower of Gandhiji. He participated in the Surat session in 1907. In 1930, he broke the salt laws at Vedaranyam.

He started his March to Vedharanyam from Thiruchirapalli with hundreds of volunteers to break Salt laws. He won the 1937 Provincial elections and became the Chief Minister of Madras Presidency. During his administration he introduced Prohibition, passed several laws to uplift Adi Dravidar and other depressed classes. He also made Hindi as compulsory subject but it was opposed by Periyar EVR. He resigned his Chief Ministership in 1939 in protest against the use of Indian men and materials in the second world war by the British Government without their concern.

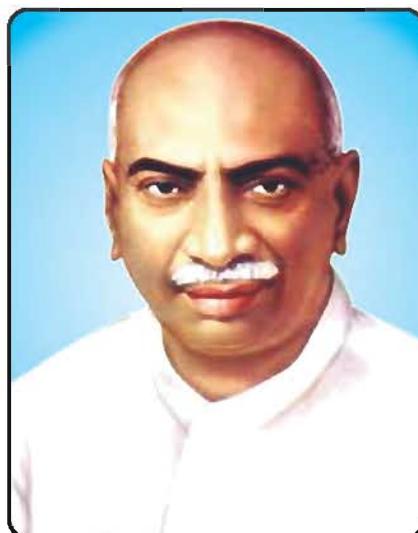
He became the first Indian Governor General of free India. In 1952 he formed the ministry in Tamilnadu. During that time he introduced '**Kula Kalvi Thittam**'. But it was opposed by Kamaraj and Periyar EVR and at last Rajaji resigned from Chief Ministership in 1954. Later he resigned from Congress and founded Swatandha party in 1959. Rajaji wrote many books. He wrote Sakravarthi Thirumagal, Vyassar Virundu and commentaries on Gita and Upanisad. In 1955, he was awarded '**Bharat Ratna**'. He died on Dec. 25, 1972. He was often referred as '**Chanakya**' for his diplomatic skills.

K. KAMARAJ

Kamaraj was born on July 15th, 1903 at Virudupatti now known as Virudhunagar. He was one of the greatest freedom fighters of Tamil Nadu. He entered into the freedom movement of India by

taking part in Vaikam Sathyagraha in 1924. He enrolled himself as a full time worker of the Congress party in 1929.

When Gandhiji announced Salt Sathyagraha he participated in the Vedaranyam march along with C.Rajagopalachari in 1930. He was arrested and imprisoned for two years in Alipore jail. As a result of Gandhi-Irwin Pact of 1931 he was released.



K. Kamaraj

In 1940, he went to Wardha to meet Gandhiji to get approval for the list of Sathyagrahis. But he was arrested and sent to Vellore jail. Because of his active participation in Quit India Movement in 1942 he was arrested and sentenced to three years in the Amaravathi prison. He hoisted the Indian National flag in Sathyamoorthy's house in 1947.

He served as the Chief Minister of Tamil Nadu for nine years and introduced various welfare measures like opening of new schools, free education, mid-day meals scheme, construction of dams and canals to improve agriculture, and launching of new industries in Tamil Nadu. He played a significant role in the National politics also. He was called as '**King**

Maker', as he made Lal Bahadur Sastri as the Prime Minister of India in 1964 and Mrs. Indira Gandhi in 1966 after the death of Sastri. He died on October 2nd 1975. Kamaraj was famous for his policy known as '**K**' Plan. He was

affectionately called by the people as '**Perum Thalaivar**' means '**Great Leader**'.

Thus Tamil Nadu played a vital role in the freedom struggle of our Country.

EXERCISE

I) Choose the correct answer

1. Indian soliders were instigated by the sons of
 a) Hyder Ali b) Tipu Sultan c) Shivaji d) Shahajan
2. The first organization in the Madras Presidency to agitate for the rights of people was the
 a) Indian National Congress b) Muslim League c) Swarajya Party
 d) Madras Native Association
3. The first President of the Madras Mahajana Sabha was
 a) P. Rangaiah Naidu b) Rajaji c) Kamaraj d) Bharathiar
4. At Vedaranyam, the Salt law was broken by
 a) T.S. Rajan b) Bakthavachalam c) Rajagopalachari d) V.O.C
5. In 1908, Bharathiar organized a huge public meeting to celebrate
 a) Swaraj day b) Birth day c) Republic day d) Service day
6. Faced with the prospectus of arrest by the British, Bharathi escaped to
 a) Chennai b) Bangalore c) Hyderabad d) Pondicherry
7. The Head quarters of the Tamil Nadu Congress Committee is named as
 a) Raj Bhavan b) Rashtra pathi Bhavan
 c) Sathyamurthi Bhavan d) Vidhan Sabha
8. In 1940, Kamaraj went to Wardha to meet
 a) Nehru b) Gandhiji c) Tilak d) Jinnah
9. Kamaraj served as the Chief Minister of TamilNadu for
 a) 9 years b) 8 years c) 10 years d) 7 years
10. Kamaraj was famous for his policy
 a) 'S' plan b) 'L' plan c) 'K' plan d) 'J' plan

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Swadeshi Exhibition | Sepoy mutiny |
| 2. Chanakya | Kamaraj |
| 3. King maker | Poondi Reservoir |
| 4. Sathyamurthi | Vellore Mutiny |
| 5. Fateh Hyder | Rajaji |
| | Periyar E.V.R |
| | Madras Mahajana Sabha |

III) Answer the following in brief.

1. Write a brief note on Vellore Mutiny.
2. What do you know about Thiruppur Kumaran?
3. Write a note about Subramania Siva.
4. Give an account on Vanchinathan's role in the struggle for freedom.
4. Name the papers edited by Subramania Bharathiar in 1907.
5. Mention some of the poems of Subramania Bharathiar.
6. What was Sathyamurthi's Service as a Mayor?
7. Write a note on the welfare measures taken by Kamaraj?
8. Why was Kamaraj called as "King Maker"?

IV. Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. C. Rajagopalachariyar
 - a) Where was he born?
 - b) Why did he resign his Chief Ministership in 1939?
 - c) What did he introduce during his second term?
 - d) Why was he often referred as "Chanakya"?
2. K. Kamaraj
 - a) How did he enter into politics?
 - b) Where was he kept in prison in 1930?
 - c) Where did he hoist the Indian National flag in 1947?
 - d) When did he die?

V) Answer the following in a Paragraph.

1. Explain the contributions of Madras Mahajana Sabha.
2. Bharathiar is a freedom fighter – Prove.

14. Social Transformation in Tamil Nadu

During the 19th and 20th Centuries great leaders like V.O.C, Subramaniya Bharathi, Bala Gangadhar Tilak, Mahatma Gandhi, Jawaharlal Nehru, Rajaji were actively involved in the Freedom Struggle. Some of the great leaders of Tamilnadu not only fought for political freedom but also for social freedom. Political freedom has no meaning when people are denied social justice, self respect and dignity.

THE JUSTICE MOVEMENT

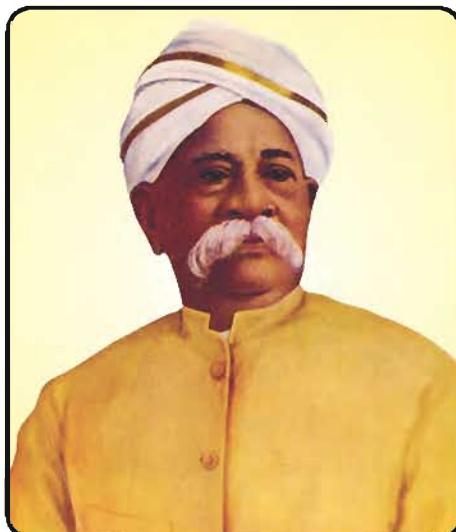
The Justice Party's rule in the Madras Presidency constitutes an important chapter in the history of South India. The Justice Party represented the Non-Brahmin movement and engineered a social revolution against the domination of Brahmins in the sphere of public services and education.



T.M. Nair

The Justice Party, officially known as South Indian Liberal Federation was a political party in the Madras Presidency of British India. This party was established in 1916 by T.M. Nair

and Thiagaraya Chetty. During its early years, the party involved in petitioning to the imperial administrative bodies demanding more representation for non-Brahmins in administration. This party published 'Dravidan' in Tamil, 'Andhra Prakasika' in Telugu and 'Justice' in English. Hence it came to be called as the 'Justice Party'.



Thiagaraya Chetty

Rule of the Justice Party

In the Election of 1920, the justice party secured a majority and Subbarayalu Reddiar formed the ministry. In 1923 elections again Justice Party won and T.M.Sivagnanam Pillai formed the ministry. In the election of 1926, the Swarajya Party got success but refused to form the ministry. With the support of Swarajya Party. A.Subbrayalu, an Independent candidate constituted the government. In 1930 elections again the Justice Party won and B. Munisamy naidu formed the ministry. In 1932 he was replaced by Raja of Bobhili. In 1934

elections Congress party won but refused to constitute the ministry. So again the Justice Party formed ministry. In 1937 election the justice party failed miserably and never recovered from the defeat. Then Justice party came under the leadership of Periyar E.V. Ramasamy and his self-respect movement. In 1944 at Salem conference, Periyar transformed the Justice Party into a social organization called Dravidar Kazhagam and withdrew it from the electoral politics.

Achievements of the Justice Party

The Justice Party's rule is remembered for the introduction of caste based reservations, and educational and religious reforms. It came to power during the most crucial period in Indian History. It faced many problems valiantly during its rule. It gave good government for sometime. It inaugurated the era of rural development through economic and social reforms.

- The Justice Party government set right the imbalances in the representation of different communities and improved the status of Depressed Classes.
- The Communal G.O's of 1921 and 1922 provided reservation of appointments in local bodies and educational institutions for Non-Brahmins.
- To avoid Nepotism, Favouritism and other influences in the process of selection, this government created a staff selection board in 1924 and it became the Public Service Commission in 1929.
- For the benefit of all communities, College Committees were created to

regulate the higher educational institutions.

- In 1925 Andhra University and in 1929 Annamalai University were opened.
- To regulate temple accounts, Temple Committees were created. In 1926 the Hindu Religious Endowment Bill was passed.
- The Women were granted the right to vote in 1921, abolished Devadasi system, prevented immoral traffic of Women and passed Industries Act.
- The system of giving free pattas for housing sites to the poor was introduced.
- By way of introducing mid-day meal schemes at Thousand lights Thiagaraya Chettiar strengthened the school.
- It gave encouragement to Ayurveda, Siddha and Unani Medical Education.

Decline of Justice party

In the Election of 1937, Justice Party failed miserably and the Congress Party constituted the Ministry under Rajagopalachari. The Justice Party never recovered from its defeat. There were many causes for its failure.

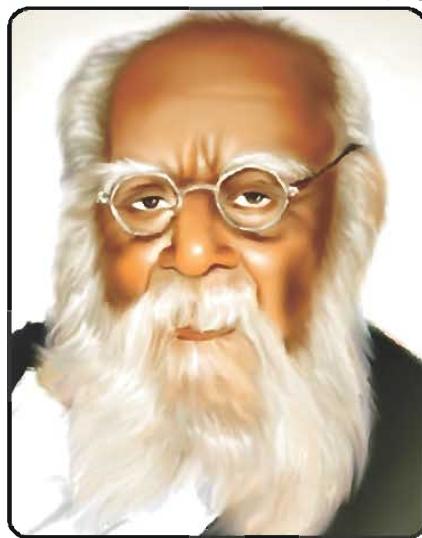
- The Justice Party came to power when the world was in economic depression.
- The Nationalist Movement was popular and heading for freedom.
- Caste and Wealth played vital role. Hence the party lost its hold.
- The rise of Congress under the leadership of Gandhi became a formidable challenge to Justice Party.

Thus the Justice Party lost its vitality after a few years of its existence.

SELF RESPECT MOVEMENT

E.V.Ramasamy Periyar was the greatest social reformers of TamilNadu. He was the first leader, the country had ever seen to inculcate self respect, rationalism, women liberation and social equality in the minds of the people.

E.V. Ramasamy was born on September 17, 1879 in Erode in a very rich Hindu family. He got married at 13th year and renounced his life in his 19th year. By wearing saintly dress, he went to many holy places. He went to Kasi where he noticed that the Brahmins ill-treated the Non-Brahmins. He condemned it and returned to Tamilnadu. He joined the Congress in 1919 to realize his ideas. He was elected as the Secretary of Madras State Congress Committee in 1921 and its President in 1923.



E.V. Ramasamy

He Joined the non-cooperation movement. He led the famous Vaikam Sathyagraha in 1924, where the people of downtrodden community were prohibited to enter into the

Temple. Finally the Travancore government relaxed such segregation and allowed the people to enter into the temple. Hence Periyar was given the title of 'Vaikam Hero'.

Periyar visited a school on Gurukulam style run at Sheramandevi out of Congress funds. He noticed the segregation of Non-Brahmin students from the Brahmins by providing drinking water and food in separate places. He protested against this anti-social practice and resigned the Secretaryship of Madras State Congress. He moved a resolution for reservation in government services for non-brahmins in the state Congress conference held at Kanchipuram. But this was not allowed. So Periyar left the Conference and started **Self Respect Movement** in 1925 to spread and execute his ideas and policies.

Aims

- The self respect movement condemned and fought against Brahmin domination over other castes, society, politics and religion.
- It fought to abolish traditionalism and superstitions
- It advocated women education, widow remarriage, intercaste marriages and opposed child marriage

Achievements

Periyar criticized the meaningless ideas, superstitious beliefs and unbelievable puranic stories in the public meetings. He spread self-respect principles through Kudiarasu, Puratchi, Viduthalai. He also published some books against social evils.

He visited many European countries and studied their way of life. He realized that poverty was the cause for the social evils. After his return, he

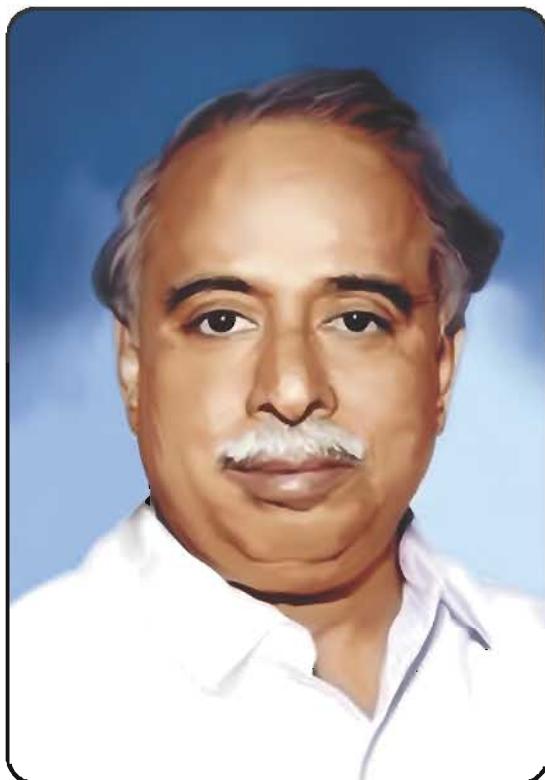
propagated 14 points of the Socialists Manifesto. The Justice Party accepted the same and tried to propagate it.

In order to check the growing population and to keep good health, he suggested the family planning. He also encouraged Tamil Script reform and suggested to adopt Roman Script to ensure easy learning. He was given the title of '**Periyar**' by Ladies Conference held at Madras.

In 1937 election, the Justice Party was defeated and its decline became inevitable. At Salem conference of 1944, the name of Justice Party was changed as '**Dravidar Kazhagam**'.

Periyar's ambitions were fulfilled by DMK and AIADMK.

C.N. ANNADURAI



C.N. Annadurai

C.N. Annadurai, who was affectionately called as 'Peraringnar Anna' by the people of Tamil Nadu was born on 15th September, 1909 at Kancheepuram. He had his M.A., in the Pachaiyappa's College, Madras. He was the founder of the "Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam".

Anna's inception into politics was through the Justice Party. The desire to work for social cause made him to join the Justice Party. Anna chose the Justice party to work for the establishment of a casteless and classless society.

Anna was a good orator. He was recognised as one of the foremost speakers of those days. When Anna joined the Justice Party he had the privilege of working under the leadership of Periyar E.V. Ramasamy. The party provided the right platform for him and so he joined the self respect movement which was started for the elimination of social inequalities.

In the anti-Hindi conference organized by Periyar at Kanjeevaram Anna quoted that Hindi could never take the place of Tamil and make any road in well settled Tamil culture.

In the Salem Conference of 1944, Anna changed the name of Justice party as Dravidar Kazhagam and became very close to Periyar. The Marriage of Periyar with Maniammai in 1947 gave severe blow to the party men. A New Party called Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam was formed on 17th September 1949. Anna explained in his speech the purpose

and principles of the Party. He became the General Secretary of the Party.

In the election of 1967, his Party got victory and Anna became the Chief Minister of Tamil Nadu in 1967. He introduced the scheme of 1kg rice for Re.1. Due to financial strain he was not able to promulgate this system all over Tamil Nadu. He also introduced Tamil Language Development Scheme.

On the first day of Chittirai (14-4-1967) on Tamil New Year day, Government under the leadership of Anna changed the official name of the state from 'Madras' to 'Tamizhaga Arasu' or 'Tamizhagam'. On 16th April in the Secrateriat in Fort St. George, the Chief Minister Anna ceremoniously switched on neon light in the form of State Emblem-a Temple Gopuram, above the words 'Tamizhaga Arasu Talamai Cheyalagam'. At the same day he announced that the national motto 'Satyameva Jayate' would henceforth appear as 'Vaimaye Vellum' and that Sanskrit forms of address Sri/Srimathi/Kumari would replace the Tamil forms of Thiru/Thirumathi/Selvi.

He was conferred Doctorate by Annamalai University in 1968. He passed away on 3rd February 1969.

CONTRIBUTION OF WOMEN LEADERS FOR SOCIAL REFORMATION

Reformation refers to eradication of some evil social practices which are deep rooted in the society for centuries. These practices are of great hindrance to the development of the country.

To achieve the above not only men but also women have contributed a lot. Among the women reformers some of them are worth mentioning.

Dr. Muthulakshmi Reddy

Tamil Nadu was the forerunner in the transformation of society. In the great cultured heritage of Tamil Nadu there are some black spots often found and removed. One such a black spot was 'Devadasi' system. One of the important leaders who fought vigorously against this system was Dr.Muthu lakshmi Reddy.



Dr. Muthu Lakshmi Reddy

Dr. Muthu Lakshmi Reddy was born on 30th July, 1886 in Pudukottai. She was the first woman in India to get a degree in medicine. In 1923 her sister died of cancer. On that day she took a vow to eradicate Cancer. So she started cancer Relief Hospital in 1949. The Cancer Institute at Adyar was started due to her good efforts. Our first Prime Minister Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru laid the foundation for that institute.

She was not only interested in medicine but also in politics and social reforms. She dedicated herself to the cause of removing the cruel practice Devadasi system from Tamil Nadu.

She was personally praised by Gandhiji for her active propaganda against Devadasi system.

Appreciating her role in the agitation against Devadasi system she was nominated to the Tamil Nadu Legislative Council in 1929. She was Vehemently supported in her efforts by Thiru.V.Kalyana Sundaranar and Periyar. As a result the Justice party Government enacted a law abolishing Devadasi System.

In 1930, she organized All India Women Conference at Pune. She was the President of Indian Women Association from 1933 to 1947. She also started **Avvai Illam** an orphanage at Santhome in Madras (Now at Adayar). Dr.Muthu Lakshmi Reddy, through her dedicated and untiring work proved the world, hardwork never fails. She passed away in 1968 at the age of 82.

Dr. S. Dharmambal

Many people became famous not because of wealth, power, education and status but because of their dedication. One such a reformer who proved that service to the people could be done through humanity and goodwill was Dr.S.Dharmambal.

She had the instinct of social service, she studied Siddha medicine and started a hospital in Chennai. Later she entered into the public service. Dr. Dharmambal was born at Karunthattankudi near Thanjavur.

As she was very much influenced by the ideas of Periyar, she showed

great interest in implementing widow remarriage, intercaste marriage and women education.

She had also great interest in the development of Tamil literature and Tamil music. She participated in the Hindi agitation programme and went to Jail many times. Till 1940 the Tamil teachers had no due recognition in the society. They were not paid equal salary like other teachers. So she started an agitation called '**Elavu Varam**'. As a result the Educational Minister Thiru.Avinasilingam Chettiar announced equal pay to Tamil teachers like other teachers.

To make the students improve their knowledge in Tamil and to score good marks in Tamil "**Chennai Manavar Mandram**" was established. She was the President of this association for more than 10 years.

Appreciating her service to Tamil language and literature she was conferred the title "**Veera Tamilannai**". She gave the title "**Periyar**" to E.V.Ramasamy Naicker and "**Ealisai Mannar**" to M.K.Thiyagaraja Bagavathar.

The great woman who sacrificed and dedicated her whole life for the Tamil people, Tamil language and Tamil literature was died in 1959 at the age of 69.

Moovalur Ramamirdham

Most of the women revolutionaries of the early twentieth century dedicated themselves to the cause of freedom of our nation. Only a few revolutionaries alone fought for the causes of both freedom and social reforms. Among them Moovalur Ramamirdham Ammaiyan was most important. she was born in 1883 in Thiruvarur but was brought up in

Moovalur, a village near Mayiladudurai. Hence she was commonly known as Moovalur Ramamirdham Ammaiyan.

She belonged to Isai vellalar caste. In olden days girls belonging to this particular caste were sacrificed to temples to do service to God. Later they were illtreated and humiliated by the landlords and zamindars in the name of caste.

On seeing this attrocities and cruelties, Moovalur Ramamirdham decided to fight for their emancipation.

She travelled all over the country and spoke about the miseries of her own girls and won the support of many leaders.

She joined the Indian National Party and organized the conference of Isai Vellalar at Mayiladudurai in 1925. This conference was attended by many great leaders like Thiru Vi.Ka. Periyar, S. Ramanathan and Mayuramani Chinnaiyah Pillai who raised slogans against the cruel practice of Devadhasis. As a result the Government passed "Dr. Muthu Lakshmi Devadasi Abolition Act".

Along with the social work she actively involved in the National Movement. She inspired women to take part in the National movement on a large scale. With the continuous moral support by Rajaji, Periyar and Thiru.Vi.Ka, she brought awareness against Devadasi system and national awakening among the people of Tamilnadu especially on women.

In her memory, the Government of TamilNadu has instituted the

"Moovalur Ramamirtham Ammal Ninaivu Marriage Assistance scheme" a social welfare scheme to provide financial assistance to poor women.

After seeing her dream became true. She passed away on 27th June 1962.

The tradition bound Tamil society was still clinging to the old values. The widows were still forbidden from participating in auspicious and social functions, inspite of the fact that the Widow Remarriage Act was passed in 1856. The forward and progressive social policies adopted by the Justice Party and the Self Respect Movement in the 20th century supported by legislative measures, led to the acceptance of the widow remarriage concept in Tamil Nadu. The abolition of sati and the acceptance of an widow remarriage and the steps to prevent child marriages were note worthy landmarks in the history of Tamil Nadu.

Caste inequality was another significant short coming of the Tamil Society. Temple Entry Movement could be cited as a suitable illustration.

Temples were once the monopoly of the upper caste where as the low caste people were denied the right to enter the temple. Many social reformers like E.V.Ramasamy, Dr.Muthu Lakshmi Reddy, Vallalar, Bharathi, Bharathidasan, Moovalur Ramamirthammal, Dr.S. Dharmambal fought for the eradication of these social evils. Thus women were also contributed a lot for the social transformation in Tamil Nadu. History will not forget their selfless service.

EXERCISE**I) Choose the correct answer.**

1. South Indian Liberal Federation is otherwise known as the

a) Dravidan Party	b) Janantha Party
c) Telugu Desam	d) Justice Party
2. Periyar transformed the Justice Party into

a) Akalidai	b) Pattali Makkal Kazhagam
c) Dravidar Kazhagam	d) Swarajaya
3. The greatest social reformer of TamilNadu

a) E.V.Ramasamy Naicker	b) Nehru	c) Gandhiji
d) Raja Rammohan Roy		
4. Vaikam is a place in

a) TamilNadu	b) Andra Pradesh	c) Karnatak	d) Kerala
--------------	------------------	-------------	-----------
5. C.N. Annadurai was affectionately called as

a) Chacha	b) Nethaji	c) Anna	d) Periyar
-----------	------------	---------	------------
6. Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam was founded by

a) C.N.Annadurai	b) M. Karunanidhi	c) K. Kamaraj	d) M.G.Ramachandran
------------------	-------------------	---------------	---------------------
7. C.N. Annadurai was conferred Doctorate by

a) Anna University	b) Annamalai University	c) Manipal University
d) Bharathiar University		
8. Due to Dr. Muthulakshmi's good efforts the cancer institute was started at

a) Anna Nagar	b) Chengalpat	c) Kanjeevpuram	d) Adayar
---------------	---------------	-----------------	-----------
9. All India women conference was organized at

a) Pune	b) Bombay	c) Thane	d) Satara
---------	-----------	----------	-----------
10. Dr. Muthulakshmi Reddy started an orphanage known as

a) Anbu Illam	b) Saraswathi Illam	c) Avvai illam	d) Lakshmi Illam
---------------	---------------------	----------------	------------------
11. Dr. S. Dharmambal started an agitation for the cause of Tamil teachers called

a) Nalla varam	b) Hindi varam	c) Tamil Varam	d. Elavu Varam
----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------
12. Moovalur Ramamirdham was born in

a) 1885	b) 1887	c) 1889	d) 1883
---------	---------	---------	---------

II) Match the following.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Justice | E.V.Ramasamy Periyar |
| 2. Vaikam Hero | Dr. S.Dharmambal |
| 3. Devadasi system | Moovalur Ramamirtham |
| 4. Veera Tamilannai | T.M. Nair |
| 5. Justice Party | Sathyamoorthy |
| | Dr. Muthu Lakshmi Reddy |
| | English News paper |

III) Answer in following in brief.

1. Write a brief note on the rule of the Justice Party.
2. What are the aims of Self Respect Movement?
3. Why do we call Periyar as "Vaikam Hero"?
4. Mention the services rendered by Annadurai as the Chief Minister of TamilNadu.
5. Narrate Dr. Muthu Lakshmi's role in the agitation against Devadasi system.
6. What did Dr.S.Dharmambal do to the Tamil teachers?
7. Write a note on the services rendered by Moovalur Ramamirtham for her community.

IV) Answer all the questions given under each caption.

1. The Justice Party
 - a) Who established the Justice Party?
 - b) When did the Justice Party come to power?
 - c) When was it defeated?
 - d) Write any two achievements of the Justice Party.
2. Self Respect Movement
 - a) Who started the Self Respect Movement?
 - b) Why did he start?
 - c) When was it started?
 - d) Name the laws passed by the Government due to the constant struggle of Self- Respect Movement.

V) Answer the following in a paragraph.

1. Write a paragraph on the formation and achievements of the Justice Party.
2. "Dr. Muthu Lakshmi's contribution to Tamil Society is beyond description" - Prove the statement.
3. "Moovalur Ramamirtham is a freedom fighter and a Social Reformer"- Justify the statement.